GRAMMAR
AND
VOCABULARY
for
FIRST CERTIFICATE
Contents

Introduction

Unit 1

Grammar

Exam Practice 1

prefixes (1)

Vocabulary

prefixes (1)

do and make

prefixes (1)

question words

question tags

phrases of agreement

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Unit 4

Vocabulary

suffixes (2)

have, take, bring

link words or phrases: purpose

Unit 3

Grammar

Exam Practice 1

prefixes (1)

Vocabulary

prefixes (1)

do and make

prefixes (1)

question words

question tags

phrases of agreement

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Unit 5

Grammar

Exam Practice 2

suffixes (3)

Grammar

Entry test

Entry test

Entry test

Entry test

Entry test

Entry test
Unit 6

Entry test

Grammar
6a time and condition clauses with future reference
6b more future forms
6c expressions of time and preference

Vocabulary
6d afterwards, after, until, as far as, etc.
6e phrases with time

Exam practice 3

Unit 7

Entry test

Grammar
7a forming the passive
7b reasons for using the passive; the agent
7c causative get and have

Vocabulary
7d get and have got
7e compound nouns

Unit 8

Entry test

Grammar
8a reported speech (1)
8b reported speech (2)

8c -ing forms and infinitives after verbs and prepositions

Vocabulary
8d say, tell, talk, discuss, speak, etc.
8e -ed and -ing adjectives

Exam practice 4

Unit 9

Entry test

Grammar
9a comparative and superlative adjectives
9b adjectives followed by prepositions
9c order of adjectives

Vocabulary
9d adjectives of size, quantity and power
9e compound adjectives

Unit 10

Entry test

Grammar
10a comparisons
10b so and such; too, very, enough
10c quite, rather, etc; linking verbs

Vocabulary
10d adjectives which are similar
10e suffixes (4)

Exam practice 5
### Unit 11

**Entry test** 186

**Grammar**
- 11a adverbs: use and form 188
- 11b adverbs: word order 191
- 11c adverbs: comparison 194

**Vocabulary**
- 11d seeing and hearing 196
- 11e adverbs: different forms and meanings 200

### Unit 12

**Entry test** 202

**Grammar**
- 12a articles 204
- 12b determiners 208
- 12c countable and uncountable nouns 212

**Vocabulary**
- 12d uncountable nouns ending in -s; collective nouns 216
- 12e suffixes (5) 219

**Exam practice 6** 224

### Unit 13

**Entry test** 228

**Grammar**
- 13a relative clauses 230
- 13b participles 234
- 13c linking words and phrases 236

**Vocabulary**
- 13d phrasal verbs with get 238
- 13e suffixes (6) 240

### Unit 14

**Entry test** 244

**Grammar**
- 14a prepositions of time, place and movement 246
- 14b prepositions after verbs and nouns 250
- 14c it and there 252

**Vocabulary**
- 14d prepositional phrases 254
- 14e phrasal verbs with put 257

**Exam practice 7** 259

**Word store** 263

**Answer key** 305
Acknowledgements

The author would like to thank everyone who has helped to develop the contents of this book, in particular Donald Adamson, Judith Aguda, Carolyn Parsons and Christina Ruse, and to Helen Colman for her work on the production of the book.
Introduction

About this book

Who is this book for?

This book is for people studying for the Cambridge First Certificate in English (FCE) examination. The aim is to practise the grammar and vocabulary needed for this examination. The book is useful as a supplement to any course book; it presents and practises key grammar and vocabulary points in an integrated way. I assume that anybody using this book has a reasonable knowledge of and ability to use English up to pre-intermediate level. More advanced students should refer to Grammar and Vocabulary for Cambridge Advanced and Proficiency by Richard Side and Guy Wellman (Longman).

What sort of grammar is in this book?

The book covers the main areas of English grammar at intermediate/upper intermediate level and concentrates on areas you need to pass the FCE exam. Thus, there is a thorough review of tenses together with verb, noun and adjective structures. Although grammar and vocabulary are obviously important in all the papers in the exam, special attention is given to those aspects of grammar which are frequently tested in Paper 3 – Use of English. For example, prepositions following nouns, verbs and adjectives are especially common in all parts of Paper 3. Problems of time and tense are also tested, for example in conditional sentences and after wish, if only, I'd rather and expressions with time; such structures are reflected in the grammar presented and practised in this book.

What sort of vocabulary is in this book?

The book gives vocabulary special emphasis, including both individual words and common phrases. Words which are often confused are dealt with in the Sections which make up the main body of the text, and common sources of error caused by words of related meaning are also considered. There is also a detailed focus on aspects of word building in every Unit. This reflects the importance of word building in the Use of English paper. The Word store at the end of the Units focuses on topic areas and lexical phrases to which the new format of the FCE exam introduced in 1996 gives particular importance. A good knowledge of these phrases will help you perform better in the Use of English and the Writing papers.

How can I use this book?

There are many ways to use this book. You can use the Contents to look up particular aspects of grammar or vocabulary you want to study and practise. The Agenda at the beginning of each Unit will show you the contents of each Section and you can use the Entry test to identify which Sections you need. Or, you may wish to study complete Units, perhaps in the order in which they appear. Several options are available to you according to your needs.

How is this book organised?

The book comprises fourteen grammar and vocabulary Units followed by a topic-related Word store Section. There is an Exam practice test after every two Units. Throughout the book there are cartoons which illustrate grammar points and also identify the coverage of the Section. I hope this will make learning grammar more fun as well as more memorable.

THE ENTRY TEST

A typical sequence begins with an Entry test based on the target grammar and vocabulary of the Unit. It consists of 25 diagnostic items which will direct you to areas you need to learn, revise or practise in the Sections that follow. The test will give you an idea of your own strengths and weaknesses in particular areas of grammar or vocabulary. Each Entry test is divided into five parts (each with five items) and these correspond to the five Sections, a–e, of the Unit. If you have difficulties with a part of the Entry test, there is a cross-reference to the relevant Section where you will find all the information and practice you need. On the other hand, if you find that part easy, it may mean that you are sufficiently competent in that area and you may wish to skip...
that Section. Since each Entry test has an uniform score (25), you can monitor your own progress using your total scores for each Entry test.

**THE GRAMMAR SECTIONS**
Each Unit contains three Grammar sections which deal with aspects of a particular area of grammar as listed in the Agenda above the Entry test. For a full index of the grammar covered in this book, see the list of Contents (pages 3–5). The Grammar sections contain explanations and descriptions using numerous example sentences. Much of the information is presented in tables which provide easy access to the essential details of meaning or use, together with examples illustrating common contexts.

**THE VOCABULARY SECTIONS**
Each Unit has two Vocabulary sections. There is a deliberate focus on word building and on lexical items related to particular areas of usage. Phrasal material is given special attention and, again, the tables provide easy access to content.

**THE PRACTICES**
All presentation material in the Grammar and Vocabulary sections is followed by Practices. These are a wide variety of exercises related to the content of the previous Section. Many of these exercises are modelled on FCE exam questions, but others are styled to achieve the best focus on information being practised and provide for a more interesting set of activities.

**THE EXAM PRACTICES**
After every two Units, there is an Exam practice in the form of a complete Use of English paper in exactly the same format as the FCE. Each Exam practice tests your knowledge of the grammar and vocabulary of the previous two Units. It allows you to revise what you have learnt while getting valuable examination practice. Each paper has the same score so that you can monitor your progress as you work with different Units. Although grammar and vocabulary are presented separately in the Units, in the Practices and the Exam practice grammar and vocabulary are brought together within the same texts. Thus there is constant recycling of the target information.

**THE WORD STORE**
At the end of the book is the Word store, a series of exercises presenting vocabulary in topic-related groups which are extremely useful for all parts of the FCE exam. Emphasis is on the importance of common phrases and the way words combine together. The vocabulary items are presented in tables that are unrivalled in their coverage. These tables are followed by exercises which draw on items in the tables and allow you to work with them in relevant contexts. Special attention has been given to ensuring that these exercises are lively and informative.

**Will I pass First Certificate if I do everything in this book?**
One grammar and vocabulary practice book is not enough to make you fluent in English. I recommend that you read widely in English (simplified readers, magazines and newspapers…) and take every opportunity to listen to English (satellite television, film, radio, songs…). You should also try and speak the language so that you can use it naturally and easily.
About First Certificate

What level is First Certificate?

The First Certificate is an intermediate-level Cambridge examination which follows on from the PET (Preliminary English Test) and precedes the CAE (Certificate in Advanced English). The examination is frequently used as proof that you will be competent to begin a career such as those related to tourism or banking, or that you can pursue an advanced course of study in English. Learners at this level should be able to handle the main structures with some confidence and communicate in English in a variety of social situations. You should be able to tell the difference between the main points and the secondary points of a text and between the gist of a text and specific detail. You are expected to show an ability to describe and recount events. Grades A, B and C are passes. D is a narrow fail, and E and U are fails.

The exam is usually taken after approximately 500–600 hours of studying English. It consists of 5 papers, each scoring 40 marks. Four papers are usually taken on the same day and Paper 5 (Speaking) will be taken on a different day.

PAPER 1 – Reading Comprehension

This paper, lasting 1 hour and 15 minutes, consists of either four long reading texts or three long with two or more shorter texts, and is intended to encourage familiarity with different types of written material. The texts may be correspondence, informational material, articles from newspapers or magazines, advertisements, etc. There are 35 questions which are multiple choice, gapped text or matching. You will be tested on understanding the gist of a text, main grammar points, detail in the information, and text structure or meaning.

PAPER 2 – Writing

For this paper, lasting 1 hour and 30 minutes, you must complete one compulsory task (a letter using information given in the form of tables, diagrams, pictures, etc.) and choose one more from a list of four situation-based tasks. You will need to demonstrate your ability to write a range of texts such as letters (formal and informal), articles or reports, as well as stories and argumentative compositions. Each task must be between 120 and 180 words.

PAPER 3 – Use of English

The paper lasts 1 hour and 30 minutes. There are five tasks with a total of 65 questions focusing on grammar and vocabulary (see pages 10–11). The paper is divided according to the language focus and style of task. The exercises are: multiple choice with an emphasis on vocabulary; gap-filling testing grammar and vocabulary; transformation sentences again testing grammar and vocabulary; detecting errors in a text with an emphasis on grammar; and finally word-building.

PAPER 4 – Listening

This paper lasts approximately 40 minutes. There are two longer recorded texts and two series of short extracts with a total of 30 questions. The recordings may be phone messages, commentaries, announcements, speeches, reports, etc. The tasks are designed to test your understanding of the gist of the recording, main grammar points and specific information. They include multiple choice, note taking, matching and selection from two or three possible answers.

PAPER 5 – Speaking

This part of the examination, lasting approximately 15 minutes, has four parts. It consists of a paired conversation with another candidate, and the participation of an interlocutor and an assessor who remains silent. The first part is a very short interview. After that there is an individual task in which you may be asked to give information or express your opinion by comparing photographs or pictures. In the next short exchange, you may be asked to agree or disagree, or make a decision about a drawing, photograph, etc. Finally you take part in a discussion with the interlocutor and the other candidate. You will be marked according to your overall performance. You should be able respond to questions, organise your ideas, express your opinions and exchange views in order to solve simple problems.
What types of questions can I expect in Paper 3?

This book concentrates on the grammar and vocabulary you will need to pass this Paper. The exercises in the Practices, and especially the Exam practices, reflect the types of questions you will be given in the FCE exam. There are five parts.

PART 1 – Multiple choice cloze
There is a text with 15 numbered gaps and four choices (A, B, C and D) for each. You must choose the best answer to fill each gap. Example:

Part 1
For Questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0). Mark your answers on a separate sheet.
Example:
0 A gone B brought C taken D come
Answer: brought

E-MAIL OR SNAIL MAIL?
Modern technology has (0) about enormous improvement in communications and yet many people are still worried (1) using the latest computer technology. I am often (2) to meet colleagues who still don’t know what the ‘e’ in e-mail stands for. …

Part 1 (Questions 1–15) has an emphasis on vocabulary but often includes prepositional use, and common phrases and link phrases.

PART 2 – Open cloze
This consists of a short passage with 15 numbered gaps. You must provide a correct word to fill each one. Example:

Part 2
For Questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fills each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).
Example: 0 in

THE MYSTERY OF STONEHENGE
Stonehenge is a group of very large stones arranged (0) circles which stand on Salisbury plain in South England. They look (16) they’ve been put there by a race of giants. The stones originally came from south Wales, 240 miles away. They are (17) big and heavy that the transportation of these stones over (18) a distance is incredible. …

Part 2 (Questions 16–30) tests grammar, vocabulary and spelling. Learning common phrases and collocations is very useful.

PART 3 – Word transformation
There are 10 sentences with a gap to be filled using a given word that cannot be changed. Example:

Part 3
For Questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the order given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).
Example:
0 Do you regret what you did? sorry
Are you sorry for what you did?
31 I think his wife is a journalist. married
I think………………… a journalist. …

Part 3 (Questions 31–40) also tests grammar and vocabulary with an emphasis on tenses, reported speech, the passive, conditionals, etc.
PART 4 – Error correction

A text is provided with 10 errors. Some lines contain an extra, unnecessary word. You have to identify it. Note that in this book space is provided at the side of the lines for your answers. In the exam, you must use your answer sheet. Example:

**Part 4**

For Questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) by the number on the separate answer sheet. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word on the separate answer sheet. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

**Examples:**

0 ✓

00 a

---

**WHY AM I LEARNING ENGLISH?**

0 English is the most widely spoken language in the world

00 today. It is a quite amazing how the use of English has

41 become so widespread. The English is not as easy as Esperanto

42 which was especially written for to be as easy as possible ...

Part 4 (Questions 41–55) tests all aspects of grammar.

**PART 5 – WORD FORMATION**

This word-building exercise has a text with 10 gaps. It can involve prefixes, suffixes, changes to the whole word (e.g. wide to width) and also forming compounds. The base words are given and must be transformed to fill the gaps. Example:

**Part 5**

For Questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

**Example:**

0 successful

---

**ON THE BOX**

What do you need to become a ..... (0) TV personality? 

The people who are ..... (56) chosen to host TV quiz shows and chat shows seem to have few ..... (57) for the ...

SUCCESS

USUAL

QUALIFY

Part 5 (Questions 56–65) tests vocabulary including prefixes, suffixes and compounds.
Entry test

Underline the correct tense in 1–5.

1 I am staying / stay at the Imperial Hotel till they get my flat ready.
2 The River Amazon flows / is flowing into the Atlantic Ocean.
3 Buying a house nowadays becomes / is becoming more and more expensive all the time.
4 We haven't decided yet, but we think / are thinking of moving house.
5 Whether we play on Saturday is depending / depends on the weather.

Now look at 1a on page 14.

Choose the correct form of the following words to fill the spaces in 6–10.

win discuss originate find try

6 Jazz ........................................ in the United States around 1900.
7 Tom Hanks ............................. an Oscar several times already.
8 Even when we were children, our parents ................................. family problems with us.
9 I ........................................ to fix this pipe since this morning and it's still leaking.
10 Scientists still ............................. a cure for cancer.

Now look at 1b on page 18.
Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.

11 About 100 people ........ outside the theatre for tickets when we got there.
   A were queuing   B queued   C have queued   D queue

12 This time last week I ........ to Athens.
   A have driven   B have drove   C was driving   D have been driving

13 By the time the teacher arrived, the classroom was empty: the students .........
   A left   B had left   C were leaving   D have left

14 The witness claimed he ........ the accused before.
   A did not see   B hasn’t seen   C wasn’t seeing   D hadn’t seen

15 I ........ a shower when the telephone rang.
   A had   B was having   C have had   D have

Now look at 1c on page 21.

Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.

16 She’s changed a lot ........ she left school.
   A for   B since   C during   D after

17 I’ve been waiting in the rain ........ hours!
   A during   B since   C for   D from

18 ........ I was coming home I met my old English teacher.
   A During   B While   C Before   D Since

19 She was born twenty-five years ........ in a small village in Yorkshire.
   A before   B since   C over   D ago

20 I’ve ........ seen the film and I don’t want to see it again.
   A yet   B still   C already   D before

Now look at 1d on page 23.

Underline the correct form of the word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 21–25.

21 How long have you been looking for ........ ?
   A employer   B employ   C employee   D employment

22 I need a ........ to open this tin of peas.
   A tin opening   B tin open   C tin opener   D tin opened

23 You have to be a pretty good ........ to get a job as a chef.
   A cooker   B cuisine   C cookery   D cook

24 To do ........ professionally requires a lot of skill.
   A photographer   B photographic   C photography   D photograph

25 Passing the exam at so young an age was quite an ........ .
   A achievement   B achieve   C achiever   D achievable

Now look at 1e on page 26.
## Grammar

### 1a Present Simple and Present Continuous

**Present Simple (base form)**

We use the Present Simple:
- for permanent situations:
  
  I live in a flat.  
  She works for an insurance company.

- for repeated actions or habits:
  
  I use my mobile phone every day.

- for general truths:
  
  The sun rises in the East. 
  Matter consists of small particles. 
  Water is boiling at 100 degrees. 
  Water boils at 100 degrees.

- to tell stories, or summarise the plot of a film or book:
  
  Our hero goes off to search for the treasure, which he eventually finds after many adventures.

**Present Continuous (present of be + ...-ing)**

We use the Present Continuous:
- for temporary situations existing for a period at the present time:
  
  I’m staying with a friend at the moment.  
  She’s working very hard nowadays. 
  X Just now I wait to do my military service. 
  ✓ Just now I am waiting to do my military service.

- for situations which are changing during the present time:
  
  The weather’s getting hotter and hotter.

- for actions, or repeated actions or habits, occurring at the moment of speaking:
  
  I am using John’s mobile phone because I left mine at home. 
  You’re eating too fast.

- to express annoying habits with words like always:
  
  You’re always borrowing money!

- When we use always with the Present Simple, it usually means ‘every time’:
  
  I always complain if the service is bad in restaurants.

- When we use always with the Present Continuous, it means ‘all the time’ or ‘too/very often’:
  
  You’re always complaining that waiters are rude.

- We cannot use never ... again with the Present Simple:
  
  X I never speak to you again. 
  ✓ I’m never speaking to you again.

- We do not usually use certain verbs in the Present Continuous, e.g.:
  
  appearance: appear, resemble, seem
  composition: consist of, contain, have
  connection: come from, concern, cost, fit, suit
  existence: be, exist
  knowledge: forget, know, realise, understand
  likes and dislikes: dislike, hate, like, love, prefer
  needs and wants: need, want, wish
  opinion: believe, doubt, imagine, suppose, think
  possession: belong to, have, own, owe, possess
  senses: feel, hear, notice, see, smell, sound, taste
• We can use some of the verbs at the bottom of page 14 in the Present Continuous when they have different meanings. Here are some examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Simple</th>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>She has</em> (got) a big car. (= possession)</td>
<td><em>She is having</em> an operation/a good time/a meal/a bath. (= actively involved in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I have</em> three brothers. (= connection)</td>
<td><em>They are thinking</em> of buying a cheaper car. (= considering)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>They think</em> it's too expensive. (= opinion)</td>
<td><em>I'm just thinking</em>. (= at this moment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I feel</em> what we did was wrong. (= opinion)</td>
<td><em>I am feeling</em> exhausted. (= physical reaction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Do you see</em> what I mean? (= knowledge; understand)</td>
<td><em>Are you seeing</em> a lot of Mary nowadays? (= spending time with)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>This juice</em> tastes good. (= senses)</td>
<td><em>You're seeing</em> things – there's nobody at the window. (= imagining)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>She appears</em> to be very upset. (= appearance)</td>
<td><em>He is tasting</em> the milk to see if it's OK. (= checking the quality)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The Blues Band</em> is appearing at the Odeon on Saturday. (= performing)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• We can use verbs that describe the way we feel physically in a Simple or Continuous form with no change of meaning:

  *I feel* sick. or: *I am feeling* sick.
  *My feet* ache. or: *My feet* are aching.
  *My leg* hurts. or: *My leg's* hurting.

### Practice

1. Underline the correct tense, Present Simple or Present Continuous, in the following sentences.

1. I'm sleeping/ sleep on Niko's sofa until I find a place of my own.
2. I'm only working/ only work there for a couple of months because I'm going abroad in the summer.
3. If you aren't listening/ don't listen to the radio, why don't you switch it off?
4. His only bad habit is that he talks/ is talking too loudly.
5. So in the first scene we see/ are seeing him getting up and then he goes out/ is going out and meets/ is meeting a strange woman.
6. You make/ are making goulash using meat, vegetables and paprika.
7. I never do anything I feel/ am feeling is against my principles.
8. He appears/ is appearing to be very friendly but I don't know him very well.
9. There's nobody at the door; you just hear/ are just hearing things.
10. I'm thinking of doing a postgraduate degree – what do you think/ are you thinking? Is it a good idea?
2 Complete this letter with the correct form of the Present Simple or the Present Continuous. Use each verb in the list once. The first (0) is given as an example.

stand seem write be make shine stay taste look cost feel

Dear Jill,

I am writing (0) to you from Granada where everything ................. (1) to be going just fine; we ................ (2) nice and relaxed. We ................ (3) in a gorgeous hotel just down the road from the Alhambra, which ................ (4) an old fortress built by the Moors. It ................ (5) at the top of the hill just opposite our hotel and we can see this wonderful building through our window. It ................ (6) absolutely magnificent! The hotel is lovely, but unfortunately it ................ (7) a lot to stay here! Eating out is great. Have you heard of gazpacho? It's a cold cucumber and tomato soup which they ................ (8) with oil, vinegar and garlic and it ................ (9) delicious.

Well, outside the sun ................. (10) so I'm off to get a bit of a suntan; I hope everything's OK back in Birmingham.

Lucy

3 Read the text below and look carefully at each line. In most of the lines there is one word too many, a word that does not fit grammatically. Write this unwanted word on the right. If a line is correct, put a tick (√). The first two are given as examples.

**THE GREENHOUSE EFFECT**

0 This week in Kyoto in Japan the latest conference on the environment is being taking place. The whole world is today watching to see what happens as delegates from more than 165 countries discuss what measures need not to be taken to reduce the fumes that do create the Greenhouse Effect. They are hope to agree on ways of reducing the amount of carbon dioxide and other gases that we send into the atmosphere. These gases to act the way a greenhouse does and, as a result, the Earth is be getting hotter and hotter all the time. The temperature it is rising gradually and in 100 years' time the Earth will be hotter by about 4°C.

12 The problem is be getting worse as more cars are make an appearance on our already crowded roads.

14 The solution in Kyoto is depends on what the United States, the most powerful nation on Earth, feels is in its interests.
Complete these sentences using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous. Use the verb given in brackets.

1. My sister ................. (wait) patiently for her exam results.
2. We ................. (not travel) by train very often.
3. I ................. (consider) accepting that job in Crete.
4. The film ................. (end) with a dramatic car chase.
5. I'm sorry, I ................. (feel) too tired to go out this evening.
6. We ................. (have) a great time here in London.
7. ................. you ................. (see) much of your brother these days?
8. We ................. (rely) on you to bring the keys with you.
9. I ................. (wish) people didn't smoke in restaurants.
10. Who ................. you ................. (think) you are, speaking to me like that!

Complete these sentences using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous. Use the verbs given in brackets. Add never or always if this is also given.

1. I ................. (use; never) my mobile phone if I ................. (drive).
2. I ................. (like; always) to get post but I ................. (seem; never) to have the time to reply.
3. The heroine ................. (prefer) to be with Paul because James ................. (argue; always).
4. Maria ................. (forget; always) what time the soap ................. (start).
5. You ................. (moan; always) about the state of the flat but you ................. (help; never) me.
6. Turtles ................. (lay; always) their eggs on the same beach; however, they ................. (come; never) in winter.
7. Whether I ................. (go) swimming or not ................. (depend on; always) the weather.
8. I ................. (shop; never) here again – they ................. (be; always) so rude.
9. We ................. (smell; always) cooking when we ................. (pass) your house.
10. He ................. (borrow; always) money but he ................. (pay; always) me back.
Past Simple and Present Perfect

The Present Perfect is the tense that links the past with the present.

**Past Simple (past form)**

We use the Past Simple:

- for past habits or states, whether continuous or repeated:
  
  Long ago, they **built** most houses out of wood.
  
  He always **caught** the same train.

- with periods of time that have finished:
  
  I **read** the newspaper this morning. (= it is now afternoon or evening)
  
  He **did** a lot in his short life. (= he's dead)

- for finished actions with time words like a year ago, last Sunday, last week, yesterday, etc.:
  
  Watson and Crick **identified** the structure of DNA in 1953.
  
  The first modern Olympics **took place** in Athens more than a hundred years ago.

**Present Perfect (present of have + past participle)**

We use the Present Perfect:

- for actions or states in the past which have a connection with the present:
  
  They **have bought** a new house. (= they can now go and live in it)
  
  It's just **started** to rain. (= now, so bring the washing in)

- when the results of an action or state are obvious now:
  
  You've **spilt** the coffee all over my trousers – look!
  
  They've **polluted** the river. (= the fish are dead)

- for repeated actions in the past, with words like often, rarely, seldom:
  
  He's often **been** to France.

- with periods of time that have not finished yet:
  
  We've **built** 20 new schools this year. (= it is still this year)
  
  He **has done** a lot in his short life. (= he's alive and young)

- for actions with expressions like already, before, ever, never, often, recently, still, yet, etc.:
  
  Rain **has already** ruined the tomato crops.
  
  Have you **ever seen** a UFO?
  
  We **still haven't discovered** life on other planets.
  
  They **haven't sent** an astronaut to Mars yet.

- The choice between the Past Simple or Present Perfect depends on whether the action links the past with the present:
  
  She **often took** the bus. (= but doesn't any more)
  
  She **has often taken** the bus. (= and so she might do it again)

- Regular verbs end in -ed in both the Past Simple and the past participle (the form we use for the Present Perfect): **worked**, **looked**, **played**.
Present Perfect Continuous

We use the Present Perfect Continuous (present form of have + been + -ing) to talk about actions which started in the past and which continue up to the moment of speaking. We use it especially when we are interested in the duration of the action:

I've been waiting for a whole hour!

• Notice the difference between the Present Perfect Continuous and the Present Perfect:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Present Perfect Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I've done my homework.</td>
<td>I've been doing my homework.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• The Present Perfect emphasises the idea of completion (= the homework is finished); we use the Present Perfect Continuous to indicate that the action has lasted for a period and is incomplete. Compare:

I've read the newspaper today. (= I've finished it)

I've been reading the Encyclopaedia Britannica. (= I haven't finished it yet)

• We often use the Present Perfect Continuous with for and since (see 1d):

Those potatoes have been boiling for an hour.
And the carrots have been boiling since three o'clock.

Practice

1. Underline the correct tense in the following sentences.

1. I am writing in connection with the advertisement which appeared/ has appeared on 3 December.

2. I originally studied/ have studied mechanical engineering at university and I graduated/ have been graduating with a first-class degree.

3. I now completed/ have now completed a postgraduate degree in business and administration.

4. I’ve been trying/ I’ve tried to find a permanent job for a considerable time.

5. Indeed, I have already worked/ I have already been working for several companies on a temporary basis.

6. In my first job, I was/ have been responsible for marketing.

7. I’ve been applying/ have applied for several posts this year but I still did not manage/ have not managed to find what I’m looking for.

8. The last job I applied/ have applied for required applicants to speak some Japanese.

9. I started learning/ have been learning Spanish a few months ago but I did not obtain/ have not obtained a qualification in it yet.

10. I did not apply/ have not applied for a job with your company before.

11. I hoped/ have hoped that you would consider my application favourably.

12. However, I have been waiting/ have waited for a reply for several weeks and I still have not received/ did not receive any answer.

I've written so many job applications. In fact, I have been writing them for weeks.
Fill in the gaps with the correct verb. Use the correct form of the Past Simple or Present Perfect. Use each verb once.

arrive  go  have  hear  do  read  tell  invite  come  explain  buy  visit  take  look at

Interview with
Katerina Denuevo, film star

Interviewer: You’ve never been to our country before, right? What are your first impressions?
Katerina: I ........................ (1) many interesting things about your country in magazines and newspapers; before I .................. (2), people .................. (3) you were all very friendly, and when I .................. (4) at the airport everyone brought me flowers. And it’s true, your shops are wonderful! I (already) .................. (5) some shopping – I .................. (6) a colourful scarf and some hand-painted china.

Interviewer: ................ (7) time to do any sightseeing yet?
Katerina: Yes, I .................. (8) a stroll round the Old Town. At one restaurant the owner .................. (9) me to try some of your specialities; he .................. (10) to me some of the secrets of your cuisine – the way you prepare mushrooms is excellent.

Interviewer: What about the future? ................ you (ever) .................. (11) to see a fortune-teller, and do you read your horoscope?
Katerina: I (never) .................. (12) my horoscope. All I know is I’m a Scorpio!

Interviewer: Will you come here again?
Katerina: As soon as I can. I .................. (13) Kraków yet which I .................. (14) so much about.

Which country is Katerina visiting? Underline it.

France  Poland  Greece  Spain

Fill each gap in the following text with one suitable word. The first letter of each word is given.

Can a famous astronaut adjust to life on Earth?

On July 16, 1969 Apollo 11 set off for the moon. After four days in space, Neil Armstrong w.................. (1) down the ladder of the lunar module and s.................. (2) onto the surface of the moon. It w.................. (3) a historic moment. Thirty years later, the three astronauts who made history h.................. (4) never planned any reunion to celebrate the anniversary of man’s first step on the moon. The three spacemen have g.................. (5) a bit older and, although their attitude to life h.................. (6) changed over the years, they have r.................. (7) friends.

Armstrong has r.................. (8) to give interviews about his private life. After Apollo 11, he w.................. (9) at NASA; he l.................. (10) in 1971 to become an engineering professor at Cincinnati University. In 1979 he g.................. (11) up teaching, and since then he has b.................. (12) working as a business consultant.

Andrew Chalken, a space journalist, has been r.................. (13) the lives of the Apollo astronauts and has h.................. (14) unique access to them. He has just w.................. (15) a book on the subject. He says that Armstrong is not a very easy man to know, although he is very warm once you do get to know him.

"Flying? I’ve been to almost as many places as my luggage!"  
Bob Hope
Past Continuous

We use the Past Continuous (past form of be + -ing) to talk about something which was in progress during a period of time in the past:

- I was listening to the news on television at nine o'clock last night.
- We use it to give background information: It was pouring with rain and she was wondering what to do.
- We also use it with the Past Simple to say that something happened in the middle of something else:
  \[ \times \text{I slept when my friend called.} \]
  \[ \checkmark \text{I was sleeping when my friend called.} \]

Past Perfect

The Past Perfect (had + past participle) is the past form of the Present Perfect. We use it to talk about a past event which happened before another past event:

- When I bought some fruit I went back to the beach.
- \[ \times \text{When I had bought some fruit I went back to the beach.} \]

- We often use the Past Perfect with when or after: 
  After they had eaten, they cleared the table.
- We also use the Past Perfect in indirect speech when reporting the Past Simple or Present Perfect:
  'I have found the answer.' becomes: She told us she had found the answer.
- Compare the Past Perfect and the Past Simple:
  When I arrived at the party, Mary left. (= I arrived and then Mary left)
  When I arrived at the party, Mary had left. (= Mary left and then I arrived)

Past Perfect Continuous

The Past Perfect Continuous (had been + -ing) is the past form of the Present Perfect Continuous. We use it to talk about something which had been in progress up to the time in the past we are talking about:

They had been climbing for five hours before they reached the top of the mountain. 
I had been feeling sleepy all day so I went to bed early.

Practice

1. Complete the sentences below using the information in the box opposite.

Discoveries
1. Fleming was studying influenza .................
2. Columbus discovered America ...................
3. Hillary and Tenzing reached the top of Everest ............... 
4. Scott reached the South Pole in 1912 .................
5. Franklin was flying a kite when .................
6. Before Columbus discovered America .................
7. Newton made his great discovery .................
8. Climbers had been trying to conquer Everest .................

a. after they had been climbing for several days.
b. when he discovered penicillin.
c. but Amundsen had beaten him by a month.
d. though at first he believed he had reached Asia.
e. he discovered the principle of the lightning conductor.
f. and several had lost their lives in the attempt.
g. people had believed that the Earth was flat.
h. while he was sitting under an apple tree.
2 Complete the sentences using the Past Continuous, Past Perfect or Past Perfect Continuous. Use the verb given in brackets. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

1 They stood under the shelter because it .......... (rain).
2 The roads were wet because it .......... (rain) all night.
3 He was broke. He .......... (spend) all his money.
4 I .......... (have) a nightmare when the alarm went off and woke me up.
5 His hands were covered in oil because he .......... (try) to fix the car all morning.
   Unfortunately, he .......... (manage) to make it start.
6 When she opened the window she was happy to see it .......... (snow) lightly. In fact, it .......... (snow) all night and snow .......... (cover) all the rooftops.
7 When Mrs Morgan came into the classroom, the pupils .......... (run) around
   and .......... (scream) at the tops of their voices. They .......... (knock) over
   chairs and desks and someone .......... (draw) funny pictures on the board.
8 Although I .......... (set) off early, I got there late and everyone .......... (wait) for me to start the meeting; the chairperson told me they .......... (wait) for a whole hour.
9 When we got back from our holiday we discovered that someone .......... (break) into our house. The burglars, however, .......... (drop) a piece of paper with an address on it as they .......... (climb) out of the window.

3 Fill each gap in this text with one suitable word.

**DISASTER!**

About seventy years ago, a Dutch ship was .......... (1) near the North Pole; it
 .......... (2) heading for Blacklead Island. On the ship was a scientist, Edgar Greenhead,
who .......... (3) worked on the island for many years; he had .......... (4) conducting
research into the life of the local inhabitants, who were Eskimos (Inuits). Greenhead had
 .......... (5) away for a long holiday and now he was .......... (6) back to the island to
continue his work.

At about midnight, Greenhead felt very tired as he had .......... (7) writing his journal
all day. After he had .......... (8) good-night to the captain, he .......... (9) down to his
 cabin. Outside there .......... (10) a strong wind, and the waves .......... (11) crashing
onto the side of the ship. Greenhead was just .......... (12) ready to climb into his bunk
when he suddenly .......... (13) a great crash. He dashed up on deck and although it
was dark he .......... (14) see that the ship .......... (15) run into an iceberg.

Before John Kennedy became President in 1960 he had said that the state
of the country was bad; when he became President he said things were just
as bad as he'd been saying they were.
Vocabulary

1d for, since, during, yet, etc.

since and for
We use since to indicate a starting-point:
They haven’t met since the wedding. (= since + noun phrase)
A lot has happened to me since I last wrote to you. (= since + clause)

• We can use It’s a long time, two weeks, etc. + since + Past Simple to focus on the period:
It’s ages since I saw Eva.

We use for to say how long something lasts:
I’m tired. We’ve been walking for four hours.
I haven’t seen Eva for ages.
✓ I’ve been living in London since four weeks.
✓ I’ve been living in London for four weeks.

from and since
Compare from and since:
The minister was here from ten o’clock. (= he came at ten o’clock)
They’ve been here since ten o’clock. (= they’re still here)

for and during
For answers the question ‘how long?’. We use it with time expressions to talk about actions that last the whole of the period of time:
He was with the company for forty years.

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
1958 & & 1998 \\
\hline
\text{His time with the company} & \text{now} & \\
\end{array}
\]

• We use during + that week, your stay, the match, etc. when one action happened inside a period of time:
During that year he rose from deputy manager to managing director.

• Here are some typical phrases we use with for and during:
for two hours/a whole week/a long time/a couple of days/a minute or so
during office hours/the day/the full ninety minutes/the twentieth century/the interval

during or while?
During is a preposition. We use it before a noun (phrase). We never use during with a clause.
We didn’t see anybody during the holidays.

\[ \text{ NOUN } \]

While is a conjunction. We use it with a clause:
We didn’t see anybody while we were on holiday.

\[ \text{ CLAUSE } \]

✓ During I was at home, a salesman called.
✓ While I was at home, a salesman called.
### ago, already, before, still and yet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning/use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ago</td>
<td>tells you how long before the moment of speaking. We use <em>ago</em> with the Past Simple, not the Present Perfect. It comes after a time phrase.</td>
<td>I came to Rome exactly six months ago. I'm writing in reply to your letter which I received two days ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>expresses surprise that something has happened sooner than expected. Or, we use it to say that something that has been done need not be repeated. We normally use it in positive sentences and questions. We often use it with Perfect tenses. It can come in the mid or end position.</td>
<td>Is the taxi already here? Is the taxi here already?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>earlier than a time in the past</td>
<td>I went to the airport last Monday to meet Sue. I hadn't been to the airport before. (= before last Monday)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>still</td>
<td>tells you that something is continuing and has not finished. It can suggest surprise that it continues longer than expected. We use it in mid position and if the sentence is negative, it comes before the negative word.</td>
<td>I've been to Rome several times but I still like going there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yet</td>
<td>tells you that something expected to happen has not happened (we use a negative sentence), or to ask if it has happened (we use a question). We use it at the end of a sentence.</td>
<td>I've had fifty driving lessons, but I still can't drive very well. We've been waiting for an hour, but she still isn't here. I haven't had breakfast yet. (= I expected to have it before now) Aren't you ready yet? (= I expected you to be ready before now)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(See also 6d.)

### Practice

1. Fill in each gap with one suitable word.

1. It must be a month .............. we last had a meal together.
2. We haven't eaten together .............. about a month.
3. .............. her stay here she made a lot of good friends.
4. .............. she was staying here, she made a lot of good friends.
5. Dabizas was injured .............. the last minute of the match.
6. .............. several seasons Dabizas has never been seriously injured in a game.
7. .............. 1998, Dabizas has only been badly injured once on the pitch.
8. Do you know, I'd never been to Rome .............. our visit together.
9. Really? I've been there twice .............. this year.
10. If you go that often, do you .............. enjoy it?
11. Of course. However, I haven't been to Milan .............. .
12. Oh, I have. I went there about a year .............. .
2 Fill in the gaps, using the words given. You may use some words more than once.

ago since already before still until while for yet during in from

FLYING HOME
A couple of months ago Charles was in Athens on his way back to the States from a business trip. It had been ages (1) he had felt so angry. He had been at the airport (2) seven o'clock in the morning (3) now, waiting for a flight to New York. An announcement had (4) been made to say that the plane was delayed due to ‘technical problems’. Half an hour (5) that, another announcement had said there was to be a delay caused by air traffic congestion. Now the plane had been sitting on the runway (6) at least an hour but it was (7) not ready to board (8) this delay, Charles tried to complete his report, which he hadn’t finished (9), though his boss was expecting it on his return. There was a lot of noise going on around him (10) he was trying to put the finishing touches to his final paragraph so (11) the end he gave up. It had been years (12) Charles had travelled by plane. He avoided flying if he could, ever (13) a particularly unpleasant flight years (14) when he was (15) convinced flying was the worst way to get around.

3 Fill in each gap with one suitable word.
1 The accident happened ten years ............... .
2 Just five minutes ............... the train left I was still in a traffic jam.
3 I know this place – I’m sure I’ve been here ............... but I can’t remember when.
4 I ............... enjoy this type of music, even though it isn’t very fashionable nowadays.
5 The design of the building is similar to those that have ............... been built.
6 I won’t have a coffee thanks – I’ve had one ............... .
7 I don’t know the answer ............... . I’ll let you know as soon as I can.
8 A solution to the problem has ............... not been found.
9 Haven’t you finished having a shower ............... ?
10 I started learning English two years ............... .

4 Write these sentences using already, still or yet in the correct position. More than one word, or more than one position, may be possible.
1 The style is similar to others that have been built.

2 I’m sorry, but your dry-cleaning isn’t ready.

3 Lucy asked me to e-mail the office in Vienna but I’ve done it.

4 Do you need a visa to travel to Hungary?

5 My birthday isn’t for ages.

6 It’s raining so there’s no point in going to the beach.

7 Has your uncle arrived?

8 I’ve waited a whole hour and he hasn’t come.
We normally use suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech:
*employ* (verb) + *-er* = *employer* (noun).

Sometimes a suffix produces a change in meaning:
*neighbour* + *hood* = *neighbourhood*

We use the following suffixes to make nouns (see also 3e, 4e, 10e, 12e, 13e):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>use</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>verb + <em>-er</em></td>
<td>forms a noun that describes sb's occupation, or what sb does</td>
<td>employ—employer, shop—shopper, teach—teacher work—worker, write—writer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + <em>-or</em></td>
<td>forms a noun that describes sb's occupation, or what sb does</td>
<td>act—actor, invest—investor, invigilate—invigilator operate—operator, sail—sailor, supervise—supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + <em>-er</em></td>
<td>forms a noun that describes what sth does</td>
<td>cook—cooker, dry hair—hair dryer, grate—grater open (tins)—tin-opener, sharpen (pencils)—pencil-sharpener, wash dishes—dishwasher, wipe a windscreen—windscreen wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb/noun + <em>-ee</em></td>
<td>forms a noun that describes what sb does, or who sb is</td>
<td>employ—employee, pay—payee, refuge—refugee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb/noun + <em>-ing</em></td>
<td>forms a noun that describes an example or act</td>
<td>draw—drawing, build—building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun + <em>-eer</em></td>
<td>forms a noun that says what activity sb does</td>
<td>engineer, mountaineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun/verb/</td>
<td>forms a noun that expresses sb's belief or occupation</td>
<td>anarchist, artist, Buddhist, journalist, physicist, pianist, typist, violinist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + <em>-ist</em></td>
<td>forms an abstract noun</td>
<td>equal—equality, flexible—flexibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + <em>-ity</em></td>
<td>forms an abstract noun</td>
<td>good—goodness, great—greatness, happy—happiness, sad—sadness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + <em>-ness</em></td>
<td>forms an abstract noun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun + <em>-hood</em></td>
<td>forms an abstract noun</td>
<td>brother—brotherhood, mother—motherhood, neighbour—neighbourhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun + <em>ship</em></td>
<td>forms an abstract noun</td>
<td>champion—championship, friend—friendship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + <em>-ance, -ence</em></td>
<td>forms an abstract noun</td>
<td>admit—admittance, emerge—emergence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + <em>-ment</em></td>
<td>forms an abstract noun</td>
<td>achieve—achievement, employ—employment, enjoy—enjoyment, excite—excitement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + <em>(a)tion, (i)tion or sion</em></td>
<td>forms an abstract noun</td>
<td>form—formation, alter—alteration, complicate—complication, educate—education, occupy—occupation, qualify—qualification, invent—invention, oppose—opposition, pollute—pollution, produce—production, cohere—cohesion, omit—omission, profess—profession, revise—revision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice

1 Complete the chart with the correct noun. Underlined words will help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>clue</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 s/he takes photographs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 s/he plays the guitar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 it washes dishes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 the state of being able to do something</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 the relationship you have with your friend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 s/he designs roads, bridges and machines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 s/he writes for a newspaper</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 he acts in films and plays</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 the thing we make when we build</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 the quality of being important</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 the period when you are a child</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 the feeling of being excited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 the state of being happy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 knowledge you get when you are educated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 the act of dividing something</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 entering a place, or the cost of entering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 the thing we open tins with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 s/he is forced to seek refuge in a new country</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 something we do when we are active</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 the state or fact of being great</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. The first (0) is given as an example.

A challenge for Europe

Although recently there has been a small reduction (0) in the number of people out of work in Europe, .......... (1) is still the number one .......... (2) problem facing the fifteen member states of the European Union. Moreover, .......... (3) of opportunity between men and women is still an issue that .......... (4) in many countries have not come to grips with. In .......... (5) such as the law and engineering women are still noticeable by their absence .......... (6) still discriminate against female .......... (7) in a number of ways even if their .......... (8) are the same as those of men.

It would be a pity if the .......... (9) of the EU on an economic level were marred by .......... (10) in the vital area of social policy.

The roots of education are bitter but the fruit is sweet.

Aristotle
Entry test

Underline the correct tense in sentences 1–5.
1. Leave the dishes – I'll / I'm going to do them for you if you like.
2. It's already five to eight – you're going to miss / missing the train.
3. I think I have / I'll have a break now; I'm exhausted.
4. Am I going / Shall I go and get a video for this evening?
5. Look out, you will step / you're going to step on the cat!

Now look at 2a on page 30.

Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.
6. I can't come tonight – ........ my in-laws.
   A I visit          B I visited       C I'm visiting       D I will visit
7. Next month, the National Theatre ........ a new production of Hamlet.
   A are putting on  B shall put on    C put on             D putting on
8. ........ a successful author one day.
   A I'm being       B I'm going to be  C I go to be          D I be
9. According to the programme, the show ........ at 9 o'clock prompt.
   A is start        B shall start     C starts              D starting
10. ........ to John's party on Saturday – do you want to come?
    A I go            B I will go      C I going             D I'm going

Now look at 2b on page 32.
Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.

11 This time tomorrow ....... on the beach sunbathing and drinking freshly squeezed fruit juice!
   A I'll lie          B I'll have lain          C I'll be lying
   D I'll have been lying

12 By next August, I ....... my exams and I'll be ready for a holiday.
   A will have been finishing  B am finishing  C will be finishing
   D will have finished

13 Shall I take your letters to the post office? ....... there anyway.
   A I will go          B I'll have gone        C I'll have been going
   D I'll be going

14 The work ....... by next week so we'll be free to do what we want.
   A will be finished  B are finishing  C will have finished
   D will have been finishing

15 By August, ....... in this house for twenty years.
   A I'll have lived         B I am living        C I'm going to live
   D I will live

Now look at 2c on page 34.

Underline the correct verb A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 16–20.

16 If the strike's still on we'll have to ....... our trip till another time.
   A put off          B call off          C carry on          D go through

17 She ....... till the early hours listening to pop music.
   A held me up      B caught me up      C kept me up      D took me up

18 As children, we were ....... to respect our elders.
   A grown up       B kept up          C brought up       D held up

19 They should ....... corporal punishment at school, if you ask me.
   A get back        B carry on        C keep up        D bring back

20 I wish you'd stop chatting and ....... with some work.
   A get down      B get on          C come on          D come back

Now look at 2d on page 36.

In questions 21–25 add the correct prefix in the spaces to complete the sentences.

21 I think that waiter ........... charged us. What cheek!

22 You mustn't ........... do things – you need to work less and relax more.

23 I can't get my laces ........... done. They're in a knot.

24 The music on the radio did not ........... please him. He simply paid no attention to it.

25 This food is a bit ........... cooked – ask them to put it back in the oven.

Now look at 2e on page 38.
We can use different ways to express the future in English. The choice depends on the situation. Here are the main forms and their uses (see also 6b):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future Simple with will + base form</td>
<td>• decisions made at the moment of speaking</td>
<td>OK, I’ll see you this evening at eight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• predictions, often with I believe, expect, hope, think, etc.</td>
<td>✗ All right. I’m going to see you at eight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• offers or willingness</td>
<td>✓ All right, I’ll see you at eight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• requests</td>
<td>I think it will be a difficult game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• firm intentions, promises</td>
<td>I’ll give you a lift if you like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• threats</td>
<td>All right. I’ll water the plants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• facts about the future</td>
<td>Will you do me a favour?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I’ll love you forever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I won’t speak to you ever again!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Christmas day will fall on Tuesday this year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be going to + base form</td>
<td>• intentions, plans</td>
<td>I’m going to phone him tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• something in the future is because of something in the present</td>
<td>✗ Look. It will rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• predictions, especially when there is evidence</td>
<td>✓ Look. It’s going to rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall + base form</td>
<td>• suggestions</td>
<td>That building is going to collapse soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Continuous will be + -ing</td>
<td>• activities planned to a future time</td>
<td>Shall we go for a walk?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• arrangements, routines</td>
<td>Shall I help you with those bags?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• offers (with I or we)</td>
<td>What shall I say if she calls?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• asking for advice</td>
<td>We’ll be waiting outside the station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Continuous be + -ing</td>
<td>• arrangements, often with tonight, at eight, this weekend, etc.</td>
<td>I’ll be going by bus as usual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• official arrangements, especially when announced</td>
<td>I’m having my hair cut today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be + to-infinitive</td>
<td></td>
<td>The President is to visit Brussels next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Simple</td>
<td>• firm plans or timetables, especially after when, as soon as, until, etc.</td>
<td>The boat leaves the island on Friday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would + base form</td>
<td>• reporting predictions in the past, often with I believed, hoped, etc.</td>
<td>I’ll phone you when I arrive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I thought it would be a difficult game.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Match the first sentence (1–14) with the second sentence (a–n) to make short exchanges.

Example: 0 + o
(0) 'Look at all those dark clouds.'
(1) 'Mum, I’ve dropped my glass of milk.'
(2) 'The meeting will be held on Tuesday at 3pm.'
(3) 'What time did she say she’s going to get here?'
(4) 'I told her to tidy her room but she won’t.'
(5) 'How much longer are you going to be?'
(6) 'I feel awful. I think I’m going to faint.'
(7) 'I’ll come and help you clear the attic in a moment.'
(8) 'Tessa seems to have gained a lot of weight.'
(9) 'Shall we go now? I’ve had enough.'
(10) 'Will you please shut the door?'
(11) 'What shall I get for dinner?'
(12) 'When am I going to see you again?'
(13) 'What do you think you’ll do when you finish?'
(14) 'I’m just going to go to the post office.'
a 'Shall I have a word with her?'
b 'I’ll be with you in just a minute.'
c 'That’s easy. I’m going to get a job that earns me lots of money.'
d 'Thanks. That will be very helpful.'
e 'Actually she’s going to have a baby.'
f 'Never mind. Accidents will happen.'
g 'I’m not sure I’ll be able to come.'
h 'She’ll probably be here by 9.30.'
i 'I’ll call the doctor right away.'
j 'Let’s just have fish and chips.'
k 'Perhaps I’ll see you tomorrow.'
l 'No, I won’t. Do it yourself!'
m 'Are you? I’ll come with you.'
n 'OK. I’ll just get your coat.'
(o) 'Yes, there’s going to be a storm.'

Complete the conversation using will/won’t, shall/shan’t, going to/not going to and the verbs given at the end of the lines. The first is given as an example.

ROSA Hi, what are you doing this evening?
MARIA Not this evening. I am busy till late.
ROSA When do you think it is convenient for me to pop round?
MARIA Well, we are going to check the dates.
Have you got your diary handy? Now, let’s see. Today is Tuesday the 20th so tomorrow is Wednesday 21st. I am so busy tomorrow — what about you? Do you think you are free?
ROSA I am going to my dentist tomorrow. Is Thursday OK?
MARIA Yeah. I think that is fine.
ROSA OK. What time are you coming?
MARIA I am going to leave the house at all on Thursday so I don’t think it is a problem, whatever time you come.
ROSA That’s fine.
MARIA And don’t forget you have to bring the manuscript with you.
ROSA Don’t worry. I am going to bring it.
MARIA OK. I am going to see you Thursday then. Cheers.

Things will get worse before they get better. (ENGLISH SAYING)
Things will get worse before they get worse. (Pessimist)
**be going to, Present Continuous, Present Simple**

**Present Continuous or be going to?**

We often use the Present Continuous to talk about the near future rather than the distant future:

- *I'm taking the kids to the cinema this evening. I'm getting up at 6.30 tomorrow.*
- We can use *be going to* or the Present Continuous for more distant events:
  - *We're going to sail/re sailing round the world next year.*
- To talk about plans, we can use the Present Continuous or *be going to* in the same future situations, sometimes with a slight change of emphasis (To ask about plans or arrangements we use the Future Continuous. See 2c):
  - *I'm going to see my psychiatrist tomorrow.* (= I intend to see my psychiatrist tomorrow)
  - *I'm seeing my psychiatrist tomorrow.* (= I have already arranged to see my psychiatrist tomorrow)
- If there is no plan or arrangement, we can only use *be going to*. This use is prediction, especially when there is evidence. The Present Continuous is not possible:
  - *Those dark clouds mean we are going to have a storm.*
  - *You're getting a headache if you don't turn the volume down.*
  - *You're going to get a headache if you don't turn the volume down.*

**Present Continuous or Present Simple?**

In future use, the Present Simple always suggests a fixed timetable. The Present Continuous can suggest the possibility of change:

- *The sun is rising at six tomorrow.*
- *The sun rises at six tomorrow.*
- *I'm seeing him at six o'clock. (= my plan)*
- *I see him at six o'clock. (= my fixed schedule)*
- We often use the Present Continuous for personal arrangements, and the Present Simple for when an official or a committee makes the arrangements:
  - *I'm seeing Mikis at the weekend. (= my arrangement)*
  - *I leave for London tomorrow. (= my boss says so)*
  - *I leave for London tomorrow. (= my boss says so)*

**be going to or will?**

We use *be going to* to talk about something we know will happen because of information in the present (see also 3b):

- *The sky's grey – I think it's going to rain.*
- *It's eight o'clock – you're going to be late again.*
- We use *will* to talk about something we believe will happen:
  - *Don't carry that heavy box – you will hurt your back.*
- We also use *will* to indicate a sudden decision:
  - *Leave the washing up – I'll do it later.*
- We can use *going to* if we decided earlier:
  - *I told you that I'm going to wash up.*
Practice

1 Complete these sentences using be going to, will, the Present Continuous or the Present Simple. Use the verbs in brackets.

1 Look, that car over there .................. (crash)!
2 I can’t come tonight because I .................. (stay in) to watch TV.
3 The Prime Minister .................. (travel) to Brussels tomorrow.
4 The match .................. (start) at 3pm as always.
5 Don’t worry about the car; I .................. (phone) for a taxi.
6 Nina often .................. (visit) her parents.
7 I .................. (be) rich one day!
8 According to my diary, we .................. (meet) at 3pm tomorrow.
9 We .................. (win) the European Cup next year.
10 The National Theatre .................. (celebrate) its thirtieth anniversary soon.

2 Put the verb in brackets into the most suitable form of the future.

1 ‘What .................. you .................. this evening?’ (do) ‘Nothing.’
   ‘Well, .................. we .................. to that new pizzeria?’ (go)
2 In 2004 the Olympic Games .................. in Athens. (take place)
3 Which showing do you want to go to? The film .................. at nine and eleven. (start)
4 I .................. work at five – so shall we meet at a quarter past? (finish)
5 Seven o’clock isn’t possible as I .................. something else then. (do)
6 This lesson is boring. When .................. it .................. to .................. ? (finish)

3 Underline the most suitable form of the future in the following text.

AQUARIUS

All Aquarians this month (1) get off / are getting off to a good start with some good news on the home front. The news (2) is helping / will help to relax recent tensions and give you the chance to make a fresh start. There (3) shall / will be lots of new things on other fronts this month. It really (4) is going to be / is being a time of great opportunity. A special person (5) shall come / is coming into your life soon – and you mustn’t think this (6) is going to be / is being just another friendship. At work, you (7) are needing / will need to rise to new challenges that (8) are testing / will test your character to the utmost. If you (9) make / are making a wrong move, you (10) will probably regret / probably regret it. In short, this is a month which (11) will bring / shall bring many opportunities but there (12) will be / are being risks, too, so be careful!

WOMAN: I’m getting married on Saturday and we’re having a traditional wedding.
MAN: Are you having a white wedding?
WOMAN: Yes, and I’m going to wear my grandmother’s dress.
MAN: And what’s your grandmother going to wear?
**Future Continuous**

The Future Continuous (will be -ing) can refer to temporary activities during a future period:

- The Future Continuous often refers to a routine or to things which will happen in the normal course of events. It emphasises that no new arrangement is necessary:  
  *I can give you a lift to the station. It’s no trouble for me – I’ll be going that way anyway.*

- We use the Future Continuous to ask about someone's plan or arrangement:  
  *Will you be using the library this afternoon? When will the President be arriving because I must organise the reception?*

**Future Perfect**

We use the Future Perfect (will have -ed) to talk about something that will finish at a time in the future.

- The Future Simple in questions can sound less polite than the Future Continuous. Compare:  
  *Will you drive me to the airport? Will you be driving me to the airport? (= more polite)*

**Future Continuous or Future Simple?**

We use the Future Simple (will + infinitive without to) to indicate a personal decision at the moment of speaking:  
*OK, I’ll see you this evening.*

- In the Future Continuous, the activity has already been decided:
  *This time tomorrow I will lie on the beach.*
  *This time tomorrow I’ll be lying on the beach. We’ll be staying here until next weekend. I’ll be driving to Madrid next week so I can give you a lift if you like.*

Today is Tuesday. Rosie says she will have finished her assignments by Saturday. (= Rosie will finish at any time up to Saturday, but not later)

- When I finish this book it means I will read all of her books.
- When I finish this book it means I will have read all of her books.
Practice

1. Complete these pairs of sentences using the Future Simple, the Future Continuous or the Future Perfect. Use the verb given in brackets.

   1 a. .......... part in our play? You're a really good actor, we need you! (take)
      b. I know you're a keen member of the drama group. I suppose you .......... part in the play this year. (take)

   2 a. .......... in London next year, still doing the same old job. (be)
      b. .......... in London for ten years by next June. (be)

   3 a. By Friday, I .......... this new book by Marquez. (finish)
      b. If I don't have too much work this year, I think I .......... all of Marquez's novels. (finish)

   4 a. This time tomorrow, Maria .......... on a beach in Majorca. (sunbathe)
      b. I expect she .......... until she gets badly burnt – that's what she did last year. (sunbathe)

   5 a. Don't make too much noise after midnight – I .......... soundly, I hope. (sleep)
      b. Wake me up by nine o'clock – I .......... long enough by then. (sleep)

   6 a. We .......... to Australia later this summer. It's a long flight. (fly)
      b. It's strange that when we get to Sydney, we .......... half way round the world. (fly)

   7 a. Look, I can give you a lift to the station – I .......... that way anyway. (drive)
      b. You'll be late for your train – I .......... you to the station if you like. (drive)

2. Fill in the spaces using the Future Simple, the Future Continuous or the Future Perfect of the verb in brackets. The first (0) is given as an example.

   ROSA When shall I .......... (0 come round)? Is Thursday still OK?
   MARIA Well, don't come at six – I .......... (1 work) then.
   ROSA What time do you think you .......... (2 be) free?
   MARIA Let's see, I .......... (3 work) on the manuscript all day as I told you, and I expect I .......... (4 complete) the second chapter by about seven. OK?
   ROSA Yes, because I .......... (5 be) quite busy at about six tomorrow as well. I've got an appointment with my dentist and I don't think she .......... (6 finish) much before seven.
   MARIA Well, we really must be getting on with the book, you know – by the end of this month we .......... (7 work on) the project for a whole year. It's taking far too long.
   ROSA Yes, I .......... (8 jump) for joy when it's finished.
   MARIA Me too. By the way, .......... (9 go) near the post office?
   ROSA Probably. It's not far from the dentist.
   MARIA You see, I've been expecting an important parcel and I think it .......... (10 arrive) by Thursday. If you .......... (11 go) past there anyway, could you collect it for me?
## Vocabulary

**2d** phrasal verbs: time and change

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring back sth; bring sth back</td>
<td>reintroduce</td>
<td>They are going to bring back the old system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring up sb; bring sb up</td>
<td>raise children</td>
<td>Are you bringing your children up as Catholics?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call off sth; call sth off</td>
<td>cancel</td>
<td>They called off their trip when Granny died.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on (doing sth)</td>
<td>continue</td>
<td>Are you going to carry on making that horrible noise?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come back (from somewhere)</td>
<td>return</td>
<td>When did you come back from your holidays?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall behind (with sth)</td>
<td>fail to produce sth at the right time</td>
<td>He's falling behind with the payments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get back (to somewhere)</td>
<td>return somewhere</td>
<td>What time do you have to get back to college?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on (in life)</td>
<td>advance, make progress</td>
<td>He's new here, but he'll get on fine, I'm sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get down to sth</td>
<td>finally start doing sth</td>
<td>Isn't it time you got down to marking those papers?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give up (doing sth); give sth up</td>
<td>stop doing sth (often bad)</td>
<td>Don't give up! You'll get there in the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go ahead (with sth)</td>
<td>begin to do sth planned or promised</td>
<td>She gave up smoking. She's given it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go through (sth)</td>
<td>experience a difficult time</td>
<td>He decided to go ahead with his plans in spite of her objections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow up</td>
<td>develop from child to adult</td>
<td>After all they've gone through, they can still smile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold on</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>I grew up on a farm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold sth/sb up</td>
<td>delay sth/sb</td>
<td>Hold on a minute. I won't be long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep sb up</td>
<td>delay sb from going to bed</td>
<td>The building work has been held up by bad weather.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth off; put off sth</td>
<td>postpone</td>
<td>I won't keep you up long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set off</td>
<td>start a journey</td>
<td>If it rains, they will have to put off the match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay up</td>
<td>go to bed later than usual</td>
<td>When are we setting off in the morning?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take up sth; take sth up</td>
<td>to start learning sth</td>
<td>We stayed up to watch the late film on TV.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Some phrasal verbs, e.g. fall behind, grow up, set off, are intransitive (they do not have an object): I grew up in America.
- We can place the object between the verb and the particle with some transitive phrasal verbs: We put off their visit. = We put their visit off. They called off the match. = They called the match off.
- However, if the object is a pronoun, we always place it between the verb and the particle: We put them off. They called it off.
Practice

1) Fill each space with a suitable phrasal verb from the list on page 36.

1. If you want to .......... in life, you’ll have to work harder.
2. We’ll have to .......... before lunch time if we want to get there in time.
3. You’ll .......... with your work if you don’t get on with it.
4. I wanted to go to bed but she .......... till one o’clock in the morning.
5. It’s about time you .......... some hard work, isn’t it?
6. Why don’t you .......... a sport now that you have all this free time?
7. I’m going to .......... eating red meat after all these reports.
8. Can you .......... a minute while I check my diary?
9. If he .......... breaking the law like that, he’ll end up in prison.
10. What do you want to be when you ...........?

2) Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. This word must not be changed.

1. I hear they’re going to revive some of the old customs in our villages.
   back
   I hear they .......... some of the old customs in our villages.
2. She was born in New Zealand but raised in Australia.
   up
   She was born in New Zealand but .......... in Australia.
3. If you don’t stop misbehaving, I’ll have to ask you to leave the room.
   carry
   If you .......... misbehaving, I’ll have to ask you to leave the room.
4. I’m sorry but this month’s rent hasn’t been paid yet.
   behind
   I’m sorry but you .......... with the rent.
5. After Christmas, I’m going to do some serious job hunting.
   get
   After Christmas, I’m .......... some serious job hunting.
6. Her chatting about this and that stopped me from going to bed.
   up
   She .......... chatting about this and that.
7. They’ve rearranged the meeting for next week.
   put
   The meeting .......... till next week.
8. There’s no rush now – the performance has been cancelled.
   called
   There’s no rush now – they .......... the performance.

   - Why are policemen strong?
   - Because they .......... the traffic.
prefixes (1)

We use prefixes to change meaning (see also 5e). They rarely change the part of speech. (Most suffixes change the part of speech.)

• Many prefixes give a word a meaning which is the opposite or negative of the original. For example, we can use the prefixes dis or un:
  \textit{dis} + \textit{appear} = \textit{disappear}
  \textit{un} + \textit{tie} = \textit{untie}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>prefix</th>
<th>meaning/use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anti + adjective/noun</td>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>anti-clockwise anti-climax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anti + noun/adjective</td>
<td>against</td>
<td>anti-theft device anti-European</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>co + noun/verb</td>
<td>together</td>
<td>co-worker cohabit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis + verb</td>
<td>negative/ opposite</td>
<td>dislike disembark illegal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il + adjective</td>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>impossible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>im + adjective</td>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>indirect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in + adjective</td>
<td>between</td>
<td>intercontinental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter + adjective</td>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ir + adjective</td>
<td>wrongly/badly</td>
<td>mistook mishandle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mis + verb</td>
<td>too much</td>
<td>overdo overwork</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over + verb</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>outnumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out + verb</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>postgraduate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post + noun/verb</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>pre-arrangement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pre + noun/verb</td>
<td>in favour of</td>
<td>pro-Unions pro-European</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro + noun/adjective</td>
<td>below</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub + adjective</td>
<td>greater than</td>
<td>super</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>super + noun/adjective</td>
<td>across</td>
<td>transplant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans + noun/verb/adjective</td>
<td>negative/ opposite</td>
<td>unlock unaccessible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un + verb/adjective</td>
<td>not enough</td>
<td>undercook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under + verb</td>
<td>too little</td>
<td>undercharge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are a few rules:

• We use \textit{il} instead of \textit{in} with words that begin with \textit{l}:
  \textit{il} + \textit{legal} = \textit{illegal}

• We use \textit{im} instead of \textit{in} with words that begin with \textit{m} or \textit{p}:
  \textit{im} + \textit{polite} = \textit{impolite}

• We often use \textit{ir} instead of \textit{in} with words that begin with \textit{r}:
  \textit{ir} + \textit{responsible} = \textit{irresponsible}.

• Some common mistakes are:
  \textbf{×} You must \textit{unconnect} the cables first.
  \textbf{✓} You must \textit{disconnect} the cables first.
  \textbf{×} They expelled him for \textit{disbehaving}.
  \textbf{✓} They expelled him for \textit{misbehaving}.

• Note that many words with a prefix have a base part that never exists on its own. Here are examples:
  immediate, incontrovertible, uncalled-for

Practice

1 Add a correct prefix to the following words. You may use your dictionary.

1 \textit{.........} dependent  \hspace{1cm} 13 \textit{.........} Atlantic
2 \textit{.........} polite  \hspace{1cm} 14 \textit{.........} behaving
3 \textit{.........} do  \hspace{1cm} 15 \textit{.........} moral
4 \textit{.........} driver  \hspace{1cm} 16 \textit{.........} hear
5 \textit{.........} approve  \hspace{1cm} 17 \textit{.........} interpret
6 \textit{.........} behave  \hspace{1cm} 18 \textit{.........} national
7 \textit{.........} logical  \hspace{1cm} 19 \textit{.........} sleep
8 \textit{.........} zip  \hspace{1cm} 20 \textit{.........} relevant
9 \textit{.........} inform  \hspace{1cm} 21 \textit{.........} believe
10 \textit{.........} agree  \hspace{1cm} 22 \textit{.........} crowded
11 \textit{.........} eat  \hspace{1cm} 23 \textit{.........} understand
12 \textit{.........} historic  \hspace{1cm} 24 \textit{.........} natal
2 Complete the crossword with the correct prefixes.

Across
1 This prefix + words that begin with l means 'not'.
2 The ......-Siberian railway goes from Moscow to Vladivostock.
5 Never ......estimate the time you need to study for the exam.
7 We use this prefix to mean 'in favour of'.
8 The opposite of humane is ......humane.
10 They told me I am ......qualified for the job.
11 ......European protesters gathered round the embassy.
13 This prefix means 'wrongly' or 'badly'.

Down
1 Take the ......continental express train from Paris to Warsaw.
3 Do you believe in the ......natural?
4 ......exist means 'to exist at the same time'.
5 The opposite of familiar is ......familiar.
6 The boys ......appeared as soon as they saw the farmer coming.
8 The opposite of responsible is ......responsible.
9 If you ......date a cheque, you write a later date on it.
12 We use this prefix meaning 'not' in front of words that begin with m.

3 Add a prefix to the correct form of the word at the end of each line and use the word in the space on the same line. The first (0) is given as an example.

Attempts to communicate in a foreign language can easily (0) ....mische... .
I'm always (1) ............ by my attempts to get speak Greek.
The waiter on Mykonos (2) ............ what I wanted and instead
of beetroots brought me mushrooms. I (3) ............ mushrooms intensely
but when I asked him to (4) ............ them with beetroots he smiled,
went into the kitchen and (5) ............ with a plateful of aubergines.
He also (6) ............ my friendly attitude towards everyone I meet
and when I complained that they had (7) ............ the meat,
Manuel (that was his name if I'm not (8) ............ grinned and
twirled his moustache. To cap it all, I (9) ............ the bill and accused
the poor man of (10) ............ me! It was just my awful Greek again.
Exam practice 1

Part 1

For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A HECTIC TIME

Example: 0 A long time  B sometimes  C ages  D lately

Dear Trevor,

I know it’s been ..... (0) since I wrote to you but I’ve been very busy ..... (1) we decided to move into the country. The house in the village is not quite ready ..... (2) but as you can imagine ..... (3) the last few weeks we’ve had to chase up builders and plumbers and we’ve ..... (4) got a long way to go.

It’s been such a long time since we ..... (5) work on it I’ve almost forgotten how long it’s been exactly. We must have started it about seven years ..... (6) and we’ve ..... (7) spent a small fortune on it. We are ..... (8) living in our rather cramped flat where you ..... (9) us a few years ago but it ..... (10) to get unbearable and we ..... (11) to moving out. We are still ..... (12) around from morning ..... (13) night and it’s been particularly hectic ..... (14) the last week.

Anyway, ..... (15) all this was going on Karen fell and sprained her ankle which was the last thing we needed!

1 A every time  B ever since  C while  D before
2 A still  B already  C yet  D soon
3 A for  B as  C while  D since
4 A yet  B already  C nearly  D still
5 A have started  B start  C did start  D started
6 A before  B ago  C previous  D since
7 A still  B not  C already  D yet
8 A already  B still  C yet  D longer
9 A were visiting  B have visited  C had been visited  D visited
10 A begun  B is beginning  C begins  D begin
11 A have looked forward  B looked forward  C will look forward  D are looking forward
12 A rush  B rushed  C rushing  D be rushed
13 A and  B into  C till  D through
14 A during  B from  C in  D while
15 A in  B during  C while  D for
Part 2

For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (O).

FUTURE SHOCK

Who (O) win the election? Where (16) the best new jobs be found next year? Will plans to set up a colony on the moon (17) ahead and will ordinary members of the public (18) taking vacations on the moon? What are (19) to be the most successful electronics products of 2008? How will the Internet (20) changed not only business but people's lives (21) the middle of the 21st century? Will the government (22) back hanging for mass murderers? Famous futurist Alvin Toffler will be (23) these and other questions about the future when his new weekly TV programme (24) in the new year. Toffler, whose best-seller Future Shock was published in 1970, (25) be hosting a TV show which will (26) be reporting on what happened yesterday. Instead it will be (27) what is going to (28) tomorrow. Alvin Toffler, who by the end of this year will (29) been predicting the future professionally for nearly thirty years, told reporters: 'There's no future channel on TV – we (30) going to change all that'. Toffler's books make the stunning prediction that what is really going to change in years to come is the speed at which change itself takes place.

Part 3

For Questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (O).

Example: O I don't want Anne to come to the meeting. rather
I'd rather Anne didn't come to the meeting.

31 The last time I saw Helen was before she left for Australia. since
I ........................................ she left for Australia.

32 The cost of the wine is not included in the price of the ticket. not
The price of the ticket ........................................ the cost of the wine.

33 I applied but haven't had a reply yet. replied
I applied, but they ........................................ yet.

34 You don't seem to be enjoying yourself tonight. are
I get the impression ........................................ tonight.

35 I glanced at the letter while my boss was out of the room. waiting
I glanced quickly at the letter while ........................................ return.
36 It was the best film I had ever seen.
   never
   I ........................................ a good film before.

37 Paul just works for this firm, doesn't he?
   only
   Paul ....................................... for this firm, isn't he?

38 He learned to drive when he was eighteen.
   been
   He ........................................ he was eighteen.

39 At the moment he is writing articles for the Daily News.
   as
   At the moment he .......................... the Daily News.

40 Spending the whole morning gardening left her exhausted.
   doing
   She ........................................ all morning and was exhausted.

Part 4

For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (0) and (OO).

0 I am not sure what I'm going to do with myself

00 when I leave from school. Next week, our class are

41 having a meeting with the school careers officer

42 who they say is he going to tell us all about the different

43 jobs available. We'll also have be able to ask questions.

44 I am thinking of taking up evening classes to improve

45 my marks in maths because of my dream is to become

46 a doctor. Although my parents don't disagree with my

47 ambition they doubt whether I'm going for to get good

48 enough marks to get into university to do medicine. But

49 they don't want to discourage me from so I think they'll

50 agree with to the extra lessons. By the time I finish school

51 I will have been formed a much better idea of what I'd like

52 to do, but the problem is we are going to be have to

53 decide which subjects to study for university two years

54 before we will finish school. Anyway, whatever happens

55 I'm going to have to get on down to some hard work if
   I want to achieve my aims.
Part 5

For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

**NOT A COMPUTER WHIZZ-KID**

I was lazily (0) browsing through the small ads in the local newspaper when I saw an .................. (56) for a second-hand word ................ (57), so I decided to give them a ring to get more .................. (58). I have a computer but it doesn't really have a ................ (59) enough memory for the project I'm involved in at the moment. In most ................ (60) nowadays, it is becoming useful to be 'computer-literate' but in my ................ (61) it has become an absolute ................ (62). I must admit I do not get much ................ (63) out of sitting in front of a computer screen for hours, but I don't stand much chance of ................ (64) without computer skills. So I made an ................ (65) to see my bargain computer the next day.
Entry test

Underline the correct answer in 1–5.

1 Helen must/had to leave the meeting early because she had a train to catch.
2 What you must/should have done is call the police, not get involved yourself.
3 I will/could be able to speak better if I practise more.
4 Terry has done so little work, he should/needn’t have bothered to come to class today.
5 I didn’t need to/couldn’t get tickets after all – they were sold out.

Now look at 3a on page 46.

Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 6–10.

6 It ........ be weeks before the building is actually finished.
   A must     B would     C ought to     D could
7 You ........ even have lost your job by then, who knows?
   A should     B may     C can     D will
8 It ........ be a good movie – the reviews were very good.
   A can’t     B should     C could have     D must have
9 That ........ be Tim coming home now. Go and open the door for him, will you?
   A will     B can     C ought     D shall
10 Things ........ have been worse – everything seemed to be going wrong at once.
   A shouldn’t     B couldn’t     C mustn’t     D may

Now look at 3b on page 49.
Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 11–15.

11 She got the job ...... she was the best candidate.
   A owing to     B due to     C on account of     D because
12 Flight 502 has been delayed ...... to bad weather.
   A as          B for          C due          D on account
13 ...... you are unable to accept the job, we have offered it to someone else.
   A Because of  B As a result  C Thanks to      D Since
14 I locked the door ...... we could continue our discussion undisturbed.
   A in order to B in order    C so that       D for that
15 The pilots suddenly went on strike. ...... , our flight was cancelled.
   A As result  B With the result  C As a result  D With result

Now look at 3c on page 52.

Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 16–20.

16 There's no need to rush back – just ...... your time.
   A have       B get         C be on        D take
17 I ...... the FCE last week, but I didn't do too well.
   A wrote      B passed      C sat for      D obtained
18 Could you ...... me a hammer from the shed?
   A take       B carry       C bring        D deliver
19 The children were ...... so much fun, I hated to call them inside.
   A making     B doing       C being        D having
20 Ronald took ...... Julia from the first moment they met.
   A up         B to          C over         D out

Now look at 3d on page 55.

Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 21–25.

21 Isobel has all the right ...... to become a successful manager.
   A education  B qualifications C experiences D applications
22 Sometimes there's a lot of competition between children for their mother's ...... .
   A attraction B protection C attention D recognition
23 Several serious ...... have been made against him by the police.
   A investigations B demonstrations C suggestions D accusations
24 United were knocked out of the ...... in the first round.
   A organisation B competition C production D situation
25 They announced the ...... of the flight this morning.
   A cancellation B abolition C communication D resignation

Now look at 3e on page 58.
There are nine modal verbs:

- can
could
shall
should
may
might
will
would
must

- The third person singular does not take s.
- We use a bare infinitive (a verb without to) after all modal verbs:
  You should go home early.
- We form questions by inverting the modal verb and subject:
  Can you swim? Must I go to bed now?
- We form negatives by adding not or n't. We do not use do:
  I cannot swim. You mustn't tell lies.
- We often use modal verbs in tag questions and short answers:
  You can drive, can't you? Yes, I can. No, I can't.

- Modals do not exist in all tenses. There is normally no Past Simple form:
  The train might be in the station. (= present)
  The train might arrive late. (= future)
- There are Perfect forms of modal verbs:
  You could have done better.
- When a tense of a modal verb does not exist, we use another verb with the same meaning:
  X I could buy a ticket with any credit card.
  ✓ I was able to buy a ticket with my credit card.
  I had to help my father yesterday.
- We cannot use one modal verb after another:
  X She must can do it.
  ✓ She must be able to do it.
  X You will can go.
  ✓ You will be able to go.
- Don't have to is the opposite of must:
  You don't have to be a member.

**obligation and necessity**

Here are common uses of modals for obligation and necessity (similar verbs are in brackets):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>meaning/use</th>
<th>example (Present)</th>
<th>example (Past)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>must (have to)</td>
<td>obligation</td>
<td>You must eat less.</td>
<td>You should have eaten less.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should (ought to)</td>
<td></td>
<td>I must do some work.</td>
<td>I had to do some work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>You mustn't smoke.</td>
<td>You shouldn't have smoked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I have to return the book now.</td>
<td>I had to return the book immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>You should wear a seatbelt.</td>
<td>You should have worn a seatbelt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>He ought to apologise.</td>
<td>He ought to have apologised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(do not have to)</td>
<td>no obligation</td>
<td>We don't have to wear a tie.</td>
<td>We didn't have to wear a tie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must (have (got) to)</td>
<td>necessity</td>
<td>They must have clean water.</td>
<td>They had to have clean water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(need) (need to)</td>
<td></td>
<td>We have to get some sleep.</td>
<td>We had to get some sleep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(don't have to)</td>
<td>no necessity</td>
<td>I've got to find a job.</td>
<td>I had to find a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(don't need to) (needn't)</td>
<td></td>
<td>I need new glasses.</td>
<td>I needed new glasses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(don't have to)</td>
<td></td>
<td>We need to book in advance.</td>
<td>We needed to book in advance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(don't need to)</td>
<td></td>
<td>We don't have to wear a tie.</td>
<td>We didn't have to wear a tie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We needn't book in advance.</td>
<td>We needn't have booked in advance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We don't need to book in advance.</td>
<td>We didn't need to book in advance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**must and have to**

- *Must* is often personal and expresses someone's opinion. *Have to* often refers to laws and regulations:
  - You **must** get your hair cut. (= I think it’s a good idea)
  - You **have to** wear a uniform. (= It’s a regulation)
  - You **mustn't** tell lies. (= It’s necessary that you DO NOT lie)
  - You **don't have to** lie. (= It’s NOT necessary for you to lie)

- Unlike **must**, **have to** exists in all forms so we can use it wherever **must** is not possible: *She’s having to travel by bus instead.*

**need and need to**

We can use *need* as if it is a modal verb:

- No one **need** feel left out.
- We normally use *need* with a *to*-infinitive. It means the same as *have to*:
  - We **need to** get some sleep.
- *Need* is nearly always negative. *Not need to* is also possible:
  - You **needn't** go. (= modal pattern)
  - You **don't need to** go. (= normal negative pattern with don’t)

**ability and permission**

Here are common uses of modals for ability and permission. For asking, giving or refusing permission, etc., see 3b, page 50 (ordinary verbs are in brackets):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning/Use</th>
<th>Example (Present)</th>
<th>Example (Past)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>ability</td>
<td><em>She can</em> play the piano.</td>
<td><em>She could</em> play the piano from the age of five.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be able to)</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>We can</em> buy a new house now.</td>
<td><em>We were able to</em> buy a new house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cannot/can't</td>
<td>no ability</td>
<td><em>She can't</em> play the piano today.</td>
<td><em>She couldn't</em> play the piano yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not be able to)</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>She isn't able to</em> play the piano because her hand hurts.</td>
<td><em>She wasn't able to</em> play the piano because her hand hurt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>permission</td>
<td><em>You can</em> park here.</td>
<td><em>We could</em> park there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be allowed to)</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Visitors may</em> use the car park.</td>
<td><em>Visitors could</em> use the car park.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cannot/can't</td>
<td>prohibition</td>
<td><em>You can't</em> park here.</td>
<td><em>We couldn't</em> park there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Visitors may not</em> use the car park.</td>
<td><em>Visitors could not</em> use the car park.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be allowed to)</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Visitors are allowed to</em> use the car park.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cannot/can't</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Visitors are not allowed to</em> use the car park.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not be allowed to)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**be able to**

- We use **be able to** for particular instances, and it often suggests ‘managing to overcome difficulties’:
  - *She was able to* swim across the river although it was very wide.
  - *We were able to* pay although we were poor.
- We also use **be able to** for things which a person will be capable of doing in the future but not now:
  - *If she practises, she'll be able to* play Chopin.

**could**

- **Could** does not always have a past meaning:
  - *You can* visit the museum. (= now or in future)
  - *You could* visit the museum. (= now or in future)
  - *It can* be very cold at night. (= generally speaking)
  - *It could* be very cold at night. (= generally speaking)
  - See also 3b.
Practice

1 Underline the correct verb in these sentences.

1 When we were at school, we had to / ought to wear a uniform.
2 You don't have to / mustn't wear your seatbelt during the whole of the flight.
3 You should / have got to tell her that you are sorry.
4 You need / must be a member of the library before you can borrow books.
5 I don't need to / shouldn't wear glasses because my eyesight is still quite good.
6 We weren't allowed to / wouldn't talk to our partner because it was an examination.
7 We needn't have / couldn't have ordered so much food as nobody was hungry.
8 She didn't need / needn't have to take any money because her friend was going to pay.
9 When I first came to Madrid I could / couldn't speak only a few words of Spanish.
10 Did you have to / Must you have your hair cut before the interview last week?

2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. Use between two and five words, including the word given.

Example: The teacher gave me permission to leave the room. could
   The teacher said I could leave the room.

1 In the end, I couldn't make it to the party because I had too much work to do.
   able
   In the end, I ............... come to the party because I had too much work to do.

2 At school, she was the fastest runner in her class.
   could
   At school, she ............... than anyone else in her class.

3 Although I'm good at physics, I don't think I'll manage to pass the exam.
   able
   In spite of being good at physics I don't think ............... pass the exam.

4 We weren't obliged to attend all the classes because some of them were optional.
   have
   We ............... to all the classes because some of them were optional.

5 If I don't find a job soon, I won't be able to pay the bills.
   have
   I need to pay the bills so ............... find a job soon.

6 'All telephone calls made from the office must be paid for,' said the manager.
   had
   The manager told ............... for all telephone calls made from the office

7 I took a lot of suntan lotion with me but I didn't need it.
   taken
   I ............... so much suntan lotion with me.

8 The traffic warden said we weren't allowed to park the car outside the bank.
   could
   The traffic warden told ............... park the car outside the bank.

9 I think you can manage without a pullover in this weather.
   need
   You ............... wear a pullover in this weather.

10 Oxygen masks were essential when they got to the top of the mountain.
   had
   They ............... oxygen masks when they reached the top of the mountain.

Those who can, do; those who can't, teach.
GEORGE BERNARD SHAW
modal verbs (2)

certainty, probability and possibility

We use modal verbs to talk about certainty, probability and possibility (for will and be going to, see page 32). Here are examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>certainty: negative</th>
<th>possibility</th>
<th>probability</th>
<th>certainty: positive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She <em>can't be</em> in France.</td>
<td>She <em>may be</em> in France.</td>
<td>She'll <em>be</em> in France now.</td>
<td>She <em>must be</em> in France now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She <em>couldn't be</em> in France.</td>
<td>She <em>could be</em> in France.</td>
<td>She should /ought to be in France.</td>
<td>She <em>must be</em> in France.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= It's impossible, e.g. I saw her a moment ago)</td>
<td>(= I'm not sure)</td>
<td>(= She set off hours ago)</td>
<td>(= I'm certain)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Past                |                 |                           |                     |
|---------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|                     |
| She *can't have been* in France. | She *may have been* in France. | She must have been in France. |                     |
| She *couldn't have been* in France. |                     |                           |                     |

- We use will to express a strong probability that something is true, especially when we don’t have actual evidence at that moment: *That'll be Maria on the phone – she said she'd call.*
- We use must to express complete certainty: *That must be Maria on the phone – she's the only person with my new number.*
- We can also use had to be meaning 'must have been' to express certainty in the past: *She had to be the person I saw on the train.*
- We use can / could or will / would to form questions: *Who can that be on the phone? Who would have phoned so late?*

- We can use modal verbs of possibility to refer to the past, present or future: *Don't drink it – it could / may / might be poisonous.* (= present)
  *It can't / could / may / might have been poisonous.* (= past)
  *We may / ought to / might / should get a reply tomorrow.* (= future)
  *It could / may / might rain, so take an umbrella.* (= future)
- There is sometimes a change in meaning: *It may have / might have rained.* (= I'm not sure)
  *It could have rained.* (= but luckily it didn’t)
communicating

We also use modal verbs in the following situations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| making requests                    | **Can** I ask you to do me a favour?  
**Could** I ask you to do me a favour?  
**May** I use your telephone? (= polite)  
**Would** you do me a favour?  
**Would** you help me carry these bags?  
**Will** you please be quiet in here. |
| giving and refusing permission     | 'You **can** have the day off,' said the manager.  
You **can't** borrow my car tonight because I need it.  
**Could** I leave the class early today?  
You **may** register for the exam until the end of March. (= formal) |
| asking for advice                  | **Shall** I take the exam now or wait till later?  
**Should** I go by car or by train?  
**Would** you accept the job if you were me? |
| giving advice                      | You **should** get your hair cut.  
You **should have** had less to drink.  
You **ought to** use a decent dictionary.  
You **ought to have** revised a bit more. |
| making offers                      | **Shall** I help you clear the table?  
**Can** I give you a hand with your luggage?  
**Would** you like a lift to the airport? |
| making suggestions                 | **Shall** we open a window in here?  
We **can** hire a video and stay in tonight if you like.  
We **could** hire a video and stay in tonight. (= less definite) |
| complaining                        | You **could** at least have asked me before taking the money.  
You **should** make less noise while other people are asleep.  
You **shouldn't have** taken the car without asking me.  
You **ought to have** turned up on time.  
You **might** at least have helped with the washing up! |

---

**Practice**

1. Underline the correct modal verb in these sentences.

1. She **can/can't** be Italian with a name like Smith!
2. I **may/can't** be able to come.
3. A: Someone's at the door.  
   B: That **can be/will be** Joan.
4. You **could have been/must have been** crazy to do something as dangerous as that!
5. He **can't have been/may have been** the murderer because he has an excellent alibi.
6. I **might/can** not be able to come so don’t wait for me.
7. It **may/must** be cold tomorrow.
8. Who **could have/should have** done such a terrible thing?
9. Hurry up, we're late! We **might/should** have been ready hours ago.
10. He **could/can** have been the one who started the fire but we're not really sure.
Match a first sentence (1–10) with a second sentence (a–j) to make short exchanges.

1 ‘Shall we go to a Chinese restaurant this evening?’
2 ‘May I borrow your calculator for a moment?’
3 ‘Would you help me get the dinner ready?’
4 ‘You shouldn’t get upset so easily.’
5 ‘You ought to have gone to the doctor as soon as you felt bad.’
6 ‘Do you think I should go and complain to the manager?’
7 ‘I’m sorry but you can’t hand in the assignment a month late.’
8 ‘Could I have some time off to visit my friend in hospital?’
9 ‘Can I get you anything from the shops?’
10 ‘You shouldn’t have spoken like that to your mother.’

a ‘Not really; I’ll be popping out myself in a minute.’
b ‘I’d rather stay at home.’
c ‘Actually, it would be difficult to do without you right now.’
d ‘Could you give me another week then?’
e ‘It’s up to you really; it depends how strongly you feel.’
f ‘I’m sorry but I’m using it.’
g ‘I’ve apologised; what else can I do?’
h ‘Do I have to? I’ve got to do my homework.’
i ‘I can’t help it; he really makes me furious.’
j ‘I couldn’t because there was no one to take me.’

Read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓). If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word. The first two have been given as examples.

DISCOVERING INDIA

0 By the time you will get this letter I expect you will will ✓

00 have been in Calcutta for a week or so. You will...

01 have been there able to settle in a bit and get used to the...

02 place. It must can have been an exhausting journey...

03 It can’t have been being much fun flying non-stop for nearly...

04 twenty-four hours. I must to say I admire your decision...

05 to go and work in Calcutta. I know the poverty is...

06 depressing but the job at least should to be quite worthwhile...

07 I suppose your boss might have been sent you somewhere...

08 where there was war and famine so it could have been...

09 worse. And it really must have been a fascinating culture to explore –...

10 it mustn’t be more different from living in Manchester, I bet...

11 I wonder if you could able do me a favour? I’ve always wanted...

12 a genuine Indian sari – and it must be really easy to get...

13 hold of a good one there. I should have been given you the money...

14 before you left but I’ll put it in your bank account if you like...

15 I could and send you a cheque if you prefer but would you be able to cash it there? That’s all for now...

JUDGE: You’ve been found guilty of not stopping at a red traffic light when you should’ve done. What do you have to say for yourself?

ACCUSED: But I often stop at green traffic lights when I don’t have to!
link words or phrases: purpose and reason

**because, as, since**

*Because, as, and since have similar meanings; they show the reason or cause of something. They come before a clause:*

- **LINK WORD**
- **CLAUSE**
- **since**

- There is almost no difference in meaning between *because, as* and *since*, but *because* can emphasise the reason more strongly. *As* and *since* assume that the reason is obvious:
  - *I'll do it because I want to, not because you asked me to.*
  - *As/Since everyone is here, we can begin.* (= It is obvious)

- We use only *because* when we answer with a clause on its own:
  - 'Why are you late?' ‘*Because I missed the bus.*’

**because of, owing to, etc.**

*Because of, owing to, on account of and due to show the reason or cause of something. They come before a noun (phrase), not a clause:*

- **LINK WORDS**
- **NOUN**
- **PHRASE**

- *We stayed at home owing to the rain.*

- *They came here looking for work owing to the wages are higher.*

- *We use because of much more often than the others.*

- *Owing to is more formal than because of:*
  - *Owing to lack of money, the project will not continue next year.*

- *Due to often comes after the verb be:*
  - *The crash was due to bad weather.*

- Owing to cannot come after the verb be. We use due to:
  - *The accident was owing to human error.*
  - *The accident was due to human error.*

- *On account of often means 'because of a problem or difficulty':*
  - *He can't run very fast on account of his asthma.*

- *As a result of often means 'because of something that has already happened':*
  - *As a result of the pilots' strike, all flights have had to be cancelled.*

- We use *thanks to* to say that something, usually good, has happened:
  - *Thanks to Ron and his car, we've managed to get all the deliveries done on time.*

**in order to, so as to**

We use *in order to* and *so as to* before a verb which expresses the purpose of an action. *In order to* and *so as to* can be more emphatic than to alone:

- *She went on a diet in order to lose weight*
- *She went on a diet so as to lose weight.*
- *She went on a diet to lose weight.*

- We can use the negative forms *in order not to* and *so as not to*, but we cannot use *not to* on its own:
  - *She sent on a diet not to be fat.*
  - *She went on a diet in order not to be fat.*
  - *She went on a diet so as not to be fat.*
**in order that, so (that), etc.**

We use *in order that* and *so (that)* before a clause expressing purpose. The clause contains a modal verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINK WORDS</th>
<th>CLAUSE WITH MODAL VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We’re leaving now</td>
<td>so that we can arrive in order that early.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**consequently, as a result, etc.**

We can use *consequently, as a result* and because of *that* to express the result of an action mentioned earlier. When we use them at the beginning of a sentence, they are followed by a comma:

- We talked until the early hours of the morning.
- Consequently,
- As a result,
- Because of that,

| • We use *so* in mid position to introduce a result. We do not put a comma after it:
| She couldn’t eat meat *so* she just had vegetables. |

**so or since?**

Compare *so* and *since*:

- *X* Since it’s his birthday on Monday, *so* he’s having a party.
- ✓ Since it’s his birthday on Monday, he’s having a party.
- ✓ It’s his birthday on Monday *so* he’s having a party.

---

**Practice**

1. Underline the correct link word or phrase.

1. I phoned *because/since* I need to speak to you.
2. *Since/Because* the rain has stopped, we can go back in the garden.
3. *Because of/Because* the bus was late, I missed the meeting.
4. We took a taxi *in order not to/not to be* late.
5. The traffic jam is *due to/owing to* major roadworks.
6. Emma came first *on account of/as a result of* all her hard work.
7. I’m going by bus *in order to/owing to* save costs.
8. I’ll reply by e-mail *so that/consequently* he can buy the ticket today.
9. She didn’t water the plants, *since/so* they died.
10. We’ll join the euro *because/because of that* our economy will improve.

---

![I do this because I want to, not because I have to.]

---

53
2 Fill in each space in these sentences with a suitable link word or phrase. More than one answer may be possible.

1 Sandra's upset and it's all ............... to your behaviour.
2 Prices have risen ............... of an increase in demand.
3 The 15.30 train to Sheffield has been cancelled ............... to circumstances beyond our control.
4 ............... understand how the human body works, you need some knowledge of chemistry.
5 ............... there was no food in the house we rang for a pizza.
6 The vase was put on top of the cupboard ............... it would not get broken.
7 I was scared when I walked home ............... the street was so dark.
8 ............... milk is so good for you, why don't you drink more of it?
9 I didn't go ............... I didn't want to leave you alone.
10 She started to use e-mail ............... that she could send messages more quickly.
11 I caught the plane in order that I could get there on time but in the end it took longer as a ............... of delays.
12 The bank refused to give the company another loan ............... it went bankrupt.

3 Read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a (√). If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word. The first two have been done as examples.

A LETTER OF APOLOGY

0 I am writing in order to apologise for my behaviour ............... √
00 last weekend. First of all, I arrived late because of I ............... of
1 wanted to avoid getting to there too early and ............... √
2 causing you any inconvenience. As for everyone else ............... √
3 had decided to arrive on time, I was the last to arrive, which ............... √
4 must have been looked rather impolite but I assure you it was all ............... √
5 because of being good intentions. I also thought the party was going to ............... √
6 be informal so as I wore jeans. As a result, I must have looked ............... √
7 rather too odd. I would also like to explain why I hardly ate any ............... √
8 food all evening. As of I'm a vegetarian, I was ............... √
9 unable to enjoy the delicious food you and your wife had prepared. ............... √
10 Since that it has been years since I ate meat, I do hope you will ............... √
11 appreciate my feelings on this. Moreover, I to regret asking ............... √
12 you to put the cat out. This was due to that my allergy to cats. I sincerely ............... √
13 hope it didn't catch cold as result of she being outside on such ............... √
14 a chilly evening. Finally, owing that to carelessness on my part ............... √
15 wine was spilt all over your carpet. I will do all I can in order for ............... √
   to get it cleaned, whatever the cost.

'Why are false teeth like stars?'
'Betre they come out at night and go in in the morning.'
### 3d have, take, bring

We can use *have*, *take* and *bring* with many nouns to form fixed expressions. In these cases, these verbs have little meaning of their own and the meaning is that of the noun that follows. These are examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>expression</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>She's probably upstairs having a bath.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a bath/shower</td>
<td>We <strong>had dinner</strong> and then went for a walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have dinner/lunch, etc.</td>
<td>I'll collapse if I don't <strong>have a drink</strong> soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a drink</td>
<td>I must <strong>have a bite to eat</strong>; I'm starving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have sth to eat</td>
<td><strong>He has no experience</strong> of running a large company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have (an) experience</td>
<td>You can't stop people from <strong>having fun</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have fun</td>
<td>Its almost a year since we <strong>had a real holiday</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a holiday</td>
<td>Before I <strong>had the operation</strong> I could hardly walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have an operation</td>
<td>We're <strong>having a party</strong> on Saturday. Can you come?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a party</td>
<td>If it's sunny we could <strong>have a picnic</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a picnic</td>
<td>I'm just going to lie down and <strong>have a rest</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a rest</td>
<td>I don't <strong>have time</strong> now. Do you <strong>have time</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have time</td>
<td><strong>Take a taxi</strong> – it's quicker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take the bus, a taxi, etc.</td>
<td>Who <strong>takes care of</strong> their small children when they're at work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take care of sb</td>
<td><strong>She took control of</strong> the situation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take control of sth</td>
<td>When did you <strong>take the decision</strong> to resign?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take a decision</td>
<td><strong>She took a deep breath</strong> and dived off the cliff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take a deep breath</td>
<td>Why do we have to <strong>take so many exams</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take an exam</td>
<td>Don't forget to <strong>take your medicine</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take her, their, etc. medicine</td>
<td>I don't <strong>take part in</strong> plays but I like to watch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take part (in sth)</td>
<td>The concert <strong>took place</strong> at Wembley.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take place</td>
<td><strong>Take a seat</strong> and the manager will see you in a minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take a seat</td>
<td>Don't rush – <strong>take your time</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take time, take your time</td>
<td><strong>Thank you for bringing the mistake to my attention.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>The police <strong>brought charges against</strong> him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring sth to sb's attention</td>
<td>The evening was <strong>brought to a close</strong> with a song.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring charges (against sb)</td>
<td>It's time we <strong>brought the whole business to an end</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring sth to a close</td>
<td>It was so moving it <strong>brought a lump to my throat</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring sth to an end</td>
<td><strong>The film brought tears to my eyes.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**take place or occur?**

If an event takes place, it happens after a plan of some sort:

The contest takes place every four years.

- If something occurs it happens without someone planning it:

  Where did the accident occur?

**take, bring, get or fetch?**

If we take something (from a place), we generally mean 'steal something':

- I went shopping and took a pullover.
- I went shopping and bought a pullover.
- I took a letter.
- I got a letter. / I received a letter.

**phrasal verbs with take**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take after sb</td>
<td>resemble sb</td>
<td>Jenny really takes after her mother.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth back</td>
<td>return sth</td>
<td>If the shirt doesn't fit, take it back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take back sth</td>
<td>say you regret saying sth</td>
<td>I'm sorry I was wrong. I take back what I said.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth down</td>
<td>make a note of sth</td>
<td>Let me take down your name and number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take down sth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sb in</td>
<td>deceive sb</td>
<td>Don't be taken in by products claiming to help you lose weight in a week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take in sth/sbh</td>
<td>give a home to sb/sth</td>
<td>She's always taking in stray animals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take in sth</td>
<td>include sth</td>
<td>The price takes in the cost of accommodation and meals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth in</td>
<td>reduce the width of (clothing)</td>
<td>This dress is too big — I'll have to take it in a bit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>leave the ground</td>
<td>As the plane was taking off, I remembered I hadn't turned the iron off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth off</td>
<td>remove (clothing)</td>
<td>Take your coat off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth off</td>
<td>remove (make-up)</td>
<td>I forgot to take my make-up off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sb on</td>
<td>employ sb</td>
<td>We're taking on 50 new employees this year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take on sth/sb</td>
<td>agree to do sth</td>
<td>He's taken on too much work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sb out</td>
<td>invite sb to a place</td>
<td>He was looking forward to taking his daughter out to a nice restaurant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take over sth</td>
<td>take control of sth</td>
<td>Who's going to take over the shop when Mr Jones retires?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take to sb/sth</td>
<td>begin to like sb/sth</td>
<td>I took to Paul as soon as I met him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth up</td>
<td>start an activity</td>
<td>Glen has taken up painting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>discuss sth</td>
<td>I'm going to take the matter up with my lawyer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take up sth</td>
<td>start a job</td>
<td>She took up her first teaching post in 1970.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>accept a job</td>
<td>Are you going to take up the offer of a job with them?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>take a period of time</td>
<td>Writing her homework took up most of the weekend.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Complete these sentences with one of the following expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring this meeting to an end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have fun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take a seat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>having a shower</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take part</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have an operation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takes place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have any experience</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have lunch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Don't give him any supper because he's going to .......... .
2. Do you .......... of using these computers?
3. There will be a discussion afterwards and you can all .......... .
4. If there is no other business, I'd like to .......... .
5. .......... and someone will be with you shortly.
6. Pauline's just .......... - she'll be downstairs soon.
7. The tennis tournament .......... in June.
8. Goodbye, enjoy the trip and .......... !
9. We could .......... in town while we're shopping, if you like.
10. I think we .......... for one more question before the Minister leaves us.

Fill in each space in the text with one verb. The first (0) is given as an example.

**EXAM SUCCESS**

There are many ways of making sure you .......... (0) well in the FCE examination, both before and during the exam. If you don't .......... (1) much experience of examinations, read the following notes carefully. First of all, if you are .......... (2) the exam the next day, make sure you .......... (3) a good night's rest. Check that you know exactly where the exam is going to .......... (4) place. You should not sit the exam on an empty stomach so .......... (5) a good breakfast - but don't overdo it. Don't forget to .......... (6) with you a pen, pencil and eraser. Try and get to the examination centre in good time so you .......... (7) enough time to find the right room. As soon as you .......... (8) your answer sheet, .......... (9) a deep breath, check your name and number and .......... (10) any errors to the attention of the supervisor immediately. Read the instructions carefully and .......... (11) your time answering before the invigilator .......... (12) the exam to a close.

Complete these sentences with out, on, off, up, after, in or back.

1. We ought to get rid of this table, it takes .......... far too much space.
2. If you're hot, you can take .......... your jacket.
3. This meat can't be fresh, it smells awful - I'm taking it .......... to the butcher.
4. John's always been difficult - he must take .......... his dad.
5. You shouldn't take .......... more responsibilities than you can handle.
6. It must be difficult to give .......... teaching in order to travel.
7. We'll need to take .......... some temporary teachers for the summer.
8. She took .......... her glasses when she had her photograph taken.
9. He was such a charmer - he took me .......... completely.
10. Rachel took me .......... to lunch.

**CUSTOMER:** Waiter, this steak tastes awful. Take it back to the chef.

**WAITER:** Sorry, sir, but the chef won't eat it either.
suffixes (2)

We normally use suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech. Sometimes a suffix produces a change in meaning (see also 1e, 4e, 10e, 12e, 13e).

**verb + (a)tion, (i)tion or sion**

We can use the suffixes (a)tion, (i)tion or sion to make nouns from verbs. Many of these nouns are abstract. The use of abstract nouns often makes a sentence sound rather formal:

- *It is important to preserve the rainforests.*
- *The preservation of the rainforests is important.*
  
  (= more formal)

- Abstract nouns are always uncountable:
  - *The omission of the victims' names was deliberate.*
  
- However, sometimes abstract nouns also have a concrete meaning. In these cases they can be countable:
  - *Your essay is full of errors and omissions.*

- Some common errors with abstract nouns are:
  - ❌ They are in danger of to be extinct.
  - ✔ They are in danger of extinction.
  - ❌ He doesn't have much fantasy.
  - ✔ He doesn't have much imagination.

- Here is a list of common nouns ending in *tion* and *sion*. Check any meanings that you do not know in a dictionary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abolish</td>
<td>abolition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accuse</td>
<td>accusation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply</td>
<td>application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend</td>
<td>attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>civilise</td>
<td>civilisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compete</td>
<td>competition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conserve</td>
<td>conservation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demonstrate</td>
<td>demonstration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to become extinct</td>
<td>extinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>imagination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inflate</td>
<td>inflation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inspire</td>
<td>inspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppose</td>
<td>opposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revise</td>
<td>revision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Practice**

1. Complete the spaces in the table. You can use a dictionary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>divide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investigate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preserve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>produce</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repeat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satisfy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>react</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Use a suitable form of the verbs below to fill in the spaces in the sentences.

- suggest  attract  recognise  demonstrate  hesitate  explain  promote  cancel

1. The .............. between Tom and Mary was immediate.
2. The Oscar award was in .............. of her great acting ability.
3. I can say without .............. that she's the best student I've ever had.
4. He couldn't give the court any .............. for his strange behaviour.
5. I'd like a job with good .............. prospects.
6. We're fully booked but sometimes there are last-minute ..............
7. Can I make a ..............? Why don't we hire a car?
8. The students decided to hold a .............. against higher fees.
Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given.

Example: They use local labour when they construct roads.

carry
They carry road construction out with local labour.

1 I calculate the bill as being much less.
comes
According to my .......... to much less.

2 They were determined to educate their daughter the way they wanted.
give
They were determined to ............ they wanted.

3 Will he be fit enough to compete in the match on Saturday?
take
Will he be fit enough to ............... on Saturday?

4 The authorities are planning to investigate the crash thoroughly.
thorough
The authorities are planning to carry .......... into the crash.

5 Shortly afterwards, Dawson was invited to speak at the conference.
given
Shortly afterwards, Dawson .......... to speak at the conference.

6 They celebrate New Year’s Day in the main square of the city.
held
New Year’s Day .......... the main square of the city.

Fill in the spaces in the following text using a suitable form of the word given at the end of the lines. The first is given as an example.

GLOBALISATION

It is no .................. to say that the world has become a global village.

Modern methods of ................ (1) have made the world much smaller and the problems we face such as ................ (2) are not restricted to this country. The ................ (3) of the rainforests in Brazil is everyone’s problem and the ................ (4) which is common in many African countries is a challenge for Europe too. The ................ (5) of rare species is a tragedy for the planet as a whole and the ................ (6) of oil supplies will shake the ................ (7) of the world’s economy.

The ................ (8) of the environment is the responsibility of all nations, rich and poor. However, uncontrolled economic ................ (9) between strong and weak nations leads to the ................ (10) of greater inequality between the rich and poor nations of the world.

I can resist everything – except temptation.
Oscar Wilde

Imagination is more important than knowledge.
Albert Einstein
Entry test

Underline the correct answer in 1–5.

1. Who **did** you **pay** / **paid** you the money to?
2. What **have** you **been** / **did** you doing all day?
3. Why **you** **didn't** / **didn't** you give me a ring?
4. **What time** / **How long** does the lesson last?
5. **Whose** / **Who** painting won first prize, Picasso's or Van Gogh's?

Now look at **4a** on page 62.

Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.

6. They'd rather go somewhere else, ....... they?
   A. hadn't  B. didn't  C. wouldn't  D. would
7. You've got three sisters, .......?
   A. have you got  B. don't you  C. isn't it  D. haven't you
8. She needs to be more careful, .......?
   A. don't she  B. doesn't she  C. doesn't she need  D. needn't she
9. You're having an operation next week, .......?
   A. isn't it  B. don't you have  C. don't you  D. aren't you
10. Let's go to the theatre tonight, .......?
    A. will we  B. do we  C. won't we  D. shall we

Now look at **4b** on page 64.
Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.

11 Mary loves going to the cinema and .........
   A so do I      B I too do      C I do so      D I love

12 They haven’t got a computer and .........
   A neither have I   B neither I have   C I haven’t got   D I don’t neither

13 Parent: Did my son pass the test?
   Teacher: .........
   A I afraid no   B I afraid not   C I’m afraid to   D I’m afraid not

14 John: I’d rather stay at home.
   Mary: .........
   A Would you?   B Wouldn't you?   C Had you?   D Hadn't you?

15 They never go skiing and .........
   A I haven’t too   B I don’t either   C I do neither   D I haven’t either

Now look at 4c on page 66.

Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.

16 We got in the car and made ........ Chicago as fast as we could.
   A to      B at      C towards      D for

17 They grabbed the money and just made .........
   A to      B from      C off      D on

18 We’d like to make the spare room ........ a child’s bedroom.
   A to      B up      C into      D for

19 You ought to ........ more of an effort at school.
   A do      B take      C try      D make

20 They made an urgent ........ on the radio.
   A announcement      B advertisement      C disturbance      D appearance

Now look at 4d on page 69.

Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 21–25.

21 Under no ........ will I allow such a thing.
   A situation      B situations      C circumstances      D circumstance

22 The economy needs more ........ if it is to grow.
   A investigation      B insurance      C encouragement      D investment

23 They put the accident down to his .........
   A carelessly      B careless      C carelessness      D carefulness

24 What is the legal age of ........ in your country?
   A retirement      B retiring      C retired      D retire

25 Her encouragement and support gave me the ........ to carry on.
   A force      B warmth      C strength      D purpose

Now look at 4e on page 73.
Grammar

4a question words

questions about the subject

When we ask questions about the subject of a sentence, the word order in the question and the answer is the same:

Ben designed this house.
Who designed this house?
× Who did build this house?
✓ Who built this house?

• We use what, who, which, whose and how many in questions about the subject.

questions about the object

Questions about the object need an auxiliary verb (do, have, is, etc.) before the subject:

Wren designed this cathedral.
What did Wren design?

• We use what, which, who, whose, when, where, how often, etc. in questions about the object.

× Which cathedral did Wren build?
✓ Which cathedral did Wren build?

Here is a summary of question words with examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>example: subject question</th>
<th>example: object question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>Who is teaching you?</td>
<td>Who do you know here? (Whom is very formal.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what</td>
<td>What caused the problem?</td>
<td>What film did you see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what kind of</td>
<td>What kind of people live here?</td>
<td>What kind of TV programmes do you watch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which</td>
<td>Which book sold most?</td>
<td>Which picture do you like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whose</td>
<td>Whose book won the prize?</td>
<td>Whose book did you borrow?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how many</td>
<td>How many pupils came to the lesson?</td>
<td>How many people did you see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why</td>
<td></td>
<td>Why did you get up so late?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when</td>
<td></td>
<td>When did you go to England?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how</td>
<td></td>
<td>How do I get to your house?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how far</td>
<td></td>
<td>How far is the college from here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how long</td>
<td></td>
<td>How long does it take to get there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how often</td>
<td></td>
<td>How often do you go swimming?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

position of prepositions

• Note the change in the position of a preposition in questions about the object:

I gave the book to John. becomes: Who did you give the book to? or To whom did you give the book? (= formal)
She sent the letter from India. becomes: Where did she send the letter from? or From where did she send the letter? (= formal)

what or which?

We use what when the choice is open. We use which when there is a limited choice:

What colour do you like? (= open choice)
Which colour do you prefer, red or blue? (= limited choice)
What countries have you visited? (= open choice)
Which countries in South America have you visited? (= limited choice)
1. We live in the old town.
2. I gave the book to Valerie.
3. Michael lent me his car.
4. I got married 20 years ago.
5. He plays basketball best.
6. I'd like the green pullover, please.
7. I like big woolly pullovers.
8. A madman murdered the President.
9. A madman murdered the President.
10. The madman murdered the President.
11. I go to the cinema at least once a week.
12. The journey takes about six hours from here.
13. To get to my house, you take the bus and get off at Wood Green.
14. He keeps the key in that box.
15. There's a litre of milk left.

Put the words in the questions in the right order.

1. Where/you/born/were?
2. Where/you/did/grow up?
3. What/like/did/you/doing/at school?
4. What/like/were/you/as/a young child?
5. When/decide/you/did/an actor/to become?
6. How/parents/your/did/react?
7. What/say/when/told/did/you/they/them?
8. How/you/when/old/left/were/you/home?
9. What/job/first/your/in the theatre/was?
10. What/of/directors/working/kind/with/you/do/like?
question tags

We add question tags to the end of a statement:
*It's Monday today, isn't it?*

- The general pattern for using tags is:
  Positive sentence + negative tag
  *She likes Beethoven, doesn't she?*
  Negative sentence + positive tag
  *She doesn't like Beethoven, does she?*

- We form question tags with an auxiliary verb (e.g. be, have, do) + personal pronoun (e.g. it, you, she, he, they). If there is an auxiliary verb in the statement, we repeat the same auxiliary verb in the tag:
  *You're from Greece, aren't you? They don't speak English, do they?*

- The tense of the auxiliary verb agrees with the tense in the main verb:
  *She came home late, didn't she? (= Past Simple)*

- If there is a modal verb in the statement, we repeat the same modal verb in the tag:
  *It shouldn't cost that much, should it?*

- After main verbs without an auxiliary verb or modal, we use do in the tag:
  *She plays the piano, doesn't she?*

special cases

- The question tag for *I am* is *aren't I?*
  However, for *I'm not*, we use *am I?*

- To form a tag question for *Let's..., we use shall: Let's surprise them, shall we?*

- To form a tag for an imperative, we use *will: Turn the sound down, will/won't you?*

- To form a tag for *There..., we add there: There isn't any danger, is there?*

- After somebody, someone, everybody, everyone, no one, etc. we use *they* in the tag:
  *Everybody is sleeping, aren't they?*

- After nothing, something, and everything, we use the personal pronoun *it* in the tag:
  *Nothing happened, did it?*

Here is a summary of verbs used in tags:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>statement without an auxiliary or modal</th>
<th>verb in tag</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>be</em></td>
<td><em>do</em></td>
<td><em>You like him, don't you?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>have (= possess)</em></td>
<td><em>be</em></td>
<td><em>This is yours, isn't it?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>have got</em></td>
<td><em>do</em></td>
<td><em>You don't have a watch, do you?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>have (= auxiliary)</em></td>
<td><em>have</em></td>
<td><em>You haven't got a brother, have you?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>do</em></td>
<td><em>have</em></td>
<td><em>You haven't seen Joe, have you?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>can</em></td>
<td><em>do</em></td>
<td><em>You do aerobics, don't you?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>could</em></td>
<td><em>can</em></td>
<td><em>She can swim, can't she?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>may</em></td>
<td><em>could</em></td>
<td><em>We could do better, couldn't we?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>will</em></td>
<td><em>might</em></td>
<td><em>It may rain, mightn't it?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>would</em></td>
<td><em>will</em></td>
<td><em>You won't tell them, will you?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>needn't</em></td>
<td><em>would</em></td>
<td><em>He'd like that, wouldn't he?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>must</em></td>
<td><em>need</em></td>
<td><em>We needn't come, need we?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>have to</em></td>
<td><em>must</em></td>
<td><em>We mustn't make a noise, must we?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>need to</em></td>
<td><em>do</em></td>
<td><em>We have to work harder, don't we?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>she</em></td>
<td><em>do</em></td>
<td><em>She needs to be there, doesn't she?</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
uses of question tags

We use question tags

• to get agreement from the person we are speaking to:
  You don’t come from Spain, do you? (= voice falls on the tag = the speaker expects the answer no)
  You come from Italy, don’t you? (= voice rises on the tag = the speaker expects the answer yes)

• to ask politely:
  You couldn’t give me a hand with this box, could you?
  You don’t know anything about computers, do you?

• to order people to do things politely. The tag is usually positive:
  ✗ Be careful, don’t you!
  ✓ Be careful, won’t you?
    Clear the table, will you?

• to make an informal offer:
  Have a drink, won’t you?

• to make a polite suggestion:
  Let’s go to the beach, shall we?

Practice

Fill in the spaces with the correct tag.

1. Your dad does the cooking, ..............?
   Yours never does the housework, ..............?

2. There’s not much we can do about it, ..............?

3. It’s a beautiful day, ..............?
   Yes. Let’s go for a walk, ..............?

4. You’ve got a bicycle, ..............?
   Yes. You no longer have yours, ..............?

5. You weren’t cheating in the test, ..............?
   No, I’d never cheat, ..............?

6. You don’t know his secret, ..............?

7. You could take up tennis, ..............?

8. You’d rather carry on with volleyball, ..............?

9. She lost her temper, ..............?

10. Yes, but she shouldn’t have, ..............?

2. Complete the sentences using an appropriate tag and any other necessary words.

Example: You enjoyed the film.
You say: ‘That film was great, wasn’t it?’

1. Your friend has just read a book which you like, too.
   You say: ‘It’s a ..............?’

2. You look at your watch. It’s early.
   You say: ‘We’ve got ..............?’

   You say: ‘Let’s have ..............?’

4. You want to make sure your name is on the list.
   You say: ‘I’m ..............?’

5. You want to go out for a walk.
   You say: ‘Let’s ..............?’

6. You want to check if the train leaves from platform 2.
   You ask: ‘The train ..............?’

7. You can’t reach the salt.
   Ask someone to pass it to you: ‘Pass ..............?’

8. Your little sister has got cake crumbs on her sweater.
   You say: ‘You’ve been ..............?’

9. You’re worried about your friend going climbing.
   Tell your friend: ‘Take care, ..............?’

10. You want to check that you are leaving tomorrow morning, as agreed.
    You ask: ‘We’re ..............?’
phrases of agreement

short answers
We often answer yes/no questions with short answers using an auxiliary verb:
Can you come? Yes, I can.
• We repeat the auxiliary verb or modal verb which we use in the question:
  Is there a light on? Yes, there is. / No, there isn’t.
  Aren’t you Penny’s brother? Yes, I am.
  Are they good friends? Yes, they are.
  Do they get on? Yes, they do.
  Does she like acting? No, she doesn’t.
  Will you be there? No, I won’t.
  Would you ever lie? No, I wouldn’t.
  Do you have to leave now? No, I don’t, but I prefer to.
• The short answer for Shall we …? is Yes, let’s/
  No, let’s not:
  Shall we have a party? Yes, let’s. / No, let’s not.

expressing agreement with so and neither
In informal speech, we can use certain phrases which include so and neither, usually with do or have, to express agreement with something said previously.
• We use so + an auxiliary verb to express agreement with affirmative statements:
  × Bill likes it and I also.
  ✓ Bill likes it and so do I.
  Max: I like rock music.
  Bill: So do I.
• We use neither + an auxiliary verb to express agreement with negative statements:
  × She hasn’t got any money and I haven’t.
  ✓ She hasn’t got any money and neither have I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>statement</th>
<th>reply (agreement)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’ve got a poster of Michael Owen.</td>
<td>So have I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I usually go to the seaside in the summer.</td>
<td>So do I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t have a photo of her.</td>
<td>Neither do I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They didn’t pass the test.</td>
<td>Neither did I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John hasn’t arrived yet.</td>
<td>Neither has Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steve didn’t come to the rehearsal.</td>
<td>Neither did Michael.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She hasn’t finished her homework.</td>
<td>Neither have I.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Are you going to give me the money?
echo questions

We often use short questions in informal conversation to confirm that we have listened to what the other person has said, or to show interest in what the other person is saying. These echo questions do not need an answer.

• The pattern for using these echo questions is:
  Positive statement – positive echo question
  Ben: I have already been to the States.
  Fred: Have you?
  Negative statement – negative echo question
  Ben: But I haven’t been to Australia.
  Fred: Haven’t you?

• When the subject of the statement is an object, animal, etc., we use it in the echo question:
  ‘This bike is very expensive?’ ‘Is it?’

• When the subject is a group, we use they:
  ‘United will win on Saturday.’ ‘Will they?’

• After statements without an auxiliary verb or modal verb, we use do in the echo question:
  ‘Mary arrived last night.’ ‘Did she?’
  ‘Geese fly south for the winter.’ ‘Do they?’

As with question tags and short answers, we repeat the auxiliary verb or modal verb in the echo question which was in the original statement:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>statement</th>
<th>echo question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I can come by taxi.</td>
<td>Can you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can’t swim.</td>
<td>Can’t you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maria doesn’t play the piano.</td>
<td>Doesn’t she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Smiths haven’t arrived yet.</td>
<td>Haven’t they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve got two dogs.</td>
<td>Have you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John isn’t coming.</td>
<td>Isn’t he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emma could walk when she was one.</td>
<td>Could she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You ought to be more careful.</td>
<td>Should she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You should change university.</td>
<td>Should I?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We shouldn’t drink so much.</td>
<td>Shouldn’t we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll do the washing up.</td>
<td>Will you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I won’t be able to pay the bill.</td>
<td>Won’t you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’d rather stay at home.</td>
<td>Would you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’d never lie to you.</td>
<td>Wouldn’t you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice

1 Complete the following questions with appropriate short answers.

1 ‘Have you done the washing up yet?’ ‘Yes, ............... .’
2 ‘Does he need his nappy changed?’ ‘No, ............... .’
3 ‘Would you like to come with me to the shops?’ ‘Yes, I think ............... .’
4 ‘Are you going to visit John while you’re in London?’ ‘No, ............... .’
5 ‘Am I all right with my hair like this?’ ‘No, ............... .’
6 ‘Could you climb that wall if you had to?’ ‘Yes, ............... so.’
7 ‘Had you been waiting long before the police arrived?’ ‘No, ............... .’
8 ‘Can Bob come to the cinema, too?’ ‘No, I’m afraid ............... .’
9 ‘You wouldn’t tell.’ ‘Oh yes ............... !’
10 ‘Shall we go?’ ‘Yes, ............... .’

2 Add an appropriate echo question.

1 ‘I can’t use this computer.’ ‘ ............... ?’
2 ‘Some parrots live longer than humans.’ ‘ ............... ?’
3 ‘I’d wait a bit longer if I were you.’ ‘ ............... ?’
4 ‘I won’t bother about it.’ ‘ ............... ?’
5 ‘She’s got a rich uncle.’ ‘ ............... ?’
6 ‘The motor can’t work without petrol.’ ‘ ............... ?’
7 ‘He always makes me laugh.’ ‘ ............... ?’
8 ‘She never says she’s sorry.’ ‘ ............... ?’
9 ‘That dog barks all night.’ ‘ ............... ?’
10 ‘Arsenal won the semi-final.’ ‘ ............... ?’
11 ‘I could be there by six o’clock.’ ‘ ............... ?’
12 ‘Elephants cry.’ ‘ ............... ?’
3 Fill each space in the following short exchanges with an appropriate auxiliary verb.

Example: A: She hasn’t finished painting her house yet.
        B: Hasn’t she?

1 A: I haven’t got a computer yet.
   B: __________________ you?
2 A: I __________________ lend you my bike, if you want.
   B: Can you? Thanks.
3 A: You shouldn’t take more than three of those pills a day.
   B: __________________ I?
4 A: We __________________ have to be going home now.
   B: Will we?
5 A: I’d rather stay at home tonight.
   B: __________________ you?
6 A: We could have done more to help him.
   B: __________________ we?
7 A: You don’t have to invite them again.
   B: __________________ I?
8 A: They won’t be able to visit this Christmas.
   B: __________________ they?
9 A: She ought to apologise.
   B: __________________ she?
10 A: I’m afraid she hasn’t got a clue.
    B: __________________ she?

4 Match a statement (1–10) with an appropriate short answer (a–j).

1 They’ve got a lovely house in the country.
2 I like going to the theatre.
3 I don’t really enjoy thrillers.
4 I’ve never seen such a huge car before.
5 Mike didn’t do his homework.
6 I paid to get into the theatre.
7 They can’t speak French.
8 You shouldn’t lose your temper.
9 I’d love to be in Hawaii now.
10 You should save some money if you want to go to India with them.

   a So did I.
   b Neither should you.
   c Neither can she.
   d So should you.
   e So do I.
   f So have we.
   g Neither do I.
   h Neither have I.
   i So would I.
   j Neither did Tony.

HUSBAND: I think our son got his intelligence from me, don’t you?
WIFE: Yes, I think so. I’ve still got mine.
do or make?

Here are some verb phrases with do and make.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrase</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>I did my best – what else could I do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do your best</td>
<td>He crashed the car and did a lot of damage to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do a lot of damage</td>
<td>'I try and do a bit of exercise every day.' 'Do you?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do some, etc. exercise</td>
<td>Smoking does harm to your health.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do harm</td>
<td>x I made my homework. ✓ I did my homework.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do homework</td>
<td>x She makes the housework. ✓ She does the housework.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do (the) housework</td>
<td>Scientists will have to do more research into the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do research</td>
<td>I had some shopping to do before I came home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do the, etc. shopping</td>
<td>'We do science every day at school.' 'So do we.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do a subject at school</td>
<td>She's doing very well at school, isn't she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do badly/well</td>
<td>Do some work and then we'll go for a drink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do some work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>She made an attempt to break the world record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make an attempt</td>
<td>How did your son learn to make his own pizzas?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a cake, pizza, etc.</td>
<td>I'm just making some coffee if you want some.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make the/some coffee</td>
<td>You'll have to make more of an effort if you want to succeed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make an effort</td>
<td>The pupil made an excuse after being late for the lesson.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make an excuse</td>
<td>He made a fortune out of importing expensive cars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a fortune</td>
<td>You shouldn't make fun of the way people talk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make fun of sb/sth</td>
<td>I tried to fix the car myself but I made a complete mess of it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a mess (of sth)</td>
<td>If I've made a mistake, I'll correct it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a mistake</td>
<td>She made a lot of money as a model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make money</td>
<td>Make the most of the opportunity to travel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make the most (of sth)</td>
<td>Who made that noise?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a noise</td>
<td>'Did you make notes as the lecturer was speaking?' 'Yes, I did.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make notes</td>
<td>I'll make you an offer you can't refuse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make an offer</td>
<td>Have you made much progress with your Spanish?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make progress</td>
<td>I can't make sense of what you're saying. Speak more slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make sense (of sth)</td>
<td>The last bus had gone so I made my way home on foot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make one's way back/home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**phrasal verbs with do and make**

Here are some common phrasal verbs with *do* and *make*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning/use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do away with sb/sth</td>
<td>abolish, get rid of sb/sth</td>
<td>Europe has <strong>done away with</strong> duty-free shopping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do sb out of sth</td>
<td>cheat sb</td>
<td>The sales assistant <strong>did me out of</strong> 5 euros.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do without sth</td>
<td>manage to live without sb/sth</td>
<td><em>I can't afford a car so I'll just have to do without.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do sth up</td>
<td>fasten, tie sth</td>
<td><em>I can't do my laces up.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do up sth</td>
<td>repair, redecorate sth</td>
<td><em>They did up the house and sold it.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could do with sth</td>
<td>need, want sth</td>
<td><em>I could do with</em> something to eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do with sth</td>
<td>have a connection with sth</td>
<td><em>The problem has nothing to do with me.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make away with sth</td>
<td>steal sth</td>
<td><em>Thieves made away with</em> her jewellery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make for somewhere</td>
<td>move towards somewhere</td>
<td><em>Two thieves made for the window.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make of sth</td>
<td>understand, interpret sth</td>
<td><em>What do you make of their proposal?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make off (with sth)</td>
<td>(steal sth and) leave quickly</td>
<td><em>They attacked him and made off with his watch.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make out sth</td>
<td>be only just able to hear, see, understand sth</td>
<td><em>I can't make out her handwriting.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make sth out</td>
<td>combine together, form</td>
<td><em>Tourism makes up 70% of their income.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make up (of sth)</td>
<td>invent an excuse, etc.</td>
<td><em>She made up a silly story about the post being late.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make up sth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Practice**

Put the following with the correct verb to make verb phrases.

- an appointment
- badly
- a cup of coffee
- a difference
- a dress
- good
- your hair
- your homework
- a living
- marks on the wall
- a mistake
- a phone call
- a profit
- a suggestion
- well

- a bad impression
- the bed
- a decision
- the dishes
- French
- a good impression
- harm
- a job
- a loss
- Maths
- money
- Physics
- sth for a living
- the washing up
- some work

---

70
2 Match the verb phrases (1–10) with the meanings (a–j).

1 make notes
2 do badly
3 make an attempt
4 make a journey
5 do harm
6 do some exercise
7 make sense
8 make a fortune
9 make sure
10 do your best

Both players made for the ball at the same time.

a check that sth is certain
b injure
c work and become rich
d try as hard as possible
e write down information
f try
g not be successful
h travel
i practise a set of movements to stay healthy
j understand because it is clear

3 Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of do or make.

1 Her job has something to .................. with marketing.
2 Girls .................. up half of the students in the school.
3 You'll have to .................. without your dinner if you don't get back in time.
4 She sits in front of the mirror for ages .................. herself up.
5 The government have decided to .................. away with the old tax law.
6 When the bell rang, the students .................. for the door.
7 Let's .................. the store room into an extra kitchen, shall we?
8 Speak louder – I can't .................. out what you're saying.
9 .................. up your coat – it's cold.
10 I was .................. out of ten pounds in the shop this morning.
11 They mugged the old lady and .................. off with her handbag.
12 If you .................. your best to explain the problem, I'm sure she'll understand.
13 What did the robbers .................. off with?
14 It's about time you .................. some exercise – you're getting a bit overweight.
15 I don't know what to .................. of Christina's odd behaviour just lately.
16 I could have .................. with more help.
17 I don't believe him – he's .................. it up!
18 How many times a week do you .................. the shopping?
4. Complete the questions with *do* or *make* and then write an answer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Work</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. What would you like to ............... for a living?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Is ............... a lot of money important to you?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. What would you wear to ............... a good impression at a job interview?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Would you accept a well-paid job if it ............... harm to your health?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Does it ............... a difference to you if your boss is a man or woman?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Would you ............... a job which involved responsibility for people's lives?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Are you a good student?</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7. Do you always .......... your homework?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Which subject .......... you do well in at school?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How do you feel when you .......... a mistake in your English?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. What do you do if you .......... badly in an exam?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. What kind of exercises do you like .......... in class?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Do you .......... notes while you're listening to the cassette in English?</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Fill each gap in the following text with one suitable word.

**Overdoing it**

'OK, you can .......... (1) your shirt up now,' said Doctor Hymes. He had just given me a thorough check-up and was .......... (2) detailed notes on a big sheet of paper.

'What do you .......... (3) of it all, doctor?' I asked anxiously.

'Well, the first thing is that you could .......... (4) with a good rest. You've been overdoing it a bit haven't you?' I admitted I had been .......... (5) a lot of overtime recently. I had taken a lot on and had .......... (6) a bit of a mess of it all and was suffering from stress. He agreed that this probably had a lot to .......... (7) with it. I had also .......... (8) the mistake of starting to smoke again: in fact my diet was now largely made .......... (9) of coffee and cigarettes. The doctor then reminded me that coffee did a lot of .......... (10) to our nervous system and of course cigarettes .......... (11) a lot of damage to the whole system. He said I should try and .......... (12) without coffee for a few days and make a serious .......... (13) to cut out smoking altogether.

'And make .......... (14) you have a proper meal every day,' he warned. His last piece of advice was that I should find time to .......... (15) some jogging every day. I promised him I'd do my best.

*There's no need to do housework – after four years the dirt doesn't get worse.*

QUENTIN CRISP
We normally use suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech. Sometimes a suffix produces a change in meaning (see 1e, 3e, 10e, 12e, 13e).

**abstract nouns**

Abstract nouns name an idea, feeling experience or a state rather than an object person or particular instance.

Abstract nouns are always uncountable:

- There are no reliable evidences.
- There is no reliable evidence.
- They were satisfied with the new equipments.
- They were satisfied with the new equipment.
- However, some abstract nouns also have concrete meanings. In these cases they can be countable:
  - Appearances can be deceptive.
  - We should consider all her strengths and weaknesses.

**ance / ence**

We add *ance* or *ence* to many verbs to form abstract nouns. For abstract nouns ending in *(a)t/on, (i)tion or sion, see 3e:

- accept + *ance* = acceptance
- exist + *ence* = existence

- Many adjectives which end in *ant* or *ent* become abstract nouns by changing *t* to *ce*:
  - fragrant – fragrance
  - dependent – dependence

**ment**

We can also add *ment* to many verbs to form abstract nouns:

- agree + *ment* = agreement
- Note that many nouns ending in *ment* have only a concrete meaning:
  - document, monument, ointment

**ness**

We can add *ness* to many adjectives to form abstract nouns:

- good + *ness* = goodness
- Some of these nouns can be countable:
  - Thanks for the many kindnesses you’ve done me.

**th**

We use *th* with numbers (except one, two and three) to form ordinal numbers:

- fourth, fifteenth, eightieth
- We also use *th* to form abstract nouns which are usually connected with size or quality:
  - growth, warmth

Here are examples of abstract nouns using the suffixes *ance, ence, ment, ness* and *th*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ance</strong></th>
<th><strong>ence</strong></th>
<th><strong>ment</strong></th>
<th><strong>ness</strong></th>
<th><strong>th</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acceptance</td>
<td>absence</td>
<td>advertisement</td>
<td>brightness</td>
<td>breadth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allegiance</td>
<td>affluence</td>
<td>achievement</td>
<td>carelessness</td>
<td>depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annoyance</td>
<td>confidence</td>
<td>commitment</td>
<td>emptiness</td>
<td>fortieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appearance</td>
<td>correspondence</td>
<td>embarrassment</td>
<td>greatness</td>
<td>growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrogance</td>
<td>defence</td>
<td>employment</td>
<td>happiness</td>
<td>health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoidance</td>
<td>existence</td>
<td>encouragement</td>
<td>kindness</td>
<td>hundredth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distance</td>
<td>emergence</td>
<td>enjoyment</td>
<td>loneliness</td>
<td>length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disturbance</td>
<td>experience</td>
<td>entertainment</td>
<td>sleepiness</td>
<td>strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>importance</td>
<td>intelligence</td>
<td>environment</td>
<td>tenderness</td>
<td>umpteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insurance</td>
<td>occurrence</td>
<td>fulfilment</td>
<td>tightness</td>
<td>warmth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reluctance</td>
<td>patience</td>
<td>movement</td>
<td>ugliness</td>
<td>wealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resistance</td>
<td>violence</td>
<td>refreshment</td>
<td>weakness</td>
<td>width</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice

1 Write abstract nouns for the following words, using one of the following suffixes: ance, ence, ment, ness, th. Use your dictionary.

   1 inherit .................. 12 improve ..................
   2 convenient ............... 13 willing .................
   3 clumsy ................... 14 retire ....................
   4 obey ...................... 15 silent ..................
   5 invest .................... 16 disappoint ............
   6 develop .................. 17 excite ..................
   7 kind ...................... 18 polite ..................
   8 effective ................ 19 argue ...................
   9 fair ...................... 20 punish ..................
  10 prefer ................... 21 selfish .................
  11 innocent ................ 22 sixty ...................
Make adjectives from the following nouns.

1. intelligence .............................. 6. ugliness ..............................
2. carelessness .............................. 7. width ..............................
3. patience .............................. 8. emptiness ..............................
4. depth .............................. 9. confidence ..............................
5. arrogance .............................. 10. million ..............................

Make nouns from the following verbs.

1. disturb .............................. 6. insure ..............................
2. correspond .............................. 7. annoy ..............................
3. emerge .............................. 8. empty ..............................
4. sleep .............................. 9. defend ..............................
5. resist .............................. 10. commit ..............................

Use the word given at the end of each line to form a word that fits the gap in the same line.

A FORMAL LETTER

Dear Sir or Madam,
I read your ........................................ (1) in International Business magazine and I am writing for more information concerning entry ........................................ (2) for the course in English Language ........................................ (3). Could you tell me what language ........................................ (4) are required? I do not possess the First Certificate and would like to know if ........................................ (5) on the course depends on having the FCE? In fact, as I am an ........................................ (6) for an international ........................................ (7) company I would be interested in a course which focuses on language ........................................ (8) for both social and ........................................ (9) purposes. I would also like to know the ........................................ (10) from the college to London and if ........................................ (11) at all classes is obligatory, or whether an occasional ........................................ (12) for purposes of travel is acceptable. I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,
Nelson Fernandez

Experience is the best teacher.
Exam practice 2

Part 1

For Questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (O).

THE MYSTERY OF THE MARIE CELESTE

Example: O A Because of B As for C Since D As a result

We spotted the Marie Celeste drifting in mid-Atlantic on December 5, 1872. ....... (O) the ship looked damaged, the captain said the three of us ....... (1) board her at once ....... (2) investigate and ....... (3) him back any information we could get hold of. We ....... (4) climb on board without too much difficulty but we couldn't see any sign of life anywhere. The crew of the Marie Celeste ....... (5) have abandoned ship ....... (6) the ship's small lifeboat was missing. Some navigational equipment which a ship of that kind ....... (7) had on board was also missing. The crew ....... (8) had much time to abandon ship because they had not ....... (9) with them many of their personal possessions. Luckily, we ....... (10) to find the ship's log which helped us a great deal in our ....... (11). The last time the captain of the Marie Celeste had ....... (12) an entry in the ship's log was November 21. Something extraordinary must have taken ....... (13) between this date and December 5. The captain of the ship, Benjamin Briggs, had extensive ....... (14) of the high seas so what had made him ....... (15) the decision to abandon ship in the middle of nowhere?

1 A have
   B had to
   C could
   D ought

2 A in order that
   B so that
   C in order to
   D for to

3 A take
   B get
   C carry
   D bring

4 A couldn't
   B managed
   C unable
   D were able to

5 A can't
   B must
   C hadn't
   D could

6 A since
   B on account of
   C as a result of
   D owing to

7 A shouldn't
   B should have
   C shouldn't have
   D should be

8 A ought not have
   B must not
   C couldn't have
   D would have

9 A taken
   B fetched
   C brought
   D had

10 A could
    B able
    C knew
    D managed

11 A information
    B solution
    C suggestion
    D investigation

12 A took
    B passed
    C wrote
    D made

13 A part
    B care
    C place
    D control

14 A qualification
    B education
    C experience
    D travel

15 A bring
    B choose
    C have
    D take
Part 2

For Questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

WHAT A DAY!

(0) says a day at home is restful? I was in the middle of (16) the dinner and I still had a huge pile of ironing to (17). No sooner had I ironed the first shirt (18) the doorbell rang. I had (19) most of the housework during the morning and had even had time to (20) some shopping. I had just about enough time left to (21) the beds and perhaps (22) a few of my daily keep-fit (23) when the salesman from the vacuum cleaner company (24) up at the door. He had phoned my wife to (25) an appointment. She had (26) me about it but it had slipped my mind. 'I'm not interrupting anything, (27) I?' he said with one of those false smiles people (28) on when they are trying to (29) you something. 'We did say one o'clock, (30) we?' He smiled again and asked if my wife was at home.

Part 3

For Questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

Example: 0 She put on thick socks because she didn't want to get cold feet.
so
She put on thick socks so as to avoid getting cold feet.

31 A friend is looking after the baby while I'm out.
care
A friend ........................................... the baby while I'm out.

32 It's possible that she didn't hear what I said.
might
She ........................................... what I said.

33 The noise outside made it difficult for me to concentrate fully.
because
I ........................................... of the noise outside.

34 The burglar wore gloves so as to avoid leaving any fingerprints.
order
The burglar wore gloves ................................... any fingerprints.
35 It's a pity you didn't get your bicycle brakes repaired immediately.
   ought
   You ........................................ your bicycle brakes repaired immediately.

36 It was raining so they cancelled the football match.
   owing
   The football match ......................................... the rain.

37 The manager gave me permission to have the day off.
   could
   The manager ................................................ the day off.

38 She spoke too fast for them to understand.
   because
   They ...................................................... she spoke too fast.

39 I expect you were very tired after your long flight.
   been
   You ...................................................... very tired after your long flight.

40 A serious accident led to the road being closed.
   result
   The road had to be ........................................ a serious accident.

Part 4

For Questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line.

FINDING A PEN-FRIEND

41 The Pen-Pal scheme makes up every effort to match individuals

42 in different countries. Only when on rare occasions have we

43 failed to find clients pen-pals. If you are interested in you should

44 fill in the form asking for details about yourself. We need to

45 know the hobbies and sports you like as only if then

46 can we match you with a suitable partner. To tell us

47 which subjects you like doing at school and if you have

48 any requirements as far as a food is concerned. Most pen pals

49 end up with exchanging visits and it is vital that you feel

50 at ease when you will visit each other. We do our best to

51 avoid obvious clashes. Before you make out your

52 choice of pen-pal make sure you have looked at several

53 possible partners; someone they may make a very good

54 impression on you until you will have seen the other pen-

55 pals so take your time before you make up your mind.
Part 5

For Questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

SUPERLATIVE VACUUM CLEANERS

We all know how .................. (0) housework can be and sweeping the carpet must be one of the most .................. (56) of .................. (57) chores. We think we have come up with a .................. (58) to back-breaking carpet cleaning – our new range of state of the art vacuum .................. (59) provide a quick and .................. (60) answer to dust, however deeply ingrained. We would be happy to send you .................. (61) about our new vacuum cleaners; our leaflets contain a complete .................. (62) of the latest models, and if you would like a .................. (63) of how they work why not take up our free .................. (64) offer today with no .................. (65) to buy. Just send off the form below or ring us on 101 243 679 now!
Entry test

Underline the correct answer in sentences 1–5.

1. If you don't hurry / will hurry, you'll miss the train.
2. What can / will I do if she refuses to listen to me?
3. His French won't improve provided / unless he studies more.
4. If I had / will have more time, I would take up tennis.
5. If I were / would be in your position, I'd buy a new suit.

Now look at 5a on page 82.

Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.

6. I .......... happy to advise you if you'd asked me.
   A. had been  B. would have been  C. would be  D. will be
7. If she .......... her driving test, she would have bought a car.
   A. would have passed  B. has passed  C. passed  D. had passed
8. I wouldn't have lent him the money if he .......... desperate.
   A. has not been  B. wasn't been  C. hadn't been  D. couldn't be
9. If you'd run faster, you .......... the bus.
   A. should've caught  B. wouldn't catch  C. could've caught  D. might catch
10. If I hadn't worked hard when I was young I .......... where I am now.
    A. won't have been  B. would be  C. hadn't been  D. wouldn't be

Now look at 5b on page 84.
Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill spaces in 11–15.

11 I wish I ........ more money.
   A have     B had     C will have     D has
12 If only I ........ a little bit slimmer.
   A will be   B be      C being      D were
13 I do wish you ........ make less noise.
   A to       B will     C did        D would
14 I wish we ........ on the same flight tomorrow.
   A were travelling  B will travel  C would travel  D had travelled
15 If only I ........ the chance to study when I was younger.
   A have had  B will have  C was having  D had had

Now look at 5c on page 86.

Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill spaces in 16–20.

16 I ........ to pass all my exams at the first attempt.
   A am wishing   B am wanting  C am hoping  D am desiring
17 Farmers are ........ a good harvest this year.
   A waiting     B looking forward  C hoping  D expecting
18 I am really looking forward ........ to camp again this summer.
   A go         B be going  C to going  D to go
19 She ........ her work passionately and will never give it up.
   A likes      B is fond of  C keen on  D loves
20 I can't stand ........ to people who complain all the time.
   A listen  B I listen  C listening  D to have listened

Now look at 5d on page 89.

In questions 21–25, add the correct prefix in the spaces to complete the word.

21 It was a very attractive plan but quite ........ practical.
22 A third of the electorate remain ........ decided about how they will vote.
23 The local people feel ........ trustworthy towards the police.
24 He faced accusations that he had been ........ respectful to his headteacher.
25 The noise coming from next door was so loud it was ........ bearable.

Now look at 5e on page 92.
Grammar

5a First and Second Conditionals

Conditional clauses begin with *if* (or a word such as *when* which means the same as *if*) and follow basic patterns (see also 5b). This Section deals with patterns which form the First, Second and Zero Conditionals:

**First Conditionals**

We use First Conditionals to talk about events which are possible. The Conditional clause can refer to the present or the future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditional clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>if</em> + Present Simple</td>
<td><em>will</em> + bare infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If it rains,</em></td>
<td><em>we will stay at home.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The Conditional clause can come before or after the main clause. We use a comma at the end of the Conditional clause when it comes first:
  - *If you don't try harder, you will fail.*
  - *You will fail if you don't try harder.*
- Other structures are possible, depending on what you want to say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditional clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>if</em> + Present Simple</td>
<td>modal verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If you behave yourself,</em></td>
<td><em>you can come.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>if</em> + Present Simple</td>
<td><em>be going to</em> (future)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If you don't work,</em></td>
<td><em>you're going to fail.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>if</em> + Present Simple</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If you need anything,</em></td>
<td><em>ask.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>if</em> + Present Continuous</td>
<td><em>will</em> + bare infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If we're leaving soon,</em></td>
<td><em>I'll get my coat.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>if</em> + Present Perfect</td>
<td><em>will</em> + bare infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If I've finished,</em></td>
<td><em>I'll be able to come.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>if</em> + Present Perfect</td>
<td>modal verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If you've finished,</em></td>
<td><em>you can go out.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td><em>and/or + will</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| *Eat less* | *and you'll get slim.*

**Second Conditional**

We use the Second Conditional for unlikely situations in the present or future:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditional clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>if</em> + Past Simple</td>
<td><em>would</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If I had enough money,</em></td>
<td><em>I'd retire.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Instead of *would* we can use other modal verbs:
  - *If I lost my job, I might go abroad for a while.*
- Compare First and Second Conditionals:
  - *If I lose my job, I'll find life very difficult.*
  - (= there is a possibility – First Conditional)
  - *If I lost my job, I'd find life very difficult.*
  - (= there is no evidence – Second Conditional)

**Zero Conditional**

We use the Zero Conditional to show that one action, result, etc. always follows another. We often use *when* for *if*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditional clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Simple</td>
<td>Present Simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If/When water freezes,</em></td>
<td><em>it turns to ice.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>When I travel by boat,</em></td>
<td><em>I'm always sick.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(just) in case

This means 'because it is possible that...' and usually comes after the main clause (see page 97):

- *Paul will bring you a sweater in case it gets cold.*

provided (that); as long as

These phrases suggest that there is one vital condition (see also page 97):

- *Provided you rest, you'll make a full recovery.*

**unless**

We can use *unless* to replace *if...not* in Conditionals (see also page 97). After *unless*, we use a Present tense to talk about the future:

- *Unless you leave now, you will be late.*
- *You will be late unless you go now.*
Practice

1 Complete the sentences using these words and phrases.

was leaving can't might starts am would be becomes take should

1 If I ................ not busy, I'll visit you.
2 If he ................ careful, he wouldn't break things.
3 If he were slimmer, he ................. much more attractive.
4 If she ................ Prime Minister, she'll raise taxes.
5 Unless you stop wasting time, I'm ................ right now.
6 If you don't give me more information, I ................. help you.
7 If a fire ................., the alarm goes off.
8 You ................. make your own food if you don't like my cooking.
9 ................. more exercise and you'll soon feel better.
10 If the weather improves, I ................. go for a stroll.

2 Write two sentences using the information. The first should express a likely event and the second a less likely but still possible event.

Example: we leave at eight / we arrive on time
likely: If we leave at eight o'clock, we'll arrive on time.
less likely: If we left at eight o'clock, we'd arrive on time.

1 am not busy / come and pick you up
likely: ...........................................
less likely: ...........................................

2 you fall / break your leg
likely: ...........................................
less likely: ...........................................

3 I drink too much wine / I feel sleepy
likely: ...........................................
less likely: ...........................................

4 you get the job / you have more freedom
likely: ...........................................
less likely: ...........................................

5 the questions be easy enough / everyone pass the test
likely: ...........................................
less likely: ...........................................

3 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given.

Example: Her job is tiring because she doesn't have a secretary. not
If she had a secretary, her job would not be so tiring.

1 Give us your vote and we promise to make this country great again. long
We'll make this country great again ................................ us your vote.

2 There will be no more unemployment, if we win the elections. jobs
If we come to power, ................................ for everybody.

3 We will build more schools if we can afford to. enough
Provided ................................, we will build more schools.

4 They won't let you into the theatre without a ticket. unless
You can't get into the theatre ................................ a ticket.

5 Bring your sun lotion because a heatwave is possible. case
Bring your sun lotion ................................ a heatwave.
Third Conditional

We use the Third Conditional to talk about an event or situation that did not happen in the past:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditional clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>if + Past Perfect</td>
<td>would + Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If Bruce had asked me, I would have said 'yes'.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

× If I wouldn't have become a teacher, I would like to be an actor.
✓ If I had not become a teacher, I would have liked to be an actor.

- Notice how we can make either clause negative, with changes in the meaning:
  If I had taken an umbrella, I wouldn't have got wet. (= but I did get wet)
  If I hadn't taken an umbrella, I would have got wet. (= but I didn't get wet)
- Both clauses can be negative:
  They wouldn't have missed their plane if they hadn't woken up late. (= but they did wake up late, and they did miss their plane)

• Instead of would, we can use could or might modal verbs in the main clause:
  If you'd asked, I could've told you the answer.
  I might have gone to the party if I had known about it.

• We often use if only meaning 'I wish very strongly' (see 5c):
  If only he had asked, I'd have helped him.

Mixed Conditionals

Sometimes we make sentences which mix Second and Third Conditionals, especially when a past event has an effect in the present:

If you hadn't invited me, I wouldn't have gone to the party. (= I did go to the party – Third conditional)
If you hadn't invited me, I wouldn't be here now. (= I'm at the party now – Third + Second Conditionals)

Practice

1 Complete these sentences to make appropriate Third Conditional or Mixed Conditional sentences, using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Example: If you ................. (come) to the theatre yesterday, you ................. (enjoy) the play.
If you had come to the theatre with me yesterday, you would have enjoyed the play.

1 If I ................. (visit) Athens last year, I ................. (phone) you.
2 If only I ................. (know) you already had tickets, I ................. (not get) any for you.
3 If you ................. (start) coming to the course earlier, you ................. (could pass) the exam.
4 If I ................. (not be) so shy at the party last Saturday, I ................. (might make) more friends.
5 If you ................. (not spend) so much money, I ................. (not be) angry now.
6 I ................. (could become) an accountant if I ................. (be) good at maths.
7 She ................. (get) promoted last year if she ................. (not argue) with the boss.
8 He ................. (not get) the job, if he ................. (not wear) a tie.
9 If I ................. (meet) you before, my life ................. (be) different.
10 If he .......... (not see) the other car, there .......... (be) a serious accident.
2 Make Third Conditional sentences for each of the following situations. Begin with the words given.

Example: I was tired. I went to bed early.
If I hadn't felt tired, I wouldn't have gone to bed early. or:
If I hadn't felt tired, I would have gone to bed later.

1 I didn't have enough money. I didn't take a taxi.
If ________________________________

2 I wasn't interested in the film. I didn't go to the cinema.
If ________________________________

3 We took the wrong turning. We arrived late.
If ________________________________

4 Romeo thought Juliet was dead. He committed suicide.
Romeo wouldn't ________________________________

5 Oliver was punished. He asked for more food.
If Oliver ________________________________

6 The building had weak foundations. It fell down.
The building wouldn't have ________________________________

7 I didn't go downstairs. I was afraid of the dark.
I might ________________________________

8 You didn't run fast. You didn't come first.
You could ________________________________

9 I didn't know she was the examiner. I made a silly joke.
Had ________________________________

10 She didn't have a car. She couldn't have driven there.
If she ________________________________

3 Fill each space in the following text with one suitable word.

All the difference

I often wonder how my life would have different if on that particular day I walked in the other direction. Or what have happened if - in those few seconds - I walked just a little bit faster? She wouldn't been able to do what she did, say the things she said. If it not been for these shy words of greeting, I would not here now - I would probably in the same city I grew up. It is amazing how our lives depend on the most minute details: a split-second decision which makes all the difference. I ever have found romance at all. I hadn't met Francesca that day and if she decided not to walk on that path beside the trees? I couldn't possibly done what I did in my life if we not met on that bright, sunny morning. And if the sun had not shining and the birds singing, she would probably have even spoken to me.
I wish, if only

wishes about the present

We use wish with Past Tense forms (Simple and Continuous) to express regret about present situations (see also 5d):
- I wish I was taller. (= I'm not very tall)
- I wish I was going on holiday with you. (= but I'm not)
- I wish you were more help. (= but you're not)
- I wish I were can replace I wish I was. To many people, I wish I were sounds more correct:
  I wish I were taller.
- We use wish with could to express a wish for a present situation to be different:
  I wish I could use a computer well.
  \[ \times \] I wish I would tell her about it.
  \[ \checkmark \] I wish I could tell her about it.

Here is a summary of patterns using wish:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb form after wish</th>
<th>time reference</th>
<th>example (+ meaning)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past Simple</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>I wish I knew the answer. (= I don't know)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Simple</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>I wish I was/were better at sports. (= I'm not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Continuous</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>I wish I was/were going with you. (= I'm not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>I wish I could give you an answer. (= I can't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>I wish you would be quiet. (= Your talking irritates me.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>future</td>
<td>I wish I had known you then. (= but I didn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could have</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>I wish I could have explained. (= I wasn't able to)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

if only

If only can be more emphatic than I wish. The verb forms after if only are the same as the patterns with wish:
- If only I had more money! (= but I haven't)
- If only I was going on holiday with you!
- If only you were here. (= but you're not)
- If only the sun would come out!
- If only you could be here! (= but you're not)
- If only I'd listened to you! (= but I didn't)
- If only he could have explained! (= but he wasn't able to)
Practice

1 Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. Some sentences require a negative.

1 Bruce wishes he ............... (have) more money so he could buy a new sweater.
2 I wish it ............... (snow) now that it's Christmas.
3 I wish I ............... (be) taller so that I could be in the basketball team.
4 I wish you ............... (stop) watching television while I am talking to you.
5 I wish you ............... (do) that. It annoys me.
6 I wish the holidays ............... (come) so we could go off to the seaside.
7 I wish they ............... (build) that block of flats right in front of our window.
8 Of course Tom wishes he ............... (come) with us Paris, but he has to stay here and work.
9 I wish we ............... (go) to the match on Saturday but we're visiting my uncle instead.
10 I wish you ............... (keep) your mouth shut yesterday. Now Mary knows everything.
11 If only ............... (lose) all my money. Now I'm broke.
12 Peter is always late. If only he ............... (turn up) on time for a change!

2 Here are some problems in brackets. How could they have been avoided? Use the words and phrases to help you write two sentences about each problem using I wish and If only.

- play fewer computer games
- keep calm
- eat less
- lose temper
- walk more
- use bins
- watch less TV
- use car less often
- save water
- let someone else drive
- waste water
- take more exercise
- protect forest
- drive carefully
- recycle more paper
- take rubbish home

1 (I've gained a lot of weight.)
   I wish ..............................................
   If only ..............................................

2 (The rivers and reservoirs have dried up.)
   I wish ..............................................
   If only ..............................................

3 (He crashed his car.)
   I wish ..............................................
   If only ..............................................

4 (He had a row with his best friend.)
   I wish ..............................................
   If only ..............................................

5 (People drop litter in the street.)
   I wish ..............................................
   If only ..............................................

6 (We are cutting down too many trees.)
   I wish ..............................................
   If only ..............................................

7 (People use their cars when they don't need to.)
   I wish ..............................................
   If only ..............................................

8 (Children don't read enough nowadays.)
   I wish ..............................................
   If only ..............................................
3 Write a sentence about each problem using *I wish* or *if only* and the word in brackets.

*Example: The weather is awful. (improve)*

*I wish the weather would improve. / If only the weather would improve.*

1. People leave the tap running all the time. (turn off)

2. Your brother is very angry. (calm down)

3. The postman hasn’t arrived and I’m waiting for an important letter. (arrive)

4. People hunt animals for sport. (stop)

5. The people next door have their TV on very loud. (turn down)

6. Your friend keeps complaining about everything all the time. (stop)

7. It doesn’t rain enough. (more)

8. Your favourite football team has lost every match so far. (win)

9. I can’t wait for Christmas. (come)

10. Too much rubbish is thrown away. (recycle)

4 What are people saying or thinking in these situations? Complete each statement.

1. *If only* ...........................................

2. *If only* ...........................................

3. *If only* ...........................................

4. *If only* ...........................................

5. *If only* ...........................................

6. *If only* ...........................................

7. *If only* ...........................................

8. *If only* ...........................................

9. *If only* ...........................................

10. *If only* ...........................................
# Vocabulary

## 5d want, expect, love, bear, etc.

### want, wish, hope, long for/to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pattern</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>want + noun</td>
<td>desire sth</td>
<td><em>I want</em> some money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want + (sb) + to-infinitive</td>
<td>desire (sb) to do sth</td>
<td><em>I want to go on holiday.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish + Past Simple</td>
<td>want sth though it is unlikely to do sth</td>
<td><em>I wish I had a dog.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish + could</td>
<td>want sth or impossible</td>
<td><em>I wish I could fly.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish + to-infinitive</td>
<td>want (formal) to do sth</td>
<td><em>I wish to make a complaint.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish sb + noun phrase</td>
<td>hope sth for sb</td>
<td><em>I wish you luck in your career.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope + noun clause</td>
<td>want and believe sth is possible</td>
<td><em>I hope you're coming with us.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope + to-infinitive</td>
<td>want to do sth</td>
<td><em>I hope to see you on Saturday.</em> (slightly formal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Want* can have a direct object immediately after it, but we cannot use *wish* and *hope* in this way:
  - X *I wish a drink.*
  - ✓ *I want a drink.*

- We can use *wish* and *hope*, but not *want*, with a noun clause:
  - X *I want (that) you are happy.*
  - ✓ *I hope (that) you will be happy.*
  - ✓ *I wish (that) you could be happy.*

### expect, wait for, look forward to, long for

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>expect + noun</td>
<td>demand sth</td>
<td><em>I expect respect from my children.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect (sb) + to-infinitive</td>
<td>think or demand that sth will happen</td>
<td><em>I expect you to call me.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect + that-clause</td>
<td>believe that sth will happen</td>
<td><em>He expects to get a mobile phone for Christmas.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait for sb / sth</td>
<td>stay until sth happens</td>
<td><em>They’re waiting for a taxi.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t wait (+ to-infinitive)</td>
<td>be very excited about sth</td>
<td><em>I can hardly wait to see you!</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t wait (for sth)</td>
<td>be excited about the future</td>
<td><em>I can’t wait for my birthday!</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward to sth</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>I'm looking forward to Saturday.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward to + -ing</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>I'm looking forward to seeing you.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X ✓ <em>I look forward to receiving your letter.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
like, love, be fond of, be keen on

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>like sth</td>
<td>enjoy sth or think it is nice</td>
<td>I like your new dress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like sb</td>
<td>think sb is nice and enjoy being with them</td>
<td>I don't think he likes me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like noun</td>
<td>prefer sth</td>
<td>How do you like your coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like + to-infinitive</td>
<td>prefer to do sth</td>
<td>I like to take a walk in the morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like + -ing form</td>
<td>prefer doing sth</td>
<td>I like looking at clouds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love sb</td>
<td>have deep feelings for sb; to feel strong romantic attraction to sb</td>
<td>Children need to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love sth + to-infinitive</td>
<td>like sth very much</td>
<td>He was the only man she ever loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love + -ing</td>
<td>like doing sth</td>
<td>I love carrots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be fond of sb/sth</td>
<td>like sb/sth very much</td>
<td>He loves to talk about himself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be fond of + -ing</td>
<td>like doing sth very much</td>
<td>I love gardening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be keen on sth/-ing</td>
<td>be very interested in sth/doing it often</td>
<td>John's quite fond of Mary, isn't he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be keen on sb</td>
<td>be very attracted to sb romantically</td>
<td>I'm very fond of walking in the mountains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be keen + to-infinitive</td>
<td>want very much to start doing sth</td>
<td>I'm keen on tennis – I take part in a lot of competitions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• We use both be fond of and be keen on with -ing:  
  I'm fond of swimming. (= I like swimming very much)  
  I'm keen on swimming. (= I do a lot of swimming.)  

• We can use be keen (but not fond) with a to-infinitive:  
  She's keen to get back to work.  

• Note that be keen on -ing means 'interested in -ing' but be keen to do it means 'want very much to start doing it'.

stand, bear

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can't stand sb/sth</td>
<td>find sth or sth very unpleasant</td>
<td>I can't stand coconut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't/won't stand sth</td>
<td>can't/won't accept an unpleasant situation</td>
<td>I don't know if I can stand the tension any longer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't stand + -ing</td>
<td>not be able to accept or like doing sth</td>
<td>I won't stand any nonsense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't/couldn't bear sb/sth</td>
<td>find sb or sth extremely unpleasant</td>
<td>Anne can't stand working in Mr Brown's office.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can/can't bear (sb) + -ing</td>
<td>(not) be able to accept or like (sb) doing sth</td>
<td>Oh, I can't bear that man!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can/can't bear + to-infinitive</td>
<td>(not) be able to accept or like</td>
<td>Please don't leave me alone – I couldn't bear it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>He can't bear people being late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>He can't bear watching sport on TV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>How can you bear to work all day in that little room?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can't bear is similar to can't stand, but often suggests stronger anger, fear or sadness.
Practice

1 Underline the correct word or phrase in these sentences.

1 Hi! I just wanted/wished to say how much I enjoyed our chat last night.
2 I hope/want everything goes well and you arrive safe and sound.
3 Congratulations. We all hope/wish you every happiness and prosperity.
4 I am hoping/wishing to go and study abroad next year.
5 I am expecting/waiting the postman any minute now.
6 I’ve been waiting for/expecting you in the rain since nine o’clock. Where have you been?
7 I wait for/expect respect from my children.
8 I am so expecting/looking forward to seeing my friends again after three months away.
9 He told her he loved/liked her with all his heart.
10 I like/am keen on David but we have never been close friends.
11 I quite like/love my neighbours and we do seem to get on quite well.
12 I am keen/fond to get out of hospital and lead a normal life again.
13 I’m actually not very keen on/to watching TV. I hardly ever switch it on.
14 I can’t bear/like it when you’re angry. I get really upset.

2 Fill the gaps in the following text with one suitable word.

The best years of your life?

Most people look back on school with fond memories, but while they are going through the experience they can’t ................. (1) for it to be over. One joke that students are very ................. (2) of repeating is that what they ................. (3) best about school is the breaks. And what they look forward ................. (4) most of all is the end of term and going on holiday. I think it would be unrealistic to ................. (5) much enthusiasm from children for maths on a Monday morning.

Oddly enough, I was quite fond ................. (6) school at the time and look back on most of my old teachers with affection. Moreover, I am quite ................. (7) on my job and even enjoy the company of noisy children. However, there are some things I ................. (8) from my classes if we are all to get on well. The first thing I tell them is that I will not accept bullying or disrespect towards other students. I ................. (9) I am not being too strict or old-fashioned but I do ................. (10) all members of the class to feel respected. Outside class, I’m not at all keen ................. (11) marking huge piles of examination scripts. I simply ................. (12) stand the idea of spending hours writing corrections in red ink, knowing that most students will not bother to look at them.
5e prefixes (2)

We have seen (see 2e) that we use prefixes to change meaning. They never change the part of speech. (Most suffixes change the part of speech.)

- Many prefixes give a word a meaning which is the negative of the original. Examples are **dis**, **in**, **un**. Other prefixes change meaning in different ways, for example: 
  
  **multi** + **ethnic** = **multiethnic** (= made up of many different ethnic groups)

Here are some more prefixes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>prefix</th>
<th>meaning/use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>de</strong> + verb / noun</td>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>decentralise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>de</strong> + verb</td>
<td>remove</td>
<td>debone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>de</strong> + verb</td>
<td>reduce</td>
<td>devalue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ex</strong> + noun</td>
<td>previous</td>
<td>ex-husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>macro-</strong> noun</td>
<td>large</td>
<td>macroeconomics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>micro</strong> + noun</td>
<td>very small</td>
<td>microelectronics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mini</strong> + noun</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>mini hi-fi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mono</strong> + noun</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>monolingual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>multi</strong> + noun / adjective</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>multipurpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>semi</strong> + noun / adjective</td>
<td>half</td>
<td>semicircle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>semi</strong> + adjective</td>
<td>partly</td>
<td>semiliterate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sub</strong> + noun</td>
<td>under</td>
<td>subterranean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sub</strong> + noun</td>
<td>less/lower</td>
<td>subcommittee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice

1. Add a prefix from the list opposite to the words (1–20). You will use each prefix more than once. Then write down the meaning of the new word. You can use your dictionary.

   Example: escalate de-escalate means to remove or reduce the amount of fighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>de</th>
<th>ex</th>
<th>mini</th>
<th>micro</th>
<th>mono</th>
<th>multi</th>
<th>semi</th>
<th>sub</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>final</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>partner</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>standard</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>national</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>section</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>caffeinated</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ethnic</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>regulate</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>plot</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>wife</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>nationalise</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>biology</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>rail</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>skirt</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>soil</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>chip</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>code</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>darkness</td>
<td>means</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

She went to great trouble to **debone** the fish.
2 Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in the sentences.

1 I'm not sure what the doctor wrote - it's almost .............. .  
   A inlegible   B illegible   C legible   D illegal

2 If she left me, life would be .............. .  
   A unbearable   B debearable   C subbearable   D non-bearable

3 If only I hadn't married so young - I was very .............. at the time.  
   A immature   B immature   C mature   D unmature

4 The examiners remove marks for .............. words, don't they?  
   A unspelt   B semi-spelt   C under-spelt   D misspelt

5 Wear what you like - we're pretty .............. in this office.  
   A formal   B informal   C uniform   D deormal

6 Unless you .............. the fish first, your guests won't enjoy it.  
   A semi-bone   B unbone   C pre-bone   D debone

7 I think the Government should .............. the post office.  
   A denationalise   B unnationalise   C disnationalise   D innationalise

8 I wish my .............. and I were still on speaking terms.  
   A ex-partner   B pre-partner   C non-partner   D departner

9 Use this .............. tool and you'll do an excellent job.  
   A macropurpose   B monopurpose   C micropurpose   D multipurpose

10 Let's form a .............. and do something about the poor state of the common.  
   A subcommittee   B anti-committee   C multi-committee   D undercommittee

3 Use the word given at the end of each line to form a word that fits the gap in the same line.

A BREATH OF FRESH AIR

The Government has decided to take the (1) .............. decision to ban smoking in a lot of public places. Though a lot of people find smoking (2) .............. , and though experts all agree it is (3) .............. and that it costs the state a lot to treat victims of smoking, it is also (4) .............. that many people get pleasure from the habit and find smoking (5) .............. when they are in company. However, it is now (6) .............. to deny the antisocial nature of the habit. As advertising has proved (7) .............. with many smokers, the Government has now made smoking (8) .............. in most public places.

Smokers who are (9) .............. to stop smoking will be obliged to enjoy their pastime in private and may feel the new measures are (10) .............. , but for passive smokers for whom a room full of smoke is (11) .............. they will come as a breath of fresh air.
Entry test

Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 1–5.

1 As soon as you .......... what you're doing I'd like a word with you, please.
   A are finishing  B will finish  C will be finished  D finish

2 I'll write to you when I .......... time.
   A have had  B have  C will have  D would have

3 Don't interrupt me .......... I'm talking.
   A while  B by the time  C until  D after

4 I'd give him a ring before you go .......... he goes out.
   A on condition  B whether  C as long  D in case

5 .......... you could visit another planet, would you go?
   A Provided  B Suppose  C Whether  D Whenever

Now look at 6a on page 96.

Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.

6 I was on the .......... of leaving when the phone rang.
   A moment  B matter  C point  D edge

7 Sit down everyone. The film is .......... start.
   A on the verge of  B coming to  C ready for  D about to

8 The meeting isn't .......... to start till three.
   A about to  B owing  C on the point  D due

9 The President .......... address the nation on TV later.
   A mustn't  B will be  C is to  D are not

10 .......... I suggest, I know he will disagree.
   A No matter  B Whenever  C Whatever  D However

Now look at 6b on page 99.
Underline the correct verb form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.

11 Have you got the luggage ready? It’s time .......... .
   A for leaving  B we left  C we are going  D we must leave
12 Open your mouth, it’s time .......... your medicine.
   A you take  B for your taking  C for you to take  D you will take
13 It’s late. It’s about time we .......... .
   A leaving  B did leave  C have left  D were leaving
14 I’d rather .......... there by car, if you don’t mind.
   A went  B go  C to go  D going
15 I’d sooner we .......... out at all tonight.
   A didn’t go  B wouldn’t go  C haven’t gone  D won’t go

Now look at 6c on page 101.

Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.

16 The speech lasts for an hour; .......... , there’s a reception.
   A after  B following  C until  D afterwards
17 She came to the lesson but left .......... a quarter of an hour.
   A until  B after  C by  D till
18 We must wait .......... Friday for our exam results.
   A after  B by  C until  D later on
19 I’d like the room to be ready .......... next Monday.
   A until  B to  C as far as  D by
20 I am sure Harry will be at home but why not give him a ring just .......... he’s not there?
   A in the case  B in case  C in the case of  D in case of

Now look at 6d on page 104.

Fill the spaces in 21–25 with a suitable word to make a phrase with time.

21 Parents should spend .......... with their children than they do.
22 We watched TV to pass .......... until dinner was ready.
23 It’s a .......... of time learning something you are never going to use.
24 We had a .......... in London apart from the weather.
25 .......... time with the test – if you rush you’ll make mistakes.

Now look at 6e on page 106.
Grammar

6a  time and condition clauses
with future reference

When we talk about something in the future, we can use a conjunction related to time or condition (called a 'time clause' or 'condition clause').

- To refer to the future after these conjunctions, we use the Present Simple (not will).

**time clauses**

Here are the conjunctions we use with time clauses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning/use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>after + Present Simple</td>
<td>when (a future event has happened)</td>
<td>I'll see you after I get back from my holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as soon as + Present Simple</td>
<td>immediately after (s/happens)</td>
<td>As soon as he arrives at the hotel, call a taxi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before + Present Simple</td>
<td>earlier than (a future event)</td>
<td>Finish your work before Mum comes home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by the time (that) + Present Simple</td>
<td>during the time before (s/happens)</td>
<td>He'll have gone by the time you get here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immediately + Present Simple</td>
<td>at the same time as</td>
<td>Tell me immediately you arrive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once + Present Simple</td>
<td>immediately after (s/happens)</td>
<td>Once she arrives, we can start.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>until + Present Simple</td>
<td>up to the time that</td>
<td>Keep writing until I tell you to stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when + Present Simple</td>
<td>immediately after</td>
<td>I'll call you when I'm free.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whenever + Present Simple</td>
<td>at any time that</td>
<td>Phone me whenever it's convenient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while + Present Simple</td>
<td>during the time that</td>
<td>Let's forget work while we're on holiday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can use the Present Perfect in time clauses instead of the Present Simple. Compare these two sentences:
  I'll take up gardening when I retire.
  (= emphasis on activity)
  I'll take up gardening when I have retired.
  (= emphasis on when the activity will begin)

- We can use the Past Simple after suppose and supposing when referring to an imaginary event in the future:
  Supposing you failed — would you try again?
condition clauses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning/use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>as / so long as + Present Simple</td>
<td>but only if</td>
<td>I'll come as / so long as you pay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(just) in case + Present Simple</td>
<td>because it is possible that (sth happens)</td>
<td>Take an umbrella just in case it rains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on condition that + Present Simple</td>
<td>but only if (sth else happens)</td>
<td>I'll lend you the money on condition that you give it back soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provided/providing (that) + Present Simple</td>
<td>but only if (sth happens)</td>
<td>We'll get there on time provided we leave now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppose/supposing + Present Simple</td>
<td>imagine that</td>
<td>Supposing you fall ill, what will you do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unless + Present Simple</td>
<td>except if (sth happens as is true in future)</td>
<td>We won't go for a walk unless it's sunny.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whether (... or not) + Present Simple</td>
<td>introducing future possibilities or alternatives</td>
<td>Whether we win or not depends on how committed we are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(See also 5a.)

- When a clause beginning with if, whether, when, etc. is the object of the sentence, we can use will:

  **OBJECT**

  I doubt if/whether David will come.  
  I don't know when they'll come back.

Practice

1 Underline the correct expression in the following sentences.

Example: You can drop in and see us whenever/on condition you like.

1 Until/When he arrives, everyone must stand.
2 We're not going to stop digging until/as soon as we find the ancient ruins.
3 They're going to check the building before/as long as the President arrives.
4 Those flowers will be in bloom immediately/by the time spring comes.
5 Please phone your dad by the time/immediately.
6 Supposing/In case you had a baby girl – what would you call her?
7 Whether/If Chelsea wins the Cup depends on Dennis being on good form.
8 When/After the Smiths arrive, ask them to wait outside my office.
9 As soon as/Before you hear the alarm, run for the exit.
10 You'll recover quickly once/provided you rest.
2 Complete the following sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets. Use will, going to, Present Simple or the Present Perfect. There may be two possibilities.

Example: As soon as I .......... (save) enough money, I'm going to go on a long holiday.
As soon as I save/have saved enough money, I'm going to go on a long holiday.

1 I hope you'll still be awake when I .......... (come) home.
2 Come when you .......... (be) ready.
3 We'd like to stay up until the film .......... (finish).
4 All the tickets will have been sold by the time we .......... (get) there.
5 Don't open your eyes till I .......... (tell) you to.
6 Whether she .......... (play) on Saturday depends on what her doctor says.
7 I .......... (tell) you a secret on condition that you .......... (not tell) anyone else.
8 I .......... (lend) you the book as long as you .......... it .......... (bring back) on Monday.
9 We .......... (take) our swimming things in case we .......... (get) a chance to go swimming.
10 We .......... (go) to bed as soon as the programme .......... (finish).

3 Fill each space with one suitable word. The first one (0) has been done for you.

**Comfort on board**

Once you .......... (0) in the cabin, find your seat and arrange your baggage in the luggage compartment above your seat. Be careful .......... (1) you put your baggage in the compartment because, if you .......... (2) not close the compartment properly, the baggage could fall and injure other passengers when the aircraft .......... (3) direction. Before the aircraft .......... (4) off, make sure you have fastened your seat belt. Once the seat-belt sign .......... (5) been turned off, you can undo your seat belt but if you wish, you can keep it on for safety till the flight .......... (6) over. When the aircraft .......... (7) its descent for landing, you should fasten your seat belt and refrain from smoking. During the flight, you should have something non-alcoholic to drink in .......... (8) your body dehydrates. Alcohol is allowed as .......... (9) as it is supplied by the cabin crew. Electronic equipment should be kept switched off .......... (10) case it interferes with the aircraft electronics. At the end of the flight, you should stay in your seat and not undo the seat belt till the aircraft has .......... (11) to a standstill.

*As soon as you start talking sense, people will say you're an old fool. Bob Hope*
### more future forms

We use different ways to express the future in English (see 2a). Here are more forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>be about to</strong> + base form</td>
<td>be going to happen very soon</td>
<td>The train is about to leave – let’s hurry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>be due to</strong> + base form</td>
<td>be going to do sth already arranged</td>
<td>She is due to start her new job next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>be to</strong> + base form</td>
<td>be going to do sth that is an official arrangement or order</td>
<td>The Pope is to visit Cuba this month. You are to be here by nine o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>be not to</strong> + base form</td>
<td>be ordered not to do sth</td>
<td>You are not to begin till I give the order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>be on the verge of</strong> -ing / sth</td>
<td>be going to happen very soon</td>
<td>Scientists are on the verge of making an important discovery. However hard he tries, he will not make her fall in love with him. No matter what she says, they won’t believe her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>however</strong> + adverb / adjective + Present Simple</td>
<td>it is not because of how sth is being done</td>
<td>I was on the point of explaining. X They were to the point of leaving when Uncle Joe arrived. ✓ They were on the point of leaving when Uncle Joe arrived. Wherever we go on holiday, we take the dog with us. X Whatever she will say, they won’t believe her. ✓ Whatever she says, they won’t believe her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>no matter (what, who, etc.)</strong> + Present Simple</td>
<td>it is not important what happens, who does it, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>be on the point of</strong> + -ing</td>
<td>be going to do sth immediately</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>whatever, whoever, whenever, wherever, + Present Simple</strong></td>
<td>it is not important what, who, when, where, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practice

Fill each space with an appropriate phrase or clause referring to the future.

Example: They are due to set off early tomorrow.

1 Fasten your seatbelts – we ............... take off.
2 The boat ............... leave at 10am.
3 You ............... take the car without my permission.
4 Doctors claim they ............... a breakthrough.
5 He ............... giving up but you can help him.
6 ............... how much the painting costs, I must have it.
7 ............... much it costs, I'll buy it.
8 I ............... be at a conference in Berlin on Monday.
9 ............... I drive, I don’t drink.
10 They ............... change the style of the exam from December 1999.
2 Complete each of these sentences with the correct form of a verb from the list. Use an -ing form, to-infinitive or Present Simple.

arrive  expire  perform  do  live  hide  begin  burst  run  choose
see  leave

1 He was on the point of .................. his speech when the alarm went off.
2 She was so upset she was on the verge of .................. into tears.
3 The Prime Minister is .................. in Brussels at 14.30.
4 I am about .................. my last trick, ladies and gentlemen.
5 Your subscription is due .................. next month.
6 You are not .................. your room till I tell you to.
7 No matter what he .................., he'll never be a successful actor.
8 Whenever you .................. Jane, will you tell her to give me a ring?
9 No matter who they .................. for the job of manager, the factory will still close.
10 Wherever the convict .................., the police will find him.
11 She won't break the world record however fast she ...................
12 No matter where we .................., we will still have to travel to get to work.

3 Fill each space in the following text with a suitable word or phrase. The first is given as an example.

Save the city centre

The council are about to make important changes in the city centre but I'm afraid that .............. (1) they do, the problems will still remain. No matter .............. (2) many new car parks they .............. (3) at the edge of the city, traffic jams will not go away. The council has been .............. (4) the verge of banning cars in the historic centre of the city but, whatever they .............. (5) to do, business interests .............. (6) react and do their best to oppose the new policy.

Some measures have already been introduced. The mayor is .............. (7) to open a new pedestrian precinct in the old market.

It has already been announced that cars .............. (8) not to park in the pedestrian area and, whenever they .............. (9), they will be clamped. This is a necessary step if the city centre .............. (10) to become more pleasant for shoppers.

Unfortunately, .............. (11) hard they try, there is one problem the local authorities cannot solve: crime. Shoplifting and pickpocketing increase .............. (12) what measures the police .............. (13). If we want our cities to be safer, we .............. (14) to grumble if local taxes increase.

So there I am sitting in my seat, on the verge of a nervous breakdown. 'We are about to leave,' says the man next to me, grinning. The noise of the engines is deafening and I'm on the point of being sick. The steward bends over me and says, 'We're due to take off soon, sir. Would you like sweets or cotton wool?' 'I'd rather have the cotton wool, please. Whenever I have sweets, they fall out of my ears.'
expressions of time and preference

**it's time**
We can talk about what should happen now or in the immediate future using *it's time*... in the following patterns:

* it's time + to-infinite:
  - *It's time to go to bed.*
- *It's time we go home to bed.*
- *It's time to go home.*

* it's time + prepositional phrase:
  - *It's time for bed.*

* it's time + for sb + to-infinite:
  - *It's time for you to go to bed.*

- In the following patterns, a Past tense refers to things that should be done now or very soon:

  * it's time + sb/sth + Past Simple:
    - *It's time we left.*
    - *It's time you were in bed.*
    - *It's time you went to bed.*

  * it's time + sb/sth + Past Continuous:
    - *It's time we were leaving.*

* it's high time + sb/sth + Past Simple or Past Continuous for emphasis:
  - *It's high time we left – we've been here too long.*
  - *It's high time you were earning your own living.*

* it's about time + Past Simple or Past Continuous for emphasis, often suggesting criticism:
  - *It's about time we took global warming seriously.*

**would rather**
We can express a present or future preference using *would rather* in two patterns:

* would rather + bare infinitive:
  - *I'd rather stay in this evening (than go out).*
  - *Would you rather go with them (or stay with me)?*
  - *I'd rather to have coffee.*
  - *I'd rather have coffee.*

* would rather + sb + Past Simple (+ than):
  - *We'd rather you stayed a little longer.*
  - *I'd rather Anne didn't come to the meeting.*
  - *I'd rather you came now than at six o'clock.*

- We can also use *would rather* to refer to the past by using the Past Perfect:

  * would rather + sb + Past Perfect:
    - *I'd rather you had asked me before you bought me the shirt. (= but you didn't)*

**would sooner**
This is an alternative to *would rather*, and follows the same patterns:

* I'd sooner stay in than go out.*
* I'd sooner you didn't wait for us.*

**would prefer**
Would *prefer* can take the following patterns:

* would prefer + to-infinite or -ing:
  - *She'd prefer not to watch the film.*
  - *I'd prefer eating seafood.*

* would prefer + to-infinite + (rather) than + bare infinitive:
  - *I'd prefer to stay in (rather) than go out.*

* would prefer + sb + to-infinite or -ing:
  - *We'd prefer you to stay.*
  - *I'd prefer you not to come.*

* would prefer it if + sb + Past Simple:
  - *She'd prefer it if you didn't come.*
Practice

1. Tick (√) the correct answer.

   Example: It’s eight o’clock. Isn’t it time ..............
   A we get up?  B to get up?  C for to get up?

   1. It’s very late and it’s high time ..............
      A we go.  B we went.  C we must go.
   2. No wine for me, thanks – I’d rather .............. water.
      A to have  B had  C have
   3. She says she’d prefer .............. tomorrow.
      A you come  B it if you came  C it and you coming
   4. Look at your room! It’s about time .............. it.
      A for tidying  B you tidy  C you tidied
   5. I’m starving. Surely it’s time .............. lunch.
      A for  B for having  C eat
   6. She’d rather you .............. now. Can you come later?
      A come  B didn’t come  C had come
   7. I’d prefer .............. a jacket and tie.
      A him wearing  B him ought to wear  C him to wear
   8. I think it’s time ..............
      A we separated.  B we are separating.  C we separate.
   9. Wouldn’t you sooner .............. tea than coffee in England?
      A had drunk  B have drunk  C has drunk
   10. Sorry. I’d prefer .............. a film this evening.
       A to watch TV for  B watching TV rather than  C watch TV or

2. Match a first part (1–12) with a second part (a–l). Use all the parts.

   1. It’s time to
   2. It’s high time she
   3. What did John tell you?
   4. Would you really prefer to
   5. Actually, I’d rather be
   6. Trying to persuade him
   7. I’d prefer it
   8. I’d sooner play football
   9. Pam, it’s high time
   10. Marry you?
   11. I’d rather you
   12. And I’d prefer

   a than watch it on TV.
   b beautiful than rich.
   c have money rather than health?
   d leave for the airport.
   e to have a good argument occasionally.
   f didn’t shout so much.
   g I’m sorry but I’d rather not say.
   h is nothing but a waste of time.
   i I’d rather die!
   j if you didn’t tell anyone about it.
   k we got married.
   l took her exams seriously.
3 Complete these short exchanges with the correct form of these verbs.

- get phone buy repair visit stay leave paint have do waste stop spend help

Example: A: 'It’s time to get the dinner ready.'
B: 'I’d rather we phoned for a take-away.'

1 A: 'I think it’s time we .......... our cousins in Camden.'
B: 'I’d prefer .......... the money on a nice holiday.'

2 A: 'It’s time we .......... the roof.'
B: 'I’d rather we .......... the bedroom.'

3 A: 'I think it’s time we .......... ?
B: 'I’d rather .......... a bit longer, if that’s OK with you.'

4 A: 'It’s about time he .......... you with the housework.'
B: 'To be honest I’d sooner .......... it myself.'

5 A: 'That music again! It’s high time you .......... some new CDs.'
B: 'I’d prefer (not) .......... my money on CDs.'

6 A: 'It’s time for us .......... a break.'
B: 'I’d sooner we (not) .......... working till we’ve finished.'

4 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given.

Example: You really ought to have your hair cut.

- time
  It’s (high) time you had your hair cut.

1 You ought to buy a new car.

- time
  It’s .......... a new car.

2 She thinks it would be better if you stayed at home tonight.

- prefer
  She .......... it if you stayed at home tonight.

3 Studying drama is more appealing to me than engineering.

- would
  I .......... than engineering.

4 They don’t want to go on holiday at all this year.

- rather
  They .......... holiday at all this year.

5 I’d be happier if you could be a bit quieter.

- sooner
  I .......... so much noise.

6 We’d prefer you to sleep in the living room.

- put
  We’d .......... up in the living room.

7 I think you should tell her now what you think of her behaviour.

- told
  It’s high .......... her your opinion of her behaviour.

8 I have to go and pick the children up from school now.

- me
  It’s time .......... pick up the children from school.

9 We should have redecorated the living room long ago.

- had
  It’s high time we .......... redecorated.
Vocabulary

6d afterwards, after, until, as far as, etc.

**afterwards**

Afterwards is an adverb; we can use it as a link word and it means ‘following this event’:

The ceremony lasts half an hour. Afterwards, there’s a reception.

- We can also use it at the end of a sentence with the meaning ‘later’:
  My parents met at university but didn’t marry till five years afterwards.

**afterwards and then**

When one action follows another within a short time, we can use either afterwards or then:

We all had lunch together. Afterwards/Then we went to the beach.

- To introduce the next action in a series of instructions, we use then:
  Check that the paper is properly loaded. Then press the start button. Then...

**afterwards and later (on)**

Afterwards suggests that the next thing happens quite soon after the last one has finished:

On Saturday, I went to see Adrian in hospital. Afterwards, I drove into town to do some shopping.

- If there is a longer interval between the two events, we can use later, much later or later on, especially for events later the same day:
  I couldn’t understand why she hadn’t answered my letters. Later, I realised she’d moved to a new address.
  I saw an unfamiliar woman on the stairs. Later on, I discovered she was my new neighbour.
  My first aim is to graduate. Afterwards/After that I’d like to go and work in Canada.

**after and in**

We can use after as a preposition before a time expression, e.g. after a week, to talk about an action in the past:

- After a few days, I felt much better.
- She left after an hour.
- I’m hoping to visit America. After, I’d like to visit Mexico.
- ✓ I’m hoping to visit America. Afterwards/After that I’d like to travel to Mexico.

- When we use after before a time expression, we are talking about later events in the past. For the future, we use in (see 14a):
  She left after five minutes.
  She’ll be leaving in an hour.

**by and until/till**

- We use by for an action which happens before, or no later than, a certain time:
  Could you let us know your decision by Friday?

- We use until/till for an action or state continuing up to the time mentioned:
  Let’s not continue the walk until the rain stops.

**until/till, to and as far (as)**

- We use until or till in connection with time:
  The shops are open until six.
  I’ll be here till five o’clock.

- When we are talking about direction towards or distance, we use to or as far (as). We use to meaning ‘towards and stopping at a particular place’. We use as far (as) to emphasise the distance:
  Do you know which bus goes to Marble Arch?
  It doesn’t go as far as that.
Practice

1 Underline the correct word or phrase in these sentences.

1 I have to submit my report by/until the end of the month.
2 They came in June and left two months afterwards/then.
3 We had a quick coffee and afterwards/later on we ran to the bus stop.
4 I had a shave and after/then I had a shower.
5 We stayed in the club till/as far as it closed.
6 I saw him enter the bank at about one o'clock. Ten minutes later/after, he ran out with a bag full of money.
7 We need your response by/until tonight.
8 You can stay till/by the weekend.
9 After/Afterwards a few hours, the mist disappeared.
10 We are going to leave Italy after/in a couple of months to go and live in the States.

2 Fill in each space in these sentences with an appropriate word or phrase.

1 I'll see you ................ a couple of minutes.
2 At first I was bored, but ................ on, I enjoyed it.
3 To start the machine, switch it on. ................ press the red button.
4 On Sunday morning we went for a stroll round the park. ................, we went for a meal.
5 I felt really sick at first but ................ a few days I recovered.
6 I'd like the translation to be ready ................ January 28, please.
7 We waited ................ ten o'clock then we decided to go home.
8 We ran as ................ the bridge and then stopped.

3 Fill each space in this text with one appropriate word. The first has been done as an example.

A NIGHT BY THE ROADSIDE

Did I tell you about the night Max and I drove through the Highlands ........(1) Oban? We had got ................ (2) far as a deserted cottage and ................, (2) looking at the map, we wondered whether we should turn back. It was getting really dark ............., (3) then and we weren't at all sure about the weather. We thought about it for a while and ................, (4) decided Oban was too interesting to miss. ................, (5) on, when we had returned safe and sound and ................, (6) chatting about all the terrible things that had happened, we realised how crazy we had been to do what we did – we should have waited ................, (7) morning. Anyway, we had to stop to change a wheel, and almost immediately ................, (8) we drove along a narrow path and suddenly the car plunged into a deep ditch full of water! ................, (9) an hour or so of trying to get the car out, it finally dawned on us that we were stuck. Max had his mobile phone and called for help and the mechanic said he would be there ................, (10) an hour's time, and ................, (11) we were less frightened. But, a few minutes ................, (12) we heard a terrible scream...
### Phrases with Time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning/Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>be time</strong> (for sth)</td>
<td>be enough time (to do sth)</td>
<td>There's <strong>time for</strong> one more question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>have time</strong> (for sth / to-infinitive)</td>
<td>have enough time (to do sth)</td>
<td>Do you <strong>have time</strong> for a coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>have a good, great, etc. time</strong></td>
<td>enjoy yourself very much</td>
<td>I <strong>don't have time</strong> to talk to you now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>in time</strong> (for sth / to-infinitive)</td>
<td>early enough (to do sth)</td>
<td>Thanks for the party – we both <strong>had a fantastic time.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>lose time</strong> (+ -ing)</td>
<td>fall behind the planned schedule because of delays</td>
<td>Luke usually gets home <strong>in time</strong> to bath the children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on time</strong></td>
<td>at the planned time</td>
<td><strong>X</strong> The fire brigade arrived <strong>just on time.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>✓</strong> The fire brigade arrived <strong>just in time.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pass the time</strong></td>
<td>do sth to spend time when you are waiting or bored</td>
<td>We <strong>lost a lot of valuable time</strong> waiting for the others to arrive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pass the time of day</strong> (with sb)</td>
<td>say hello and talk informally (with sb)</td>
<td>I drove quickly and arrived there <strong>right on time.</strong> These buses are never <strong>on time.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>the right/correct time</strong></td>
<td>the correct time on a watch or clock</td>
<td><strong>X</strong> They had to rush to get to work <strong>in time.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>✓</strong> They had to rush to get to work <strong>on time.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>spend</strong> + time expression</td>
<td>stay for a stated period of time</td>
<td>We played cards to <strong>pass the time</strong> till morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>spend</strong> + time expression + -ing</td>
<td>do sth for a stated period of time</td>
<td><strong>X</strong> We went to the cinema to <strong>spend the time</strong> until the train arrived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>spend the time</strong> (+ -ing / on or with sth)</td>
<td>use up time (doing sth)</td>
<td><strong>✓</strong> We went to the cinema to <strong>pass the time</strong> until the train arrived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>it takes</strong> (sb) + period of time (+ to-infinitive)</td>
<td>the length of time needed for an action or a journey</td>
<td>They sat at the bus stop <strong>passing the time of day</strong> until the bus came.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>take time</strong> (for sth)</td>
<td>need a long period of time</td>
<td><strong>Is that the right time?</strong> Oh dear, I'll be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>take your time</strong></td>
<td>do sth without hurrying</td>
<td>We'll have to <strong>spend the night</strong> in a hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Time flies!</strong></td>
<td>time passes very quickly</td>
<td>I <strong>spent the weekend</strong> cleaning the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>waste time/waste one's time</strong> (+ -ing / on or with sth)</td>
<td>use time in a way which is not useful</td>
<td><strong>We spent the whole time</strong> lying on the beach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>a waste of time</strong></td>
<td>not likely to have a satisfactory result</td>
<td><strong>It takes</strong> five hours <strong>to fly</strong> to Copenhagen from here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Learning a language <strong>takes time.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Take your time.</strong> There's no rush.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Doesn't <strong>time fly</strong> when you're having fun!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Stop wasting time</strong> watching TV and get on with your homework.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>He wastes his time</strong> riding around on his motorbike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Arguing with her is a complete <strong>waste of time.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice

1 Fill in the spaces with an appropriate word.

Example: Have a wonderful time in Crete!

1 How on earth am I going to pass the time in this boring place?
2 We were passing the time of day when her mobile phone rang.
3 I don’t go out much. I spend most evenings at home, reading.
4 The builders are certainly wasting their time with our roof!
5 Of course the report isn’t ready yet – these things take time you know.
6 Don’t think you can change her mind; you’re wasting your time.
7 Patience! It’s time for fruit trees to grow.
8 We spent the whole weekend decorating the living room.
9 Do we have time for a quick game of basketball before lunch?
10 The two agents met each other exactly on time, as agreed.
11 You’re just wasting time to catch the last few minutes of the game.
12 You can’t waste your time helping in your homework, there’s no rush.

2 Match a first part (1–12) with a second part (a–l). Use all the parts.

1 How much time
2 They spent more
3 Are the trains always
4 Don’t waste
5 Don’t spend too much time
6 Maria ran and ran and got there
7 Take your time.
8 Hurry! We can’t afford to
9 We’ll have to spend
10 What shall we do
11 There isn’t time to
12 Enjoy your holiday. I hope you

a to pass the time until dinner?
b just in time.
c have a good time!
d time in their hotel than on the beach.
e lose any more time.
f the night in the car.
g explain – just do it.
h does it take to boil an egg?
i on time in your country?
j I promise we’ll wait.
k on the first question.
l your time with computer games.

3 Which expression using time can you use in these sentences? Fill the gaps.

1 When you are in a long queue, what do you do now?
2 Yesterday, I spent the whole time waiting for the electrician to come.
3 I expect she’ll be late – she hardly ever turns up on time.
4 It’s time to learn a foreign language.
5 I’m sorry but I can’t chat now; I don’t have time.
6 Arrived safely. Gorgeous weather. We spent time.
7 Surely there is time for one last dance.
8 Excuse me. Do you have time? My watch is broken.
9 Our team arrived in time but the other side were very late.
10 It’s time trying to get Lily to change her mind.
11 It’s time to load this software before you go?
12 I do no more than spend time with my neighbours.
Exam practice 3

Part 1

For Questions 1 – 15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

THE BIG DAY

Example: 0 A However B Whatever C Though D Since

.......... (0) candidates may think about examiners, they are not in fact .......... (1) monsters, dripping red ink instead of blood, but ordinary people who will do their best to pass candidates as .......... (2) as candidates follow certain basic rules of the game. Many candidates are .......... (3) in the First Certificate not because their English is .......... (4) but because they are .......... (5) about the requirements of the examination. Before you .......... (6) for the examination, make sure you know what is expected of you; you are .......... (7) to do well unless you answer all the questions set, and don't include .......... (8) material. Don't start writing as .......... (9) as you get the paper – think first, write .......... (10)! If part of an answer is incorrect, you .......... (11) cross it out and write the preferred answer neatly above it. If your handwriting .......... (12) illegible, it will be difficult for the examiner to give you credit for it, .......... (13) it is right or .......... (14). You will also lose marks if your essay is written in an .......... (15) style for the type of writing and intended audience.

1 A insensible B unsensible C unsensitive D insensitive
2 A much B far C long D soon
3 A unhappy B inaccurate C incorrect D unsuccessful
4 A inadequate B misguided C illegible D misunderstood
5 A ill-informed B informed C dissinformed D mal-informed
6 A will sit B would sit C have sat D sit
7 A improbably B impossible C unlikely D unlucky
8 A irrelevant B illiterate C indirect D illogical
9 A quickly B immediately C fast D soon
10 A after B afterwards C later D slower
11 A will B would C should D have
12 A was B were C be D is
13 A however B whenever C whether D if
14 A no B none C false D not
15 A unappropriate B misappropriate C inappropriate D inappropriate

Score
Part 2

For Questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A RELAXING HOLIDAY

Martha looked at her watch in a panic. They should've been on their way (0) to the airport by now. 'George, it's time we ............... (16) going; if we don't get moving we going to ............... (17) the flight.' No sooner had she spoken the words than she wished she ............... (18) kept quiet. She knew George couldn't ............... (19) to be rushed. He had always liked to ............... (20) his time over everything. 'Patience is a virtue,' he was ............... (21) of saying and Martha had got used to ............... (22) around for George. 'Martha,' came the reply from the bathroom. 'I ............... (23) you'd stop saying that and get on with the packing.' She had been ............... (24) forward to this trip for months and now it ............... (25) time to set off for the airport and they were far from ready. ............... (26) only she had listened to Jenny's advice and chosen a holiday a bit nearer home. She couldn't ............... (27) flying anyway and if they had decided to ............... (28) a couple of weeks in the country they ............... (29) be nicely settled in their little cottage now. It would take ............... (30) half an hour to get to the airport and then they could expect to find long queues at the check-in counters. It was always the same hassle.

Part 3

For Questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

Example: 0 Let me know immediately she arrives.
soon
Let me know as soon as she arrives.

31 My dad will be back when he has finished shopping.
until
My dad ...................... he has finished the shopping.

32 The taxi may be expensive so take plenty of money.
case
Take plenty of money ...................... expensive.

33 They are waiting for him to arrive at any minute.
due
He ...................... at any minute.

34 'Did you remember to bring your homework?' the teacher asked the class.
if
The teacher asked the class ...................... to bring their homework.
35 'Do you want to come out or not?' Jane asked Peter.
    whether
    Jane asked ........................................ to come out or not.
36 Take my advice and stop smoking.
    were
    If ............................................ stop smoking.
37 Without a key we won't be able to get into the house.
    unless
    We won't be able to get into the house ...................................... a key.
38 Unless he phones immediately, he's going to miss us.
    if
    He's going to miss us ............................................... immediately.
39 I can meet you if you arrive before seven.
    long
    I can meet you ............................................... before seven.
40 The receipt is essential if you want a refund.
    provided
    They will give you a refund ........................................... the receipt.

Part 4

For Questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (√) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (0) and (00).

**NOTHING LIKE A GOOD STORY**

0 I find the way children spend hours just at watching TV

00 quite depressing. It can't be good for their imagination. I'm not

41 very keen on watching myself. I'd rather to read a good

42 book. I wish children would have switch off the TV and learn

43 to enjoy the pleasures of reading. I have always been very

44 fond of the reading – this comes from my mother who was

45 a marvellous storyteller. When it was the time for us to go to

46 bed she would say 'It's time we have had another story.' If

47 she'd said 'Get into bed and switch the light off' it would

48 have been not very different. As it was, we began to look

49 forward go to bedtime because we were expecting yet

50 another unforgettable tale. If only wish I had had more

51 the time to tell my children more stories when they were
52 growing up. If they had been got into the habit of listening to
53 stories at bedtime, they’d have grown to love literature more.
54 They can’t stand to reading books now because
55 they’d sooner they play some computer games instead.

Part 5

For Questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

IT’S NEVER TOO LATE TO LEARN?

My attempt to teach myself Spanish has been unsuccessful. (0)
so far and I am wondering whether I am simply ................. (56)
to learn foreign languages at my age. I am not ................. (57)
and neither am I .................. (58), so why have I found it almost
................. (59) to learn more than just the basics of Spanish after
nearly six months of study? My vocabulary is ................. (60)
beyond very basic expressions and my grammar is ................. (61)
to say the least. It is not only that my Spanish is ................. (62)
but I suspect I sound very .................. (63), too. Recently, I met
a Cuban tourist in a café and .................. (64), I must have
said something .................. (65) because she looked very
offended and got up and sat at another table.
Entry test

Underline the correct tense in 1–5.

1. At present, he is being treated / has treated for heart problems.
2. The date of the exams was being announced / was announced yesterday.
3. When they got home, the fence between the two houses was removed / had been removed but no one knew who was responsible.
4. Peace will have been achieved / will being achieved only when all troops have left the country.
5. An election will have been held / will be held in the autumn, the Government announced this morning.

Now look at [7a] on page 114.

Underline the correct form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.

6. She .......... in a small village in the south of Spain.
   A has been born       B has born       C born       D was born
7. Scarves .......... in this church.
   A must have worn     B must be worn    C have worn    D must been worn
8. .......... that five people died in the explosion.
   A They are reported   B It has reported C It's reported  D It's reporting
9. The road had been blocked .......... a tree.
   A through           B from           C with        D by
10. The message was written in the sand .......... a stick
    A through          B from          C with        D by

Now look at [7b] on page 117.
Underline the correct form A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–20.

11 Bill .......... before having his photo taken.
   A cut his hair       B got cut his hair       C got his hair cut
   D got hair cut
12 .......... my PA phone for a taxi?
   A Shall I had       B Shall I have       C Has she
   D Had I
13 .......... broken into while we were away on holiday.
   A We had our house     B Thieves had our house       C It was our house
   D They have
14 Surprisingly, he .......... as chairperson.
   A got himself elected     B get himself elected       C getting elected
   D has get himself
15 They .......... last week.
   A get married       B have married       C get to marry
   D got married

Now look at [70] on page 120.

Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.

16 You can .......... a second-hand mobile phone for under ten pounds.
   A get       B take       C hold       D pay
17 Could you .......... here a little sooner?
   A get       B go       C bring       D send
18 How much are you expecting to ..........?
   A sell for your car?       B get for your old car?       C sell your old car?
   D buy for your old car?
19 I want you to .......... my shop right now!
   A get out from       B get out off       C get off       D get out of
20 Oh, .......... – I have to press this key first.
   A I'm getting       B I will get it       C I get it       D I get

Now look at [70] on page 122.

In questions 21–25, fill the spaces with an appropriate word to form a compound noun.

21 They have bought a new ..........washer but it doesn't work.
22 Working for the .......... brigade can be quite dangerous.
23 The house was so cold, we had a new central .......... system installed.
24 Our organisation fights for basic .......... rights such as free speech.
25 There was a ..........-in last night at the National Bank and the thieves stole a million pounds.

Now look at [70] on page 124.
The passive has a form of *be* + past participle. The form of *be* is the same as the tense in the active equivalent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>passive form</th>
<th>example: passive</th>
<th>example: active</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Simple</td>
<td><em>am/are/is</em> + past participle</td>
<td>Important subjects <em>are discussed</em> every lunch time.</td>
<td>They discuss important subjects every lunch time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Simple</td>
<td><em>was/were</em> + past participle</td>
<td>The date for the talks <em>was announced.</em></td>
<td>They announced the date for the talks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Simple</td>
<td><em>will be</em> + past participle</td>
<td><strong>x</strong> The school <em>has built</em> by the local government.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be going to (future)</td>
<td><em>am/are</em> is going to <em>be</em> + past participle</td>
<td><strong>✓</strong> The school <em>was built</em> by the local government.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modal passive</td>
<td>modal verb + <em>be</em> + past participle</td>
<td>You will be examined by a top consultant.</td>
<td>A top consultant will examine you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Continuous</td>
<td><em>am/are/is</em> being + past participle</td>
<td>The factory is going to be closed.</td>
<td>They are going to close the factory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Continuous</td>
<td><em>was/were</em> being + past participle</td>
<td>The house <em>must be cleaned.</em></td>
<td>You must clean the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td><em>has/have been</em> + past participle</td>
<td>This matter is still <em>being considered.</em></td>
<td>They are still considering this matter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td><em>had been</em> + past participle</td>
<td>Every effort <em>was being made</em> to end the strike.</td>
<td>They were making every effort to end the strike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td><em>will have been</em> + past participle</td>
<td>The new stadium <em>has been built</em> in London.</td>
<td>They have built a new stadium in London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>In the next ten years, full equality <em>will have been achieved.</em></td>
<td>They had finished the work by the end of 1999.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Because of the need to combine *be/been* with *being*, e.g. *We will be being watched* or *We have been being watched*, we avoid using the passive in the Present Perfect Continuous, the Past Perfect Continuous, Future Continuous and the Future Perfect Continuous.  
  **Avoid:** *We will be being watched.*  
  **✓** *They will be watching us.*  

- We form passive questions and negatives in the same way as the active:  
  When *are important subjects discussed*?  
  They *are not discussed* every lunch time.  

- In passive sentences we place adverbs of time or frequency, e.g. *always, sometimes*, etc. after the first auxiliary verb (*is, has, will*, etc.):  
  *It is usually made of wood.*  
  *They have just been found.*  
  *She will never be asked.*
Practice

1 Fill in each space using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

Example: The police report that the missing person ....................... . (find)
          The police report that the missing person has been found.

1 The news ....................... every day from 6am to midnight. (broadcast)
2 At this very moment the suspect ....................... by the police. (interview)
3 And now a newsflash. The President ....................... with committing perjury. (charge)
4 A new security system ....................... in all our offices in the next few weeks. (install)
5 By November 30 a new government ....................... . (elect)
6 There must be a mistake: the hotel bill ....................... by my wife. (pay)
7 When we got home, we realised the house ....................... . (burglery)
8 The building ....................... when a second bomb went off. (evacuate)
9 The Government says tax reforms ....................... in the new year. (introduce)
10 Newspapers in some countries ....................... in kiosks as well as shops. (sell)

2 Rewrite these sentences in the passive.

1 We do not add any preservatives to our products.

2 The Government is now building a lot of new schools in the provinces.

3 The police have just arrested him on suspicion of murder.

4 Will they publish her new book next month?

5 They will have completed the new motorway by Christmas.

6 We haven’t cleaned the house for weeks.

7 The company cut the water off because Mr and Mrs Dixon hadn’t paid their bill.

8 They are going to open the new supermarket next week.

9 They couldn’t use the car because the garage was servicing it.

10 They publish a lot of books on information technology.

The service in the hotel was so bad that when I asked for a hot towel,
I was told to put a cold one on the radiator.
Fill in the spaces in this text. Use a verb in the list and an appropriate form of the passive. The first is given as an example.

produce interview (x2) design renovate award base build
consider (x2) show equip provide close visit

A REPORT

This report has been produced at the request of the Hotel and Catering Association. The survey on which the report (1) was carried out between March 25 and March 30, 1999. Twenty hotel managers (2) for the purposes of this report. The majority of the hotels which (3) (all in the Brighton area) (4) in the last twenty years and (5) to meet the needs of the modern tourist. One hotel which (6) unacceptable by the Association (7) at the end of the tourist season. Some of the older ones (8) recently and also meet the highest standards. This (9) by the fact that all the hotels (10) with modern facilities, from swimming pools to satellite TV. In addition, the usual services (11) (room service, laundry service) and the restaurant and bar service (12) satisfactory in most cases. Most of the hotel staff who (13) were highly qualified or experienced. Seventy-five per cent of the hotels in this report (14) a three or four star rating by the tourist board.

Most of the staff had been poorly trained.
reasons for using the passive; the agent

We use the passive in the following situations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>situation</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>when it is obvious or not important to say who, what, etc. is the subject</td>
<td><em>He was born</em> in 1991.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoiding using <em>I, we, they, one, etc.</em> reports</td>
<td><em>The meeting has been changed</em> to Thursday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>describing a process</td>
<td><em>A cure hasn't been found</em> yet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>official announcements</td>
<td><em>The job will be finished</em> by tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scientific texts</td>
<td><em>Food must be found</em> for the refugees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The beans are separated</em> from the shells and then they are put into sacks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Fees must be paid</em> in advance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The liquid is heated</em> to a temperature of 60°C.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We often use report verbs such as *think, suggest, believe,* etc. in the passive, often with impersonal *it:*

It was reported that many people were killed.  
*She is thought to have been the finest cellist this century.*

• The structure *be supposed to* has a separate meaning from *is thought to:*

She's supposed to be your friend. (= she isn't behaving like a friend)

• We use a group of verbs more often in the passive than in the active. These include:  
  *be born*  
  *be jailed*  
  *be fined*  
  *be horrified*  
  *be wounded*  
  *be overcome*

• When we use verbs with two objects (a person and something), either object can be the subject of the sentence in the passive sentence:  
  *Jane gave him some money.*  
  (= active form)  
  *He was given some money by Jane.*  
  *Some money was given to him by Jane.*

• It is more common, however, for the person to be made the subject of the passive verb:  
  *Carmen taught him all the Spanish he knows.*  
  *He was taught all the Spanish he knows by Carmen.*  
  *All the Spanish he knows was taught to him by Carmen.*  
  (= possible, but clumsy)

• We cannot use intransitive verbs in the passive because they cannot have an object:  
  *The job will be seemed easy at first.*  
  *The job will seem easy at first.*

mentioning the agent

When we form passives, we do not usually mention the person or thing responsible for the action (the agent). We are usually more interested in what happens. When we mention the agent, we generally use *by* when we mention who or what was responsible, and *with* when we mention the instrument used:

*The car had been driven by my younger brother.*  
*The victim had been killed with a bread knife.*

• We can follow some verbs with *by* or *with:*

  *The airport was surrounded by soldiers.*  
  *The airport was surrounded with soldiers.*

• We follow verbs such as *cover with* by *by, in or with:*

  *Its body was covered by/in/with flies.*

• We mention the agent only when this information is important. If the agent is obvious, unknown, or is 'people in general', we omit it:

  *He was fined for driving without a licence.*

• In particular, we mention the agent when we add information about it in the next part of the sentence:

  *The car had been driven by my younger brother who didn't have a driving licence.*

• We do not mention the agent when we want to hide the information or we want to avoid taking responsibility for an action:

  I've been told not to say anything.

  *Taxes will have to be raised next year.*
Practice

1 Rewrite the following active sentences using two passive forms, making the underlined words the subject. Omit the agent if it is not necessary.

Example: The company sent him a letter. He was sent a letter by the company. A letter was sent to him by the company.

1 They’ve just sent me a whole lot of junk mail. .................................................................

2 The Credit Bank lent me two thousand pounds in 1999. ...................................................

3 They gave each of the children a bottle of milk every day. ...................................................

4 They showed us the sights of the city. .................................................................................

5 They will pay the workers £50 every Friday. .....................................................................

6 Someone had promised the children more food. ..............................................................

7 The magician told them the secret. ....................................................................................

8 They offered her the job. ....................................................................................................

9 One of his uncles had taught him maths. ...........................................................................

10 Someone gave the animal charity a lot of money. ............................................................

2 Match a first part (1–10) with a second part (a–j). Use all the parts.

1 A decision to strike was taken a with a penknife.
2 This church was designed b by beautiful grounds.
3 I was shocked c by a hunter with a rifle.
4 He was shot d by some of the workers.
5 He had been stabbed e by Christopher Wren.
6 His trousers were completely covered f with a stick.
7 The house was surrounded g by her rude behaviour.
8 Her bedroom wall was covered h by a priest in a tiny little church.
9 They were married i with posters of her favourite singers.
10 He used to be beaten j in oil.
Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. This word must not be changed. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

Example: There was bitter opposition to the proposal.

opposed
The proposal was bitterly opposed.

1 They say the country is on the verge of civil war.
said
The country ...................... on the verge of civil war.

2 People thought the President was ill.
be
The President ...................... ill.

3 People have suggested that you could be on the committee.
put
Your name ...................... for the committee.

4 People believe he escaped with the money.
run
He is ...................... off with the money.

5 They thought he was the best actor for the part.
considered
He ...................... the best actor for the part.

6 People always thought she was very good at maths, but she made some basic mistakes.
supposed
She ...................... very good at maths, but she made some basic mistakes.

7 The directors decided to discuss the matter at the next meeting.
agreed
It ...................... would discuss the matter at the next meeting.

8 Two of the men walking home accepted our offer of a lift.
up
Our offer of a lift ...................... two of the men walking home.

9 Everything I know about art I learnt from Mrs Robinson.
was
I ...................... about art by Mrs Robinson.

10 The court ordered him to pay a fine of £100.
was
He ...................... a fine of £100 by the court.

I am informed from many quarters that a rumour has been put about that I died this morning. This is quite untrue.
WINSTON CHURCHILL
causative get and have

form

active
The active pattern is get + sb + to-infinitive or have + sb + bare infinitive:
I'll get my assistant to bring you the other pair of shoes.
Shall I have my secretary send you the details?

passive
The passive pattern is get/ have + object + past participle:
I'm getting/ having my house decorated at the moment.
You ought to get/ have your blood pressure checked.

use
Causative get and have mean 'ask or cause somebody to do something' in the active form, and 'arrange for somebody else to do something' in the passive. Get is more common in British English - have is now more formal except in some situations described opposite.

- Sometimes causative get/ have suggests the need to deal with a difficulty:
  I'm afraid you'll have to get/ have the whole house rewired.
- We use have in the passive when something unpleasant happens. Get is much less common than have in these situations:
  I had my wallet stolen in the crowd.
  He had his car broken into last night.
- Sometimes when we use have, meaning depends on context:
  We've had the bricks removed. (= either we arranged for somebody to take them, or somebody stole them)
- We use get, not have, when somebody else has to work on our behalf:
  One of these days I'm going to get myself elected onto the committee.

get + past participle
We often use get + past participle meaning 'become':
She got dressed and went downstairs.
My dog got run over by a removal van.

Practice

1 Complete the second sentence in these exchanges using the verb in brackets and any other words given. Use the causative form with have or get.

Example: A: 'Your hair looks nice.'
B: 'Thanks, I've just ........................................... .' (cut)
B: 'Thanks, I've just had it cut.'

1 A: 'I'm finding it difficult to read small print nowadays.'
B: 'Why don't you go and ........................................... ?' (eyes; test)
2 A: 'What a lovely dress - where did you buy it?'
B: 'I didn't. I ................................................ by the dressmaker down the road.' (make)
3 A: 'My car's been making some funny noises just lately.'
B: 'You should ........................................... ?' (service)
Complete each space in this text with a suitable word. The first (0) is given as an example.

ONE OF THOSE DAYS

It's been one of those days and it isn't over yet. First of all, I had to take the car to the garage to have the brakes [repaired]. (0). The car was in a bad enough state, but we (1) had it damaged even more by some idiot as we were waiting at the traffic lights the other day. He bumped into the back of the car and we told him he would have to pay for (2) the car (3) and he said he would (4) it paid for by his insurance company. I certainly hope he does. The mechanic told me I could've (5) myself killed driving the car and that we

should've (6) the brakes checked months ago.

I left the car at the garage, then went straight to the hairdresser to have my hair (7). I wanted to have (8) cut really short, so it took ages. After that, I had to take Bill's suit to the dry-cleaner's to (9) it cleaned after he had had wine (10) over it at the party last night. Next, I had to go to the supermarket. When I had finished, my bags were so heavy I had to (11) them delivered to my house -- and that cost more money. And the day isn't half over yet. I've still got to have my photograph (12) for a new passport -- my old one (13) stolen when we had our house (14) a few months back. What a life! Things can't get worse, can they?

WAITER: How would you like to have your egg cooked sir?
CUSTOMER: Is there any difference in the price?
WAITER: No, sir.
CUSTOMER: Then I'll have my egg cooked with ham, potatoes and sausages.
# Vocabulary

## 7d  get and have got

### get

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>receive, experience, etc. sth</td>
<td>Sharon always seems to get loads of mail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obtain sth</td>
<td>He'll get a shock when he sees the bill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy sth</td>
<td>Where did you get that painting?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive money</td>
<td>He's gone to get help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch an illness</td>
<td>I got the plant from Columbia Road market.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>I got a pullover for ten pounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>I only got a fiver for my old bike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She gets £100 a week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get + adjective / past</td>
<td>It's fairly unusual for adults to get measles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participle = 'become' (see page 120)</td>
<td>When I was five, I got the mumps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get + sb + to-infinitive (see page 120)</td>
<td>What time will we get there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>= make someone do something</td>
<td>I can't get the car out of the garage on my own.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get + sth + to-infinitive</td>
<td>Leave from my house!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>= make something do something</td>
<td>✓ Get out of my house!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start doing sth more quickly</td>
<td>When I tried to talk to him about it, he just got really angry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>Get dressed and come downstairs immediately!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>Why don't you get Chris to wash his jeans occasionally?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get to + noun phrase = reach</td>
<td>I wonder if Frank can get this video to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Let’s get moving – what are we waiting for?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oh, I get it. You put the paper in here and then press the button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Run upstairs and get a pillow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We got to the end of the book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### have got

For the meanings below, we often use have got instead of have in spoken English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possess</td>
<td>What kind of car has she got?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I've got two sisters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possess particular characteristics</td>
<td>She's got an awful temper.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For have (got) to, see page 46.
Practice

1 Match a first part (1–10) with a second part (a–j) to make correct sentences.

1 Why do I always get
2 I'm still in shock — I got
3 Is there anywhere I can get
4 My son's just popped out to get
5 In the sales, I got
6 He's in bed because he got
7 They finally got
8 How on earth are you going to get
9 Apart from a degree, he's got
10 Mr Jones is still handsome though now he's got

a a good haircut?
b me some groceries.
c socks for Christmas?
d a shiny bald head.
e a cold off one of the kids at school.
f to the camp tired and hungry.
g a Diploma in Business Studies.
h such a surprise when I opened the door this morning.
i that piano down the stairs?
j a great CD player for less than £200.

2 Complete these sentences with an appropriate word or phrase from the list.

cold the idea the joke those wet clothes silly the kids to the end

going the car

Example: This game is getting silly — let's stop it.

1 It's getting ................ outside. Let's go in.
2 I can't get ................ to start.
3 Let's get ................ — we're already late as it is.
4 I still don't get ................ . Must be my sense of humour.
5 She's just gone to get ................ from school.

6 You'd better get ................ off or you'll catch a cold.
7 When you get ................ of the test, tell me.
8 I can use e-mail now but it took time to get ................ of how to use it.

3 Fill each space with an appropriate word from the list. The first (0) is given as an example.

letter one channels snowed hobbies chance warmer surprise

stamps satellite cold

Dear Charlotte,

Thanks for writing. I got your .............. (0) a couple of days ago. It's nice having a new pen-friend. I got a real .............. (1) when I learnt that you have got almost the same .............. (2) as me. How many .............. (3) have you got, by the way? Yesterday, I got a really rare .............. (4) from a friend — it's a Penny Pink — I got it for £10. If you get the .............. (5), can you send me some old English stamps?

So you like TV as well? How many .............. (6) have you got? Do you get any .............. (7) TV stations?

It snowed a lot this year and we got .............. (8) in and just watched hours of TV. What's the weather like in London? Does it ever get really .............. (9)? It's been a long winter here, but the weather's getting a bit .............. (10) now.

Justine
compound nouns

form

A compound noun consists of two or three words that function like one word. There are very many compound nouns in English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>noun + noun:</td>
<td>notebook, science fiction,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>timetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + noun:</td>
<td>fast lane, fast food, first aid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + preposition:</td>
<td>break-up, check-out, take-over,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three words, with the</td>
<td>back-seat driver,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first two words used</td>
<td>one-parent family,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjectively and</td>
<td>ready-made meal,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usually joined with</td>
<td>three-piece suite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We sometimes write compound nouns as two words, sometimes with a hyphen and sometimes as one word:
  - address book    baby-sitter
  - brother-in-law  human being
  - mother tongue   pen-friend
  - road-works      sunglasses
  - youth hostel

There are no definite rules about this. If in doubt, consult a good modern dictionary.

countable or uncountable?

- Compound nouns may be countable:
  - one alarm clock - two alarm clocks
  - a car-park - several car-parks
  - a compact disc - many compact discs

- Compound nouns may be uncountable:
  - air-traffic control chewing gum
  - mineral water table tennis

- Some compound nouns have only a plural form:
  - armed forces baked beans
  - human rights road-works

For compound adjectives, see 9e.
### Practice

1. Decide whether the following compound nouns are countable or uncountable. Add them to the chart. Four examples are given.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>countable</th>
<th>uncountable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>heart attack</td>
<td>old age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high school</td>
<td>pocket money</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>letterbox</th>
<th>pen-friend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>washing powder</td>
<td>personal computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parking meter</td>
<td>soda water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remote control</td>
<td>news bulletin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show business</td>
<td>package holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>social work</td>
<td>passer-by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toilet-paper</td>
<td>washing-up liquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>police station</td>
<td>water skiing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post office</td>
<td>writing paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleeping bag</td>
<td>human nature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming pool</td>
<td>washing machine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Match the following parts of compound nouns and then fill in the blanks in the sentences using the most appropriate compound.

#### Noun and noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 suit</th>
<th>a food</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 pocket</td>
<td>b card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 zebra</td>
<td>c case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 fire</td>
<td>d writer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 dish</td>
<td>e alarm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 type</td>
<td>f opener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 credit</td>
<td>g brigade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 burglar</td>
<td>h washer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 can</td>
<td>i crossing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 junk</td>
<td>j money</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 1 They should put a .................................. outside the school so that children don’t get run over. |
| 2 It’s freezing in here – why don’t you get ................................ installed? |
| 3 When I don’t have time to cook I send the kids out to get some ...................................... . |
| 4 Is the ........................................ you get from your parents enough for your needs? |
| 5 Can you send the .................................. quickly – the house next door is on fire. |
| 6 When you leave primary school and get to ................................................, lessons get much more difficult. |
| 7 He’ll never think of such a simple solution because he hasn’t got any ................................ . |
| 8 Who’s got the ...................................... for the TV? I’m bored with this programme. |
| 9 Could you get my suit from the ................................................ for me on your way home? |
| 10 After the last break-in, they decided to get a ...................................... installed. |

#### Adjective and noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 fast</th>
<th>a heating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 remote</td>
<td>b fries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 social</td>
<td>c food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 high</td>
<td>d control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 central</td>
<td>e cleaner’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 common</td>
<td>f rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 French</td>
<td>g worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 dry</td>
<td>h languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 human</td>
<td>i school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 modern</td>
<td>j sense</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Complete the crossword using the clues. Each one is part of a compound.

Across
1. My ..........-cleaning has to be picked up before six.
2. Eric thinks he's so cool - he even wears ..........glasses when it's raining.
3. At our school the central .......... wouldn't be turned on until October.
4. We can omit .......... commas when we report what someone thinks.
5. Katy's ..........-up looks like it was put on with a trowel.
6. Did you know that chewing .......... is illegal in Singapore?
7. It's just common .......... not to walk home on your own.

Down
1. We could hire a van - do you have a valid .......... licence?
2. My brother read social .......... at university and he can't get a job with a decent salary.
3. As a student, .......... food suited me fine.
4. I'd like a cheeseburger and large French .........., please.
5. The multistorey car .......... is going to be knocked down.
6. I stood at the bus .......... for over an hour, and then six buses came along at once.
7. It's about time the world paid more attention to .......... rights issues.

4 Complete the sentences below with one of the following compound nouns.

print-out setback hold-up getaway check-outs break-out
break-in break-up take-over take-away take-off check-in

1. Since the .........., we've had all our locks changed.
2. The recent crime figures are a major .......... for law and order.
3. There was a .......... on the motorway this morning.
4. The thieves made their .......... through a downstairs window.
5. Why can't they have more .......... open so customers don't have to wait?
6. There was a mass .......... last night from Winston prison.
7. The .......... will have serious consequence for the children.
8. Iraq's attempted .......... of Kuwait led to American intervention.
9. Let's have a .......... tonight - I can't be bothered to cook.
10. What time's ..........? It says 19.10 on the ticket. I don't want to miss my flight.
11. I'd give you a .......... of John's e-mail message, but my printer's out of order.
12. Let's take these suitcases to the .......... and then we can go through passport control.
Fill in each space with an appropriate word from the list, forming a compound noun. The first (0) is given as an example.

word table   worker   washing   piece   meal   time   wife   book   up
electrical   washer   computer   sitter   house

A house husband

My wife is a social worker (0) and she works for the local council and has a very busy time (1) every day. She obviously can’t be in full-time work and be a house (2) at the same time. This means I’ve been a (3) husband for many years now, because my job as a text (4) writer for students of English can be done from home working on a personal (5) computer. As we can’t afford a baby (6), I’m in charge of the baby as well as having to do all the cooking and washing (7). My job is made much easier by the variety of (8) goods available – I just put all the dirty plates in the dish (9) and the baby’s clothes in the (10) machine and away I go. I’m free to produce yet another master (11) for students on my (12) processor. When my wife comes home at three she has a ready-made (13) to look forward to. Not bad, eh?

Grandma loved acting as baby-sitter for her grandchildren, but would always fall asleep in the armchair before they did. Once her five-year-old grandson woke her up, saying ‘Wake up, Granny, it’s past my bedtime’.
Entry test

Underline the correct answer in sentences 1–5.

1. 'Let’s go to the cinema tonight,' Amy suggested / announced.
2. She explained / told that she had been feeling unwell.
3. Sue begged / insisted John to give her another chance.
4. They warned the children not to go / do not go near the river.
5. She said she had been trying / was trying to phone you all day.

Now look at 8a on pages 130.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 6–10.

6. The judge asked the witness ............ give her more information.
   A him that he          B if he could          C that he could          D him whether to
7. They asked if ............ always wanted to be a doctor.
   A did she          B had she          C did          D she had
8. Did he say whether ............ lend you the money or not?
   A could he          B can he          C he could          D he
9. She couldn’t tell us what ............ the money on.
   A she did spend          B did she spend          C she had spent          D had she spent
10. I showed them how ............ the computer.
     A to use          B is used          C they use          D must they use

Now look at 8b on page 134.
Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 11–15.

11 The car swerved to avoid ................ the pedestrian.
   A hitting B to hit C that it hit D not to hit

12 My teacher admitted ................ the answer to the question.
   A to not know B that he not know C that he didn’t know
   D that not knowing

13 Would you like ................ another piece of cake?
   A have also B having C that you have D to have

14 I hope one day ................ my own house.
   A own B to own C owning D that I own

15 I’d rather ................ the children decide for themselves.
   A to let B allowing C to allow D let

Now look at 8c on page 137.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 16–20.

16 What did the newspaper ................ about the accident?
   A tell B refer C say D speak

17 I was persuaded ................ on the trip at the last minute.
   A that I go B going C me to go D to go

18 She convinced the court ................ innocent.
   A to be B that she was C she was being D that was

19 The suspect ................ that he had been to the bank that day.
   A told B refused C rejected D denied

20 We made her an excellent offer, but she ................ it.
   A rejected B turned C accepted D denied

Now look at 8d on page 140.

For questions 21–25, use an appropriate form of the word given to fill the space.

21 I’m sorry but I don’t find her jokes at all ................ . (amuse)

22 We were so ................ when the singer failed to turn up. (disappoint)

23 He’s got some ................ habits but people still like him. (annoy)

24 The lesson was so ................ I nearly fell asleep. (bore)

25 She has the most ................ little cottage I’ve ever seen. (charm)

Now look at 8e on page 143.
Grammar

8a reported speech (1)

speech

When we quote someone's actual words, we can use reporting verbs such as say, reply, suggest, etc.:

'I knew the answer,' he said.
'Veyou take sugar?' she asked.
'Let's go swimming,' Peter suggested.

- We can report statements, questions, requests, thoughts, etc.
- Here is a list of common reporting verbs:
  add admit advise agree announce answer ask beg claim demand explain insist order persuade promise remind reply report say suggest tell think warn
- Some report verbs need an indirect object:
  'Bring some money,' she reminded us.
  The police told us, 'You won't be charged this time.'
- We often use report verbs that tell us more about the way someone says something:
  'Jump now!' the fireman shouted.
  'Get out of my house!' she screamed.
- Here are more examples of these verbs:
  boast brag cry exclaim grumble insist moan mumble mutter stammer stutter whisper whine yell
- The reporting clause can come before, in the middle of, or after the direct quotation:
  He stood up and announced, 'The party is over.'
  'You see,' he grumbled, 'I can't really afford a holiday.'
  'You mustn't give up,' his mother insisted.
- Notice the punctuation in the above examples: in the direct quotes, the comma or full stop comes inside the quotation marks.

• When a reporting verb comes after a quote, we can put the subject after the verb:
  'I doubt if we'll win,' said John. (= John said)
  'Wait here - I'll take a look,' whispered Jake.
  'That's your girlfriend over there, isn't it?' asked Paula.

thoughts

We can quote people's thoughts in the same way as we can quote their speech. We can omit quotation marks:

'I must go and visit Linda, Martha thought.

• Here are the common verbs we use for reporting thoughts:
  assume believe consider contemplate imagine infer reflect ponder presuppose suppose think wonder
statements

A common way of reporting someone's words is by using a noun clause beginning with that:

'I can't help you.' becomes: He **admitted that** he can't help us.

However, we often omit that, especially when the reporting verb is say or think:

'I'm very clever.' becomes: He **thinks** he's (= a thought) very clever.

questions

We use ask, wonder or want to know to report questions:

He asked me where I went.
I was wondering why she's here.
He only wanted to know if we'd met each other before.
See also 8b.

suggestions

When we report suggestions, we can use suggest + noun clause with or without that. We can include a modal verb, usually should or could:

'Why not get your hair cut?' becomes: He **suggested** (that) I should get my hair cut.

'Let's go for a swim.' becomes: John **suggested** (that) we could go for a swim.

✓ Mary **suggested** us to postpone the meeting.
❌ Mary **suggested** (that) we should postpone the meeting.

We often omit the modal verbs:

He **suggested** I get my hair cut.
John **suggested** we go for a swim.

commands

When we report requests, orders or commands, or other kinds of persuasion, we often use the pattern ask, etc. sb to do sth:

'Wake me up early, Dad!' Michael said.

'Please let me watch the match, Mum,' Anne said.

Michael **told** his dad **to wake** him up early.
Anne **begged** her mum **to let** her watch the match.

Here are common verbs which use this pattern:

advise ask beg command forbid instruct invite order persuade remind teach tell urge warn

Notice that when we are reporting negative orders, requests, etc., not goes before the to-infinitive:
She **begged** him **not to do** it.
He **taught** us **not to tell** lies.

offers, etc.

When we report what a person said, we often use a verb which describes the speaker's intention, such as an offer or a refusal. The pattern is verb + to-infinitive:

'Can I help you?' becomes: She **offered** to help me.

'I won't do it.' becomes: He **refused** to do it.

Similar verbs in this group include:
agree promise swear threaten volunteer vow

changes to time words

We often make changes in reported speech to words related to time, e.g. tomorrow. These changes depend on each situation. Here are examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>direct speech</th>
<th>reported speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>here</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ago</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>earlier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last week</td>
<td>the week before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next week</td>
<td>the next week / the week after /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the following week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>then / that day / at the moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>that / the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these</td>
<td>those / the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>that / the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this morning</td>
<td>that morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today</td>
<td>that day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>the next day / the following day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tonight</td>
<td>that night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>the day before / the previous day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Reported Statements – Tense Changes

When we report statements that were made in the past, we change the tense of the original (direct) speech:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Speech</th>
<th>Reported Speech</th>
<th>Tense Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'I want to buy it.'</td>
<td>He said (that)...</td>
<td>Present Simple becomes: Past Simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I’m writing a letter.'</td>
<td>he wanted to buy it.</td>
<td>Present Continuous becomes: Past Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I've come to mend your car.'</td>
<td>he had come to mend my car.</td>
<td>Present Perfect becomes: Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I saw your brother.'</td>
<td>he had seen my brother.</td>
<td>Past Simple becomes: Past Perfect (but, we need not change the tense if the order of events is clear)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I was trying to do it.'</td>
<td>he had been trying to do it.</td>
<td>Past Continuous becomes: Past Perfect Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I’ll help you.'</td>
<td>he would help me.</td>
<td>will becomes: would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I can do it.'</td>
<td>he could do it.</td>
<td>can becomes: could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I may do it.'</td>
<td>he might do it.</td>
<td>may becomes: might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I must go.'</td>
<td>he had to go.</td>
<td>must becomes: had to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can keep the verb in a noun clause in the Present tense when we report things which are 'timeless', e.g. scientific theories:

  Already in ancient times, some philosophers believed that matter consists of atoms.

### Practice

1. Complete each sentence in reported speech.

   Example: Let me help you.
   My friend offered to help me.

   1. ‘Why don’t we go for a walk?’
      She suggested ....................................
   2. ‘I wasn’t anywhere near the scene of the crime.’
      The accused claimed ..............................
   3. ‘This spot is the best place for a picnic.’
      My father said ...................................
   4. ‘The swallows return every spring and fly past my window.’
      She explained ....................................
   5. ‘Can you answer the phone? I’m having a shower!’
      He asked his son ..................................
   6. ‘I gave you my homework last week.’
      The boy insisted .................................
   7. ‘Could you come and pick me up from school today, dad?’
      Billy asked .....................................
   8. ‘If I were you, I wouldn’t drink so much.’
      He advised his friend ............................
   9. ‘I won’t help you because you didn’t help me.’
      a. Joan said .....................................
      b. Joan refused .................................
   10. ‘I’ll bring it back tomorrow.’
      a. He said ....................................... 
      b. He promised .................................
2 Match the first part (1–10) with an appropriate reporting verb (a–j).

1 'If you do that again, I’ll leave,' a she whispered.
2 'I'm now going to read out the results,' b he answered.
3 'Could you bring me the wine list?' c she shouted.
4 'Of course, I’ll bring it right away,' d she threatened.
5 'Our team will easily beat yours,' e she announced.
6 'Please give me another chance,' f he claimed.
7 'Shhh! The baby’s sleeping,' g he asked.
8 'I’m innocent of all the charges,' h she begged.
9 'First of all, you press the button,' i he boasted.
10 'Careful! The water’s deep!' j he explained.

3 Finish these sentences using the information above. Use reported speech.

1 She threatened ............................................. 6 She begged them ..........................................
2 She announced that she ................................ 7 She whispered that ....................................
3 He asked the waiter ..................................... 8 He claimed .............................................
4 The waiter answered .................................... 9 He explained that ....................................
5 He boasted that .......................................... 10 She shouted to us .....................................

4 Complete the following letter using the correct form of a verb from the list.
The first (0) is given as an example.

be buy make snow give miss send cost have live plan

Dear Rose,
Thanks for your letter. I’ve got lots of news for you this time. We went to see 'Titanic'. Everyone had said it was (0) great and that nobody should (1) it. There has been a lot of publicity on TV about it recently which told us how much it (2) to make and all that, and Liz and Tony saw it and said they (3) it. I was a bit disappointed – I didn’t think it (4) up to expectations. Anyway, I suggest you (5) and see it and (6) up your own mind.

Ah, yes, I got a call from your uncle in Canada who said he (7) you a parcel – have you got it yet? He said it (8) there, and everything was white but he added they always (9) a heavy winter. He also told me they (10) a new jeep and they (11) to travel round the States in it in the summer. He said he (12) us a ride in it if we popped over for a holiday. I replied that we (13) to go over if he agreed to pay all our expenses! He laughed and said he (14) about it and let us know!
reported speech: questions

When we report questions, we do not follow the normal question order. Instead, we use the word order of a statement:

'Can I leave the room?' becomes: 'I asked if I could leave the room.'

× She asked me where was I from.
✓ She asked me where I was from.

• In very informal English, we can invert the subject and be but this is unusual:
  She asked where was the man going.

• When we report questions, we do not use quotation marks or a question mark:
  'How is Johnny getting on at school?' becomes: 'She asked how Johnny was getting on at school.'

yes/no questions

When we report questions that can be answered by yes or no (for example Are you happy here? Do you live in a flat?), we use a noun clause beginning with if or whether:

'Are you happy here?' becomes: 'She asked me if/whether I was happy there.'

'Does he live in a large flat?' becomes: 'She wondered if/whether he lived in a large flat.'

• We can usually use either if or whether:
  'Are the summers very hot there?' becomes: 'He enquired if/whether the summers were very hot there.'
  'Have you always lived in the old town?' becomes: 'They asked him if/whether he had always lived in the old town.'

• However, we must use whether, not if, when we are asking someone to make a choice:
  'Do you want coffee or tea?' becomes: 'They asked whether I wanted coffee or tea.'

• We must also use whether when we include the phrase or not. We use whether...or not to emphasise the necessity for an answer, often because we are irritated or angry:
  'Are you going to tell me the answer or not?' becomes: 'She asked him whether he was going to tell her the answer or not.'
  'Is he coming or not?' becomes: 'Did he say whether he was coming or not?'

• Here is a list of verbs and verb phrases we can use before if and whether clauses:
  ask want to know wonder (not) say cannot remember enquire

wh-questions

When we report a wh-question, we use the wh-word: who, where, why, what, etc. or how, how far, how long, etc:

'Who built that castle?' becomes: 'She wanted to know who had built that castle.'

'Where did you go this summer?' becomes: 'He inquired where we had gone that summer.'

'What time is it?' becomes: 'She asked us what the time was. She wanted to know what the time was.'

tense changes

Tense changes for reported questions in the past are the same as for reported statements (see page 132).
Practice

1 Change the following into indirect questions beginning with the words given.

1 Can I have some more pocket money?
   The boy asked ...........................................

2 Where were you born?
   She asked him ...........................................

3 How far is the stadium?
   He wanted to know ....................................

4 Are you still living in London?
   She asked ................................................

5 Do you work in the central branch or in the provinces?
   She asked him ...........................................

6 Are you going to give me the money or not?
   She wanted to know ....................................

7 Did he bring the book back?
   I didn't know ...........................................

8 Who bought the Picasso painting?
   He wondered ............................................

9 Where did you get such a lovely pullover?
   She asked her sister ....................................

2 Re-order these words to make yes/no and wh-questions which might be asked at a job interview.

Example: trip/did/have/you/nice/a
           Did you have a nice trip?

1 long/the/take/how/did/journey .................................................................?

2 was/in/snowing/it/Manchester .................................................................?

3 you/how/are/old .........................................................................................?

4 were/where/born/you ..................................................................................

5 here/you/lived/long/how/have ...................................................................

6 you/are/married ...........................................................................................

7 you/a/do/family/have ...................................................................................

8 worked/how/as/editor/long/an/you/have .....................................................?

9 can/work/you/when/start ..........................................................................?

10 like/your/most/you/what/job/do/about .....................................................?

11 us/you/told/who/about ..............................................................................?

12 good/a/what/manager/are/qualities/the/of ..............................................?

13 expect/be/much/you/do/how/to/paid ......................................................?

14 paid/last/in/much/how/you/being/were/job/your ......................................?
Read the text below and add the word which best fits each space.

I have just been through the annual humiliation of buying a swimming costume. When I was young, some were designed for the fuller figure and did a good job. I wondered .......... (1) I would find anything suitable. After all, today's stretch fabrics are styled for a flatter shape. I saw one floral costume and .......... (2) if I should try it on. I looked like a hippopotamus! The sales assistant tried to be kind. She wanted .......... (3) know where I .......... (4) going for my holidays and how long I .......... (5) be away. At last she gave up and suggested .......... (6) I looked for something in the maternity department to cover my 'mature hips'. I said that I would go there the .......... (7) day. I'll never have any luck. I .......... (8) as I walked home. The next day I did find a plain blue costume and the assistant invited me to enter the chamber of horrors known as the fitting room. As I pulled the costume on, I stared in disbelief - my whole bust had disappeared under my armpits! A young sales girl was standing at the exit. She asked me rather rudely .......... (9) I was going to buy the costume or .......... (10). I pushed it into her hands and fled.

4 Read the following text carefully. Some of the lines are correct but in the others there is a word which should not be there. If the sentence is correct, tick (√) it. If there is an incorrect word in the sentence, write it at the end in the space provided. The first two are given as examples.

**A JOB INTERVIEW**

I think the interview went well. He wanted to know whether a number of things about me and what I had been doing

1 in the last few years. First, he asked me if I have had had
2 a nice trip down from Manchester and how long it
3 had been taken me to get there. He also wanted to know
4 whether or it had been snowing in Manchester. The chitchat
5 over, he asked from me how old I was and where I was born
6 although I had sent him my CV by post. He then asked
7 how long I had lived in Manchester and I told him. His
8 next question was the whether I was married and whether I had
9 a family or not. I explained him that I was separated and that
10 I had one daughter. He asked me how long did I had worked as an
11 editor and how much I was had being paid in my present job. He
12 asked me what was I liked most about my job and who had told me
13 about their company. The main questions he asked me were about the
14 qualities of a good manager. Finally, he asked how much have
15 I expected to be paid. I think the interview went very well.
-ing forms and infinitives after verbs and prepositions

After verbs, we can use an infinitive (with or without to), an -ing form of another verb, a noun, or a noun clause beginning with that:

I must go now.
I feel like dancing.
I fancy an ice-cream.
I admit that I did it.

verb + noun, verb + -ing form

Here are examples of verbs that use these patterns:

I avoid noisy bars. I avoid going to noisy bars.
(= I try not to go to them)
The castle is worth a visit. The castle is worth visiting.
(= It is a good idea to visit it)

- Here are verbs that use these patterns:
  avoid  be  worth
  delay  dislike  enjoy
  fancy  feel like  finish
  give up  involve  keep / keep on
  mind  miss  postpone / put off
  practise  risk

- Verbs + prepositions are followed by the -ing form of the verb. We often follow prepositions with the -ing form of a verb. Here are examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb + prepositions</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be good at</td>
<td>She's good at getting people to do things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be keen on</td>
<td>Why are you so keen on travelling?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward to</td>
<td>They were looking forward to going on holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insist on</td>
<td>She insisted on coming with me to the lawyer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>succeed in</td>
<td>He succeeded in breaking the world speed record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apologise for</td>
<td>I apologise for letting you down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

verb + -ing form/noun/noun clause with that

Here are examples of these patterns:
He admitted lying to the police.
He admitted his crimes.
He admitted that he had lied to the police.

- Here are more verbs in this group:
  admit  consider  deny  imagine  report  suggest

- An infinitive is not possible with these verbs:
  ✗ He denied to do it.
  ✓ He denied doing it.

- We can omit that.

verb + -ing form/to-infinitive/noun

Here are examples of these patterns:
I began training as soon as I heard about the match.
I began to train as soon as I heard about the match.
I began French when I was twelve.

- Here are more verbs in this group:
  begin  continue  can't bear  
hate  like  love  prefer  can't stand  start

can't bear or can't stand?

- Can't bear means 'to dislike something very much' and is common in both written and spoken English:
  He can't bear smoking.
  I can't bear to hear that music – turn it down.
  I can't bear that music – turn it down.

- Can't stand also means 'to dislike something very much' but is more common in spoken English:
  Lily can't stand working in an office.
  I can't stand TV commercials.
  I can't stand that singer.
verb + to-infinitive

Here are examples of verbs that use this pattern:
I agreed to go with her.
He appears to be dead.
We can't afford to go on holiday this year.

- Here are more verbs in this group:
  expect  choose  wish
  intend  fail  decide
  manage  hope  hesitate
  plan  mean (= intend)  learn
  promise  prepare  offer
  threaten  refuse  pretend
  like  want  seem

- We can also follow many of these verbs with a that-clause, a noun, an adjective or a prepositional phrase:
  I agree that it is difficult. (verb + that-clause)
  She failed the exam. (verb + noun)
  She seems frightened. They appear happy. (verb + adjective)
  They agreed on a course of action. (verb + prepositional phrase)

verb + bare infinitive

This is a small group. Here are examples of verbs that use this pattern:
Let me give you some advice. (= allow me to...)
I'd rather go to Italy. (= I prefer to...)
I'd sooner die than tell the secret. (= I would very much prefer to...)
You'd better watch what you're saying. (= I advise you to...)
They made us get up early. (= forced us to...)

- The biggest set of verbs in this group are modal verbs except ought to (see 3a, 3b).
Other examples are:
  see  feel  hear  watch

- We do not use let in the passive. Instead we use allow:
The children were allowed to leave early.

- We use a to-infinitive after make in the passive:
  I was made to wait two hours for an appointment.

infinitive or -ing form?

We can use some verbs with both the to-infinitive and -ing form but with a change of meaning. The most common of these are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
<td>not forget to do it</td>
<td>I remembered to turn off the oven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have a memory of it</td>
<td>I remember turning off the oven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try</td>
<td>make an effort</td>
<td>They tried to help but it was no use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do it to see what happens</td>
<td>Try jogging a bit every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>stop in order to...</td>
<td>I stopped to tie up my shoelace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no longer do this</td>
<td>He stopped wearing ties years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on</td>
<td>continue by...</td>
<td>The teacher took the register and went on to discuss the homework.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not stop working</td>
<td>She went on although she could've retired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regret</td>
<td>be sorry to have</td>
<td>We regret to inform you that we cannot offer you the post.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to inform sb that...</td>
<td>She regretted accepting the job after the first day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice

1 Underline the correct word or phrase in the following.

1 He denied telling/to tell lies.
2 He denied/ refused that he had told lies.
3 They suggested to postpone/postponing the match to the following week.
4 The weather delayed that they arrived/their arrival.
5 I can't bear see/see children suffer.
6 We really can't afford buying/to buy a new washing machine.
7 I look forward to seeing/to see you at the party.
8 Before going/that I went to the interview, I bought a new tie.
9 I'd rather stay/to stay at home tonight, if that's all right.
10 I saw someone to climb/climbing through the window.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change this word.

1 I'm sorry but we have decided not to accept your application.
   regret
   I ........................................................
   we have decided to reject your application.
2 Funnily enough I'd prefer a pizza for a change.
   rather
   Funnily enough .....................................
3 We were not allowed to drink too much Coke when we were children.
   let
   Our parents .............................................
4 I think it would be a good idea to take the train.
   suggest
   I ........................................................

5 She succeeded in persuading her parents to let her go.
   managed
   She ........................................................
6 It looks as if this door's locked after all.
   appears
   This ........................................................
7 One of the things I hate is people eating popcorn in the cinema.
   stand
   One of the things I .....................................
8 The singer arrived two hours late but I'm glad I waited for him.
   worth
   The singer ..............................................
9 Jack said he had to catch the early flight.
   insisted
   Jack ........................................................
10 I can't wait to get your next letter.
   forward
   I ........................................................

3 Write the correct form of the verbs given in brackets. Sometimes more than one answer may be possible.

Einstein: an ordinary child

Einstein was not a remarkable child. He began (1 take) .............. piano lessons at the age of six. He didn't seem (2 be) .............. particularly talented. He liked (3 day-dream) .............. and (4 play) .............. . He didn't enjoy (5 talk) .............. very much; in fact, he waited till he was three before (6 start) .............. to talk. In spite of not (7 have) .............. a very exciting childhood, Einstein later appeared (8 have) .............. a vivid memory of it. He remembered (9 be) .............. impressed by how a compass works and by the mysterious force which made the compass needle (10 point) .............. in a given direction.
Vocabulary

8d say, tell, talk, discuss, speak, etc.

say
Say comes before or after direct speech:
Tom said, ‘This is great!’
‘I’m so tired,’ she said.

say (that)
We use say (that) before reported speech:
She said (that) she might be late.

collocactions with say
Here are some common phrases with say:

| say       
|-----------------------------------|
| your prayers          
| yes/no                
| a few words           
| something             

• Certain objects can ‘say’ things:
The clock says it’s five past ten.
The letter says we’ve won first prize.
The newspaper says there’s been a hijacking.
The label says it was produced in Argentina.

grammar of say
Say cannot have a person as a direct object. We must use the preposition to followed by the person:
She said goodbye to her parents.

common phrases with say

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrase</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>People say...</td>
<td>People say he’s a bit mad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let’s just say (that)...</td>
<td>Let’s just say he doesn’t always tell the truth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have sth to say</td>
<td>If you have something to say, say it now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Say... (= suppose)</td>
<td>Say we do this, what would happen?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

tell
We tell somebody facts, opinions and information:
He told us the answer.

collocactions with tell
Here are some common phrases with tell:

| tell sb about sth  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She told us about her travels around North America. (= reported)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m going to say something to the neighbours about the noise. (= complain)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Tell sb about sth can be a request:
Tell us about Africa.

• Compare this with say sth about:
I’m going to say something about my trip to Africa. (= I will report the facts about…)

tell sb to do sth
We use tell (not say) with a to-infinitive when we report commands:
✓ The policeman said me to go with him.
✓ The policeman told me to go with him.
‘Close the door,’ becomes: He told me to close the door.

tell sb (that)
She told them (that) she might be late.

tell sb + what/how/where, etc. + noun phrase
Here is an example of this pattern:
Tell me what you need.

• We can also use this pattern with a to-infinitive:
Tell her what to do
Tell her where to go
Tell her how to do it
phrases with *tell*
Here are examples of *tell* in common phrases:

*It's impossible to tell the twins apart.*

*You could tell a mile off that she was lying.*

*I didn't do it — somebody's been telling tales.*

*If you’re quiet, I’ll tell you a story about a big bad wolf.*

*I told you the reason why I was out late.*

*You’ve never told the truth in your life.*

*I’ve never told a lie in my whole life.*

*Notice we also use give meaning ‘express’ in common phrases:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>give</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**talk about or speak about?**

To *talk about* something means the same as to discuss something:

*Let's talk about the problem.* (= Let's discuss it)

*We use speak about in more formal contexts:*

*The lecturer is going to speak about the modern novel.* (= give a talk on)

*We can also use talk about meaning ‘tell stories’ in less formal contexts:*

*She often talked about her days as a student.*

**persuade or convince?**

*Persuade* means ‘make someone decide to do something, especially by asking them repeatedly or telling them reasons why they should do it’. Here are the main patterns in examples:

*I finally persuaded her to go out for a drink with me.* (= I got her to agree to do it)

*He refused to come in spite of our efforts to persuade him.* (= to make him decide to do it)

*Convince* means ‘make somebody feel certain that something is true’. Here are the main patterns in examples:

*Her evidence convinced the court.*

*Her arguments convinced me.*

*I managed to convince them that the story was true.*

*We finally convinced them of our innocence.*

**deny, refuse, reject and turn down**

Here is a table showing the forms and meanings of these verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deny + noun</td>
<td>say sth is not true</td>
<td>He denied the claims.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny that</td>
<td></td>
<td>She denied that she had stolen the money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse + to-infinitive</td>
<td>say you will not do sth</td>
<td>He refused to apologise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse + noun</td>
<td>not accept sth</td>
<td>They refused our help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reject + noun</td>
<td>refuse to accept</td>
<td>They rejected her ideas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn down</td>
<td>refuse an offer</td>
<td>I turned down the offer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*To deny something means ‘say it is not true’:*

*He was accused of stealing a car but he denies it.*

*He denied rumours/the accusations.*

*He denied any knowledge of the crime.*

*He denied that he stole it.*

*To refuse + to-infinitive or refuse + noun means to ‘say you will not do something that someone asks you to do’:*

*She refused to help us.*

*She refused our help/a second piece of cake.*

*She refused the children permission to play in the garden.* (= she said they were not allowed)

*Reject is stronger than refuse. It means to ‘refuse to accept, consider or use something’. We can only use it with a noun:*

*They rejected her application.*

*Sarah rejected her brother’s offer of help.*

*The council rejected the proposals for the new road.*

**turn sb/sth down**

We can also use the phrasal verb *turn down* instead of refuse and reject:

*She turned down her brother’s offer of help.*

*She turned him down.* (= refused to accept his offer)
## Practice

1. Fill in each space with a suitable form of a verb from the list. You can use some verbs more than once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>say</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>talk</th>
<th>discuss</th>
<th>persuade</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>convince</th>
<th>deny</th>
<th>turn down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. A: People .................. that he's been all round the world.
   B: Yes, he's always .................. about his travels.

2. A: He was .................. us another one of his stories.
   B: Does he ever .................. the truth?

3. A: Rose is brilliant at .................. jokes.
   B: I hope we can .................. her to tell us some tonight.

4. A: Why don't you ask the doctor to .................. you a second opinion?
   B: Yes, I ought to .................. to someone else about it.

5. A: Doctor, they .................. it's urgent.
   B: Very well, .................. them I'm on my way.

6. A: They .................. the Prime Minister will be .................. about the new law in Parliament today.
   B: I wonder what he's going to .................. this time.

7. A: You .................. me you were at the pub last night.
   B: What are you .................. about?

   B: I don't. I am .................. he's been .................. lies.

   B: But he didn't get the job. I wonder why he was .................. ?

10. A: You can't .................. that you .................. Kate my secret.
    B: No, I didn't. But it seems I can't .................. you. Maybe we can .................. this later.

## A FRIEND IN NEED

I can't .................. (0) when I first realised that Billy was in trouble with the police. He had often .................. (1) to me about his problems and, as his friend, I had .................. (2) him the best advice I could. I also .................. (3) I'd let him come and stay with me but he .................. (4) my offer. I tried to .................. (5) him to stop spending so much money at the club and to sit down and .................. (6) his problems with me but he .................. (7) me to mind my own business.

   It was difficult to .................. (8) to him after this but I was .................. (9) he was getting into deeper trouble all the time. He had often .................. (10) having anything to do with the local gangs. But then the police came round and asked me to .................. (11) them information about Billy and I couldn't .................. (12), though I avoided .................. (13) them anything that might do him harm. They asked me to .................. (14) them more details but I managed to convince them that I had told the truth.
-ed adjectives
Adjectives ending -ed have the same form as past participles. The -ed adjective tells us how a person feels:
The **worried** parents waited anxiously for news.
It's difficult to teach a classroom of **bored** students.
• These adjectives do not end in -ed if the past participle is irregular:
  She died of a **broken** heart.

-ing adjectives
Adjectives ending -ing have the same form as the present participle. The -ing adjective tells us about the effect that something or someone has on our feelings:
*It was a **disappointing** film.*
*That was a **satisfying** meal.*
*You're a **boring** teacher.*
The journey was **exciting**.
*My job is **exhausting**.*

• Here are some common -ed/-ing adjectives.
  Look up those you are not sure of in a dictionary:
  amused/amusing          excited/exciting
  annoyed/annoying         fascinated/
  bored/boring              fascinating
  confused/confusing        frightened/
  disappointed/             frightening
  disappointing             interested/interesting
  disgusted/disgusting      irritated/irritating
  embarrassed/              satisfied/satisfying
  embarrassing             surprised/surprising
  encouraged/               terrified/terrifying
  encouraging               tired/tiring

• There are many -ed/-ing adjectives which are not connected with feelings. These can usually replace a clause meaning 'noun which is…'
Here are some examples:
a **sliding** door  a **melting** ice  a **sunken** ship
a **moving** part  a **soaring** bird  **burning** heat
a **broken** vase  a **locked** door  a **fallen** tree

Practice

1 **Underline the correct -ed or -ing adjectives in the following text.**

**SCHOOL REPORT**
**SHOCKS PARENTS**

Teachers are finding it increasingly difficult to control classes of young pupils, says a report published yesterday. The evidence from the 100 schools which were involved in the study is not encouraged / encouraging (1). The report paints a depressing / depressed (2) picture of schools up and down the country, with teachers feeling disappointed / disappointing (3) not only by students' results in tests but by the worrying / worried (4) increase in violent behaviour in class and in the playground. 'I am worn out at the end of the day; my job is exhausted / exhausting (5), I can tell you,' complained one teacher. One of the most disturbed / disturbing (6) revelations is the use of drugs by youngsters. Although teachers were not totally surprised / surprising (7) by the findings, parents are worried / worrying (8); some even described the report as shocked / shocking (9) and demanded immediate action. Pupils who were asked to comment on the report said they found school uninterested / uninteresting (10); they blamed teachers for teaching boring / bored (11) lessons. The report is particularly embarrassed / embarrassing (12) for the Minister of Education who claimed recently that British education is 'the best in the world'.
2 Complete the following sentences with the correct -ed or -ing adjective, using the verbs in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>interest</th>
<th>relax</th>
<th>surprise</th>
<th>confuse</th>
<th>bore</th>
<th>annoy</th>
<th>embarrass</th>
<th>frighten</th>
<th>depress</th>
<th>irritate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. The instructions in the exam were very complicated and left the students feeling totally .............. .
2. I don’t find horror films at all .............. – in fact, I find them quite funny.
3. Would you be .............. in coming to the theatre this evening? I have a spare ticket.
4. Can’t you fix that dripping tap? It’s getting on my nerves – it’s really .............. .
5. I didn’t expect to see Peter at the party. I was really .............. to see him there.
6. He’s had a lot of bad news recently and is feeling a bit .............. . Let’s go and cheer him up.
7. I find it .............. to lie on the sofa and listen to music after a hard day’s work.
8. I was told the film was really good but I felt utterly .............. by it.
9. I get really .............. when people throw rubbish down in the streets. It makes me furious.
10. If I said anything as stupid as he did in front of a thousand people, I’d feel really .............. .

3 Answer the following questions using -ed or -ing adjectives. Write about your own ideas.

1. What do you think about the destruction of the rain forests?

2. How would you feel if you climbed Mount Everest?

3. If you failed the exam, how would you feel?

4. What do you think of people who drop litter?

5. What do your parents think of your friends?

6. If you were flying to New York tomorrow, how would you feel?

7. Whenever you see a beggar, how do you feel?

8. What do you think of sport on television?

9. When the bus or train is late, how do you feel?

10. How would you feel if someone found you cheating?
4. Complete the following sentences using an appropriate -ed or -ing adjective. Write about your own feelings.

*Example: I find science fiction stories very interesting.*

1. I find computers such ................ machines.
2. People who like computer games are really ............... .
3. The thought of going to the moon is ............... .
4. It's easier to teach ................ students.
5. I wouldn't be .................. if the economy collapsed.
6. I find lying on the beach on a hot summer’s day ................ .
7. I agree that television is ............... .
8. Football couldn't be more ................ .

5. Complete the crossword using an -ed or -ing adjective. Use the verbs in the list to help you.

```
arm heat build interest humiliate amuse collect touch age captivate freeze reward trust
```

**Across**

2. I hear you want to buy a car. Would you be ............ in a second-hand Honda?
5. What began as a friendly discussion, soon became a ........... argument.
6. Would you keep the baby ............ while I hang out the washing?
8. His truck was loaded up with bricks, sand and other ........... materials.
9. Take a thick coat – the weather can be ............ in Britain, even in spring.
10. Are ........... aircraft, say those older than ten years, safe to fly in?
11. Nursing can be a very ........... career, can't it?
12. It's important to stay cool, calm and ........... during your interview.

**Down**

1. The Countess of Wessex won over the nation with her ............ smile.
3. You shouldn't have believed him – you're far too ........... .
4. My family were deeply ............ by your offers of help and sympathy.
7. I felt utterly ............ when you criticised me in front of my friends.
10. The army, navy and air force are known as the ............ forces.
Exam practice 4

Part 1

For Questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Example: 0 A information means  B mass media  C news means  D methods of information

BAD NEWS

The ......... (0) nowadays are our main source of information about what's happening in the world and the impression one ......... (1) from them about human ......... (2) is pretty depressing. My blood ......... (3) rises every time I switch the television on. Apart from gossip about ......... (4) personalities, the picture they paint of human ......... (5) is that they are violent and bloodthirsty. They just report crimes, violations of human rights and the way we are destroying our natural ......... (6). They rarely report ......... (7) in science or medicine; it's a bleak picture. Last night, there was a report about a mass ......... (8) from a prison in Chicago during which five prison guards ......... (9) dead as the prisoners were ......... (10) their getaway. Then there was the story of someone who ......... (11) gunned down by police when he went berserk and massacred ten innocent ......... (12) in a shopping centre somewhere – again – in the United States. I see now where Hollywood ......... (13) get their ideas from. They just turn on the news and they've got themselves a ......... (14) scenario. It seems to me that news ......... (15) have become a form of entertainment.

1 A takes  B collects  C gets  D draws
2 A nature  B character  C species  D persons
3 A level  B impression  C pressure  D temperature
4 A film affairs  B film business  C show star  D show business
5 A beings  B characters  C personalities  D people
6 A wealth  B springs  C materials  D resources
7 A breakaways  B break-ins  C break-ups  D breakthroug
8 A break-in  B break-out  C breakthrough  D break-up
9 A have been shot  B have shot  C were shooting  D were shot
10 A taking  B making  C trying  D escaping
11 A had  B has been  C got  D was got
12 A by-passers  B passers-by  C pedestrians  D onlookers
13 A screenplayers  B scriptplayers  C scenewriters  D screenwriters
14 A ready-made  B take-away  C give-away  D high-class
15 A bulletins  B broadcasters  C forecasts  D reporters

SCORE
Part 2

For Questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (O).

LETTER FROM BRITAIN

I received another letter from my daughter, Rose, today in which she _______ (O) us all about her first impressions of .......... (16) and studying in Britain. The first thing she .......... (17) in the letter is that she is settling down quite nicely. After the first day she had complained that the weather .......... (18) cold and the people .......... (19) unfriendly. Indeed, she wondered .......... (20) it always seemed to be dark and .......... (21) the British ever saw the sunshine. In her letter she says she is enjoying .......... (22) drama at the university but still finds the social life a bit boring. I .......... (23) her before she left .......... (24) to expect life to be as exciting as it is here. I explained that most pubs .......... (25) at about eleven and people .......... (26) home, usually a bit drunk. Rosie had told .......... (27) in her first letter that she had .......... (28) friends with someone from Spain. We were pleased to hear this and in fact I had advised her .......... (29) make as many friends as she could because I believed it .......... (30) the best way of not feeling lonely and overcoming culture shock.

Part 3

For Questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (O).

Example: O The police arrested the burglar while he was sleeping.

was

The burglar was arrested by police while he was sleeping.

31 Nowadays, we refer to barber’s shops as hairdresser’s.

known

Nowadays, ...................................... hairdresser’s.

32 They’ll catch all the prisoners again by tonight.

will

All .............................................. by tonight.

33 Nobody can deny that her voice is beautiful.

denied

It ............................................. has a beautiful voice.

34 Somebody has mended her car for 500 pounds.

repaired

She ............................................ for 500 pounds.
35 They’re going to demolish that old school building.
      pulled
      That old school building ........................................ down.
36 People say that Rome is a marvellous city.
      supposed
      Rome ...................................................... a marvellous city.
37 Somebody has to pick up the guest speaker from the railway station.
      up
      The guest speaker ........................................ from the railway station.
38 You are not allowed to bring coffee into the classrooms.
      must
      Coffee .................................................. into the classrooms.
39 My car really needs to be serviced soon.
      get
      I really ................................................... soon.
40 He didn’t renovate the house because he couldn’t afford it.
      have
      He didn’t ............................................... because he couldn’t afford it.

Part 4

For Questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (0) and (00).

TROUBLE AT WORK

0 George came round to see me yesterday because he said he ..........................................
00 wanted to discuss about the problems he was having at work. He ......................................
41 explained that because he had been only recently started to work ......................................
42 in the office everybody was taking advantage of him. He ..................................................
43 complained that they kept up asking him to do things which he ............................................
44 says are not his job to do it. Senior members of staff ..........................................................
45 asked him to make a coffee and one of them even told him ..................................................
46 to buy him a newspaper. The assistant director asked of him .............................................
47 whether he would mind to getting him some cigarettes. ......................................................
48 I asked George how long had this been going on and he said ............................................
49 it had started on his first day in the office. I advised him to go and ...........................................
50 talk to his boss. He replied that he has had already had a ....................................................
51 word with the manager but he refused to get involved and even ...........................................
52 suggested whether it was George’s fault if there was tension at ...........................................
work. I wondered whether we should persuade George to apply for a job with us but I don’t know about whether he would agree to work on a much lower salary than he’s getting at the moment.

Part 5

For Questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (O).

A WRITING REVOLUTION

I’ve been a professional writer for most of my adult life and I’ve been writing fiction for at least twenty years now. My real name is Herbert Smith but I use the ‘Al Macintyre’ because I think a (58) should have a more exciting name than ‘Smith’. I used to have enormous problems writing manuscripts for (59). First, I would start scribbling on a huge wad of ordinary (60) paper. Then I would jot down a few ideas in a (61) before I started to write my first draft on the (62). This went on till a couple of years ago when I bought my first (63) computer. I was only interested in the word (64), actually, and when I saw the first neat (65) of my efforts on the computer, knew it would change the way I wrote novels forever.
Entry test

Underline the correct answer in sentences 1–5.

1. Cats are sometimes as / more intelligent than humans.
2. This is the lovelier / loveliest dress I’ve ever seen.
3. It was the worst / worse film I’ve seen all year.
4. E-mail is a lot / a much more efficient than sending a fax.
5. Don’t you think the last hotel was slightly less / more least modern than this one?

Now look at 9a on pages 152.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 6–10.

6. She was grateful .......... the help he had given her.
   A of    B with    C to    D for
7. The bath is full .......... water.
   A with    B from    C up    D of
8. I will not be responsible .......... what happens.
   A for    B with    C of    D by
9. I didn’t know he was married .......... Barbara.
   A with    B to    C in    D of
10. They’re very proud .......... their daughter’s success.
    A from    B of    C for    D in

Now look at 9b on page 155.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 11–15.

11. There’s nothing tastier than .......... tomato.
    A nice red    B a nice red    C a nice and a red
    D nice and red
12. John bought Maria a pair of .......... gloves.
    A leather black    B black and leather    C black leather
    D leather and black
13 A ........... factory will be opened in the north.
   A new Japanese car  B Japanese new car  C Japanese car new
   D new car Japanese
14 She was wearing a ........... dress
   A red lovely  B red and lovely  C lovely and red
   D lovely red
15 He's bought a ........... car.
   A German sports posh  B posh German sports  C posh sports German
   D German posh sports

Now look at 9c on pages 157.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 16–20.

16 As chairperson, she's the ........... person on the committee.
   A strongest  B biggest  C most powerful  D most strong
17 Are you ........... enough to lift that box?
   A large  B great  C power  D strong
18 The boys are ........... – they need new beds.
   A greater  B higher  C taller  D stronger
19 She's so ........... that she finds it hard to say no.
   A thin  B fragile  C weak  D slender
20 I think it's perfectly ........... to want to be with friends on holiday.
   A strange  B foreign  C odd  D natural

Now look at 9d on pages 158.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 21–25.

21 She's so ...........-minded and often forgets her keys.
   A loose  B absent  C distant  D strong
22 You're ...........-sighted and need glasses, I'm afraid.
   A old  B little  C low  D short
23 He's very ...........going and gets on with everyone.
   A happy  B open  C friendly  D easy
24 It's cheaper to travel by air in ........... .
   A second hand  B style  C economy class  D savings account
25 Winning the Nobel prize has made her ........... known throughout the world.
   A un  B highly  C well  D generally

Now look at 9e on page 164.
We use comparative adjectives to show how the qualities of two people or things can be compared. We use superlative adjectives to show how three or more can be compared.

- Comparatives add -er to the adjective. We can also add than:
  Bill is richer (than John).
- Superlatives add the ...est, and a preposition such as of or in with any noun phrase:
  Jane is the youngest (of the three sisters).
  Bill is the tallest (in the class).
- We can omit the:
  Jane is (the) youngest.
- Usually, we do not state what is compared because it is obvious:
  A lot of people have become richer in the last few years. (= richer than before)
  Their youngest child is Jane. (= the parents have at least three children)

**one-syllable adjectives**
Most one-syllable adjectives form the comparative by adding -er and the superlative by adding -est:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td>(the) cheapest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td>(the) fastest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>younger</td>
<td>(the) youngest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shy</td>
<td>shyer</td>
<td>(the) shiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tall</td>
<td>taller</td>
<td>(the) tallest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- One-syllable adjectives ending -ed cannot take -er, -est. We use more/ most:
  more bored, (the) most bored
  more worried, (the) most worried

**one-syllable and two-syllable adjectives ending in -e**
These adjectives form the comparative and superlative by adding -er and -est:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td>safer</td>
<td>(the) safest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able</td>
<td>abler</td>
<td>(the) ablest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>closer</td>
<td>(the) closest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gentle</td>
<td>gentler</td>
<td>(the) gentlest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite</td>
<td>politer</td>
<td>(the) politest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Two-syllable adjectives ending in -e also form the comparative and superlative using more and most:
  more gentle, (the) most polite

**one-syllable adjectives ending in one vowel and a consonant**
Most one-syllable adjectives ending in a short vowel and a consonant form the comparative and superlative by doubling the consonant and then adding -er and -est:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>(the) biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fat</td>
<td>fatter</td>
<td>(the) fattest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim</td>
<td>dimmer</td>
<td>(the) dimmest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- One-syllable words ending with a long vowel before the consonant do not double the consonant:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>great</td>
<td>greater</td>
<td>greatest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>later</td>
<td>latest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td>cheapest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
two-syllables adjectives

Two-syllable adjectives can form the comparative and superlative with either -er and -est or more and most. (For adjectives ending in -e, see p. 152.) Here are examples of two-syllable adjectives:

- clever
- common
- handsome
- hollow
- narrow
- pleasant
- shallow
- stupid
- tired

Two-syllables adjectives ending in -y

These form the comparative and superlative by changing the -y into -i and adding -er and -est:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angry</td>
<td>angrier</td>
<td>(the) angriest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>busier</td>
<td>(the) busiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happier</td>
<td>(the) happiest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The comparative of dry can take two forms:
  - dry
  - drier  driest (more usual)
  - dry
  - dryer  driest

Other two-syllable adjectives, and adjectives with more than two syllables

Most of these form the comparative and superlative with more and most:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>careless</td>
<td>more careless</td>
<td>(the) most careless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>more expensive</td>
<td>(the) most expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intelligent</td>
<td>more intelligent</td>
<td>(the) most intelligent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

irregular adjectives

Here are examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>(the) best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>(the) worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>(the) least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>(the) most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>(the) most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>farther</td>
<td>(the) furthest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>older</td>
<td>(the) oldest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further / furthest, farther / farthest

We use further / furthest and farther / farthest to talk about distances:
- We'd better not go any further / farther today.
- Australia is the furthest / farthest I've ever been.
- Our new house is further / farther from the school than our old one.

* Further can also mean 'more' or 'extra'. We cannot use farther in these expressions:
  - Stop playing inside before you do any further damage. (= additional damage)
  - For further information, please write to the address above. (= more information)
  - She went on to further education. (= education after secondary school)

* We use elder / eldest for members of our family:
  - I get on well with my elder / eldest sister.

* We do not use than with elder:
  - X He is elder than me.
  - ✓ He is older than me.

Less (than); the least (of)

We can show negative comparisons using less (than) and the least (of):
- The film was less successful (than his previous one).
- It was the least successful (of all his films).

Far; much; a lot

To add emphasis to a comparison, we can use far, much or a lot with the comparative adjective. There is very little difference in meaning, although far is often stronger:
- Bill is much richer than Tom.
- Bill is a lot richer than Tom.
- Bill is far richer than Tom.

The (more) ... the (more) ...

This structure shows that two comparisons change at the same time:
- The older I get, the more forgetful I become.
- The less interesting the subject is, the more bored the students become.

As ... as ...

See page 168.
Practice

1 Fill in each space with a word from the list. You may use the words more than once. The first (0) has been given as an example.

lot youngest eldest livelier expensive more most (much) than the as better less older

Woof or Miaow?

Cats, as we all know, are much (0) quieter than dogs and a (1) smaller, so when my wife and I were debating whether to buy our (2) pet it seemed (3) sensible to choose a kitten (4) a puppy. Our (5) son, who is now sixteen, had a tortoise when he was little but found it the (6) boring pet on earth. At least a kitten would do (7) interesting things (8) a tortoise.

However, the little spaniel we saw in one shop was, my wife said. (9) cutest thing she had ever seen. I didn’t argue because, although cats are not (10) noisy as dogs, they are much (11) entertaining. Dogs, they say, are also (12) Intelligent. Cats, like tortoises, don’t do much: they tend to just sit around all day, looking as enigmatic (13) a sphinx – and just as dull. Dogs are much (14) and we both felt young Edward would learn more from that frisky little spaniel (15) he would from any cat. The (16) Edward grew (17) more difficult it became to keep him occupied and we both felt a dog would be a (18) companion for him from that point of view. Admittedly, cats are (19) demanding and also less (20) to look after but we thought that such a beautiful spaniel was worth it.

Actions speak louder than words.
The best things in life are free.
The higher you climb, the further you fall.
adjectives followed by prepositions

The following are common adjective + preposition combinations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>examples of adjectives</th>
<th>+ preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angry, annoyed, anxious, certain, confident, excited, happy, pleased, right, sorry, upset, nervous</td>
<td>about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amazed, angry, annoyed, bad, excellent, good, hopeless, lucky, skilled, skilful, surprised, useless</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amused, bored, impressed, shocked, surprised</td>
<td>by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous, late, ready, sorry, responsible, suitable</td>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absent, different, safe, tired</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interested, involved</td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keen, reliant</td>
<td>on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afraid, ashamed, aware, capable, certain, confident, critical, envious, fond, full, guilty, incapable, jealous, kind, nice, proud, scared, short, stupid, sure, suspicious, terrified, tired, typical</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accustomed, enganged, generous, inferior, kind, married, polite, possible, rude, superior, similar</td>
<td>towards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some adjectives can combine with more than preposition, for example:

- angry about = angry because of a situation or action
- angry at = angry with someone
- angry towards = angry with someone
- tired from = physically tired as a result of
- tired of = bored or irritated by
- friendly towards = behaving in a friendly way towards
- friendly with = having a friendly relationship with
- sorry for = feeling pity or sympathy for
- sorry about = feeling ashamed or unhappy about
Practice

1. Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate adjective. Add a preposition to each adjective. The first one has been done for you.

Example: The jury found him guilty of murdering the old lady.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>guilty</th>
<th>involved</th>
<th>disappointed</th>
<th>engaged</th>
<th>typical</th>
<th>interested</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amused</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>shocked</td>
<td>absent</td>
<td>proud</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Stop hitting that little boy – you should be ................. yourself!
2. I used to love watching football but I’m just not ................. it anymore.
3. You’ve been ................. so many classes that you’ll have to repeat the year.
4. It’s ................. him to arrive late – he’s always doing it.
5. I’m afraid I’m not ................. his jokes – I find them in bad taste.
6. We ................. this restaurant – the service was so slow.
7. He got ................. many clubs and societies and had no time to study.
8. He used such bad language I was really ................. what I heard.
9. Life in the south countries is very ................. life in the north countries. I prefer it.
10. He’s very ................. maths and physics but hopeless at languages.
11. Greece is ................. the Parthenon and its beautiful islands.
12. The streets were ................. shoppers and you could hardly move.
13. You were ................. the party – you said it would be great fun.
14. She was ................. John for a long time but then she married someone else!
15. Well done for passing the exam! We’re so ................. you.

2. Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 1–5.

1. I’m so sorry ................. your bereavement.
   A about  B by  C at  D with
2. Jackie was furious ................. Gary for being late again.
   A towards  B at  C for  D with
3. Don’t ask me to play – I’m useless ................. computer games.
   A with  B at  C in  D about
4. This new washing machine is completely different ................. the other one.
   A from  B to  C on  D with
5. I’m afraid I’m not very keen ................. boiled cabbage.
   A towards  B to  C on  D for

When a man is tired of London, he is tired of life.
SAMUEL JOHNSON
order of adjectives

Here is the most common order of adjectives in English, though the order of adjectives of size, shape, age and colour can change:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>opinion</th>
<th>size</th>
<th>shape</th>
<th>age</th>
<th>colour</th>
<th>origin</th>
<th>material</th>
<th>purpose or type</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>round</td>
<td>old</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>glass</td>
<td>fruit</td>
<td>bowl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Variation is possible when we focus on a particular feature, for example we can say: a round black shape (= normal order) or: a black round shape (= focus on colour)
• We use a comma when there are two or more adjectives of equal importance before a noun: The room was full of cold, hungry children.
• We link the adjectives with and when they come after verbs like be and feel: X He was tall, dark, handsome. ✓ He was tall, dark and handsome.
The children felt cold and hungry.
The house was large and impressive.

• We can put a comma or and between two adjectives that describe someone’s character: We had a clever and imaginative teacher.
We had a clever, imaginative teacher.
• When we use two or more colour adjectives before a noun, we put and between them: They own a red and white car.
X They were waving a blue, white, red flag.
✓ They were waving a blue, white and red flag.

Practice

1 Some of the following are in the wrong order. Tick those which are correct and rewrite the others in the correct order.

1 a young black man ..................................................
2 a dark tall man .................................................
3 a wooden big spoon ............................................
4 a long wooden spoon ...........................................
5 a birthday big delicious cake ..................................
6 a big fat Italian opera singer .................................
7 a frying large old pan .........................................
8 a pair of black leather riding boots ....................... 
9 a pink silk beautiful blouse ..................................
10 a round large ball .............................................
11 an old big brick factory ......................................
12 an old wooden ugly desk ...................................

Life is nasty, brutish and short. HOBES
### adjectives of size, quantity and power

Here are some adjectives we frequently confuse:

#### strong or powerful?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>collocations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td>of physical strength: great</td>
<td>He was a very strong man who could carry a heavy bag of cement.</td>
<td>strong hands; a strong back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of things: not easily broken or destroyed</td>
<td>For this job you need a strong metal ladder.</td>
<td>a strong branch / pair of scissors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of a person: important, effective or determined</td>
<td>We need a strong leader.</td>
<td>a strong member of the team / candidate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of feelings and opinions: great</td>
<td>She received strong support from her colleagues.</td>
<td>strong emotions / beliefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of level or intensity: great</td>
<td>The street lights are not strong enough.</td>
<td>a strong / friendship / influence / connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of food or smell: having a great amount</td>
<td>This coffee is a bit strong – could I have some milk in it?</td>
<td>a strong curry / taste / flavour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>important and able to control and influence</td>
<td>The President is the most powerful man in America.</td>
<td>a powerful person / politician / organisation / country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>physically strong</td>
<td>Joe was a very powerful, well-built man.</td>
<td>powerful jaws / shoulders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of actions: having a great physical effect</td>
<td>Ali had a powerful punch.</td>
<td>a powerful kick / blow / explosion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of actions: having a great effect on feelings or thoughts</td>
<td>The lawyer outlined a powerful defence.</td>
<td>a powerful speech / argument / film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of a machine / weapon: very effective</td>
<td>This Jaguar has a very powerful engine.</td>
<td>a powerful bomb / computer / weapon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of medicine: having a very strong effect</td>
<td>The drug is more powerful than heroin.</td>
<td>a powerful medicine / remedy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sound or light: very easy to hear or see</td>
<td>This musical instrument produces a powerful sound.</td>
<td>a powerful light / lamp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### big, large or great?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>collocations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>large in size</td>
<td>They’ve got a <strong>big</strong> car.</td>
<td>a big house / grin / crowd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>important</td>
<td>Deciding on a new house is a <strong>big</strong> decision.</td>
<td>a big day / occasion / star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>old or older</td>
<td>You’re a <strong>big</strong> girl now.</td>
<td>a big boy / brother / sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>successful</td>
<td>Rap music was <strong>big</strong> in the 1980s.</td>
<td>big in Hollywood / in business / in show business / in the city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a lot</td>
<td>He’s a <strong>big</strong> gambler.</td>
<td>a big eater / drinker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large</td>
<td>big in size</td>
<td>Los Angeles is the second <strong>largest</strong> city in the United States.</td>
<td>a large shirt / family / amount / number / area / population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tall and wide</td>
<td>He’s a <strong>large</strong> friendly man.</td>
<td>a large person / woman / tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great</td>
<td>very large in amount</td>
<td>I bought it at <strong>great</strong> cost.</td>
<td>a great deal / number / amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>very large in size</td>
<td>A <strong>great</strong> storm blew up.</td>
<td>a great mountain / estate / wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>very important and</td>
<td>Einstein was a <strong>great</strong> scientist.</td>
<td>a great painter / statesman / achievement / woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>influential</td>
<td></td>
<td>a great talent / great fun / danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a lot of</td>
<td>She has <strong>great</strong> courage.</td>
<td>a great mistake / problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>very serious</td>
<td>The result was a <strong>great</strong> disappointment to me.</td>
<td>a great film / time / view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>very pleasant and</td>
<td><strong>Isn’t Max a great</strong> person?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enjoyable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### little, small or short?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>collocations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>of an amount: or</td>
<td>We have only a <strong>little</strong> food left.</td>
<td>little money / attention / effect / reason / benefit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>effect: not much</td>
<td>It’s a <strong>little</strong> way down the road.</td>
<td>a little walk / taxi-ride / distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of a distance: not</td>
<td>Come and meet my <strong>little</strong> sister.</td>
<td>a little brother / niece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>young, younger or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>youngest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>not large in size</td>
<td>Oxford is a <strong>small</strong> city.</td>
<td>a small family / amount / size / area / man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>It’s only a <strong>small</strong> scratch.</td>
<td>a small wound / error / mistake / problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of organisations or</td>
<td><strong>Small</strong> industry has been most affected.</td>
<td>a small business / farmer / corner shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>workers: not important</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or large</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>not long</td>
<td>You look nice with <strong>short</strong> hair.</td>
<td>a short skirt / novel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of a person: not tall</td>
<td>She’s a <strong>short</strong> fat woman.</td>
<td>a short man / child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of time: not much</td>
<td>Our holiday seemed so <strong>short</strong>.</td>
<td>a short time ago / short working hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of a distance: not</td>
<td><strong>It’s a short</strong> distance away.</td>
<td>a short drive / journey / walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### high or tall?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>collocations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>high</td>
<td>measuring a long distance from bottom to top / a long way from the ground / a large amount / above the normal level / having an important or powerful position of people, animals and some things: high and narrow</td>
<td>The highest mountain in Scotland is Ben Nevis. The living room had a high ceiling. Many cities suffer from high levels of pollution. The work must be done to a high standard. What is the highest rank in the army? Your son's getting tall, isn't he?</td>
<td>a high wall / fence / tower / heel a high shelf / the high jump a high salary / rent / price / tax a high temperature / speed / blood pressure; high hopes a high honour; high society / office a tall giraffe / man / building / tower / tree / pillar / bottle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### weak, thin, slim or skinny?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>collocations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td>not physically strong / not working properly / easily influenced / not very good at something / not strong or effective</td>
<td>The illness had left her feeling tired and weak. He has a weak heart. She has such a weak personality. He is weak at physics. The plot of the film was weak. This tea is rather weak, isn't it?</td>
<td>a weak man / woman / bridge weak eyes; a weak pulse a weak character a weak subject / team a weak economy / currency / excuse / argument weak coffee / soup / juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>of things: not thick / of people: not fat / of liquids: not thick / not very difficult to see through</td>
<td>We need a thin nylon rope. Quixote is tall and thin. You must put a thin coat of paint / varnish. The earlier morning landscape was covered with a thin mist.</td>
<td>a thin jacket / slice / thin cloth a thin person / arm / neck a thin soup; thin milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slim</td>
<td>very small / thin in a pleasant way</td>
<td>He has only a slim chance of getting into university. I wish I were as slim as you.</td>
<td>a slim fog; thin smoke / clouds slim hopes / prospects / evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skinny</td>
<td>too thin</td>
<td>He was so skinny I wondered whether he ate anything at all.</td>
<td>a skinny person / arm / leg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### last or latest?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>collocations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>last</td>
<td>most recent in time</td>
<td>I saw her last night.</td>
<td>last week/year/time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at the end</td>
<td>I'm reading the last chapter.</td>
<td>the last train/bus/flight/dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the only one remaining</td>
<td>This is the very last bird of its kind.</td>
<td>the last chance/opportunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latest</td>
<td>most recent</td>
<td>She was dressed in the latest fashion.</td>
<td>the latest gossip/film/news/discovery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### natural or physical?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>collocations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>natural</td>
<td>not artificial or man-made</td>
<td>Is that the natural colour of your hair?</td>
<td>a natural flavour; natural ingredients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>being a quality sb is born</td>
<td>She shows a natural ability in the swimming pool.</td>
<td>a natural skill/tendency/charm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with and not learned</td>
<td></td>
<td>a natural reaction/response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>normal, to be expected</td>
<td>It was natural for her to be concerned about her children's education.</td>
<td>natural history/natural sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of plants and animals</td>
<td></td>
<td>physical strength/energy/exercise; in good physical shape; a physical examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>physical</td>
<td>(usually) concerning the body</td>
<td>I'm amazed at such a variety of species in our natural world.</td>
<td>the physical world; physical conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that can be touched, real</td>
<td>It will need a great physical effort to lift those boxes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We must care for our physical environment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### strange or foreign?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>collocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strange</td>
<td>unusual or surprising in a way</td>
<td>We heard a strange noise.</td>
<td>strange behaviour/events/smells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that is difficult to explain</td>
<td></td>
<td>strange people; a strange country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not known or familiar</td>
<td>There I was, alone in a strange city.</td>
<td>foreign tourists/visitors/students/languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign</td>
<td>not from your country</td>
<td>I thought she sounded foreign.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>connected with other countries</td>
<td>He's the Minister for Foreign Affairs.</td>
<td>foreign policy/trade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice

1 Underline the best word in the following sentences.

1 How high/tall is Athens above sea level?
2 He looks slim/skinny and handsome since he lost weight.
3 Some supermodels are far too slim/skinny. They look as if they haven’t eaten for weeks.
4 The last/latest time I saw Rob was in Manchester.
5 Have you got the Nice Girls’ latest/last album yet?
6 Don’t worry – your feelings of depression are perfectly natural/physical.
7 These trousers are made of strong/powerful material so they won’t tear easily.
8 He took the stick and broke it in two with his powerful/strong hands.
9 Come and look! There’s a large/great view from this window.
10 How great/big is your house in the country?
11 Have you met my small/little sister?
12 The boys are getting taller/higher all the time.
13 I wish my legs were thinner/skinnier.
14 Does your country import a lot of foreign/strange goods?
15 I felt a bit strange/foreign when I took the pills for the first time.

2 Fill each space in these sentences with an appropriate adjective from the list.

high last great large thin latest greatest largest weak natural

1 There were some ................. cliffs beside the sea.
2 The road was covered with a ................. layer of ice.
3 Who was the ................. person to see the man alive?
4 This car is the ................. model and much better than the previous one.
5 The bridge is much too ................. for all those trucks.
6 It’s ................. for a child of his age to want his mother.
7 I’d love to visit the ................. Wall of China.
8 The T-shirt comes in small, medium and ................. .
9 Glasgow is the ................. city in Scotland but I prefer Edinburgh.
10 Rembrandt was one of the ................. painters who ever lived.
3 Underline the word in each set which does NOT collocate with the word in capitals.

1 BIG grin crowd power occasion sister filmstar business
2 STRONG faith tree friendship tool bomb tea muscles
3 GREAT leader discovery part area danger deal university
4 TALL child temperature tree giraffe skyscraper bottle house
5 HIGH speed hopes wall rent man heels flyer
6 LARGE amount collection occasion area tree family bottom
7 THIN layer chance soup paper neck person figure
8 SLIM girl hope waist cloth man chance evidence
9 LAST night time gossip bus chance animal dance
10 LATEST fashion film discovery year trend chapter news
11 SHORT man money dress story journey hair holiday
12 PHYSICAL strength world exercise energy plants effort conditions
13 SMALL distance town business mistake food problem cut
14 WEAK bridge clothes pulse heart argument character excuse

4 Complete the crossword. The words are from 9d.

Across
6 Most onions have a .......... flavour.
7 Take plenty of .......... exercise and eat more fruit.
8 The 'most recent' CD is the .......... release.
11 We can say buildings, people and trees are .......... .
13 We met on holiday .......... year.
15 For Poles, English is a .......... language.
16 The .......... area of the world is covered with sea water.
18 They have only a .......... chance of winning.
19 Is fair hair your .......... colour?
20 Is the dollar now .......... than the euro?

Down
1 Ferrari produces cars with very .......... engines.
2 I have very .......... reason to doubt that you are honest.
3 Doris Lessing has written excellent .......... stories.
4 Who is a .......... pop star than Madonna?
5 It can be lonely on your own in a .......... town.
9 She is much too .......... and should stop dieting.
10 He fell over but had only a .......... bruise on his arm.
12 Name the .......... mountain in the world.
14 Days without proper food left them so .......... .
17 Shakespeare wrote such .......... plays.

A chain is no stronger than its weakest link.
compound adjectives

form
A compound adjective has two parts. We usually write it with a hyphen:
- red-haired, green-eyed
The second part of the compound adjective is often:
- a present participle:
  - tight-fitting, good-looking
- a past participle:
  - old-fashioned, well-built, badly maintained
- a preposition:
  - broken-down, well-off
- another adjective:
  - brand-new, duty-free

× She was an attractive red-headed woman.
✓ She was an attractive redhead.
✓ She was an attractive red-haired woman.
× He is very well-looking.
✓ He is very good-looking.

✓ The furniture was old-fashioned.
✓ The furniture was old-fashioned.
× I saw a one-eyed sailor on the boat.
✓ I saw a one-eyed sailor on the boat.
× There was a breaking-down car on the motorway.
✓ There was a broken-down car on the motorway.

use
We can use compound adjectives to describe
- physical appearance:
  - broad-shouldered, dark-haired, good-looking
- personality:
  - good-tempered, open-minded
- places:
  - built-up, run-down, wide-open
- everyday objects:
  - worn-out, hand-made, man-made

For compound nouns, see 7e.
3 Fill in each space with an appropriate compound adjective formed from the words in Practice 1 opposite.

1. Although my grandmother is eighty, she's not at all ..................... . She even thinks our modern habits are better than those in her youth.
2. Change those awful clothes you're wearing. You must be ..................... for your interview.
3. You may think he's ugly but I find him quite ..................... .
4. When he doesn't like something he starts shouting; he's very ..................... .
5. Our children are very ..................... at school. The teacher never has to tell them off.
6. He never remembers anything – he's very ..................... .
7. She's such a ..................... television personality that almost everybody recognises her in the street.
8. I was forced to write with my right hand even though I was ..................... .
9. He's very ..................... – perhaps it comes from doing all that weightlifting in the gym.
10. He's not blond at all. In fact, I would say he's almost ..................... .

4 Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate compound adjective formed from a word in the list.

- free
- distance
- up
- built
- made
- going
- up
- off
- conditioned
- class
- badly
- sighted
- headed

Example: I bought this CD duty-free as I was coming back from London.

1. I made a long-................. call to England and it cost me a fortune.
2. They seem to be very well-................. – at least they have a great big house and two expensive cars.
3. I'm fed-................. with this exercise – can't we do something else?
4. On the train I travel second-................. because it's cheaper.
5. You can see this vase is hand-................. and wasn't produced in a factory.
6. He's a really relaxed guy – so easy-................. .
7. I live in a built-................. area of the city which is very noisy and full of traffic.
8. The office is air-................. so it's very cool, even in the summer.
9. He's so proud – I've rarely met anyone so big-................. . He has a really high opinion of himself.
10. I want to get my eyes tested – I've become really short-................. lately.
11. A ................. maintained car won't have a reliable engine.
12. There isn't much grass in the .................-up areas of the city.

There are three golden rules if you want to be a first-class public speaker: stand up, speak up, shut up.
Entry test

Underline the correct answer in 1–5.

1 She’s not as intelligent as / than her sister.
2 The film was not such / so good as I had expected.
3 The twins don’t wear the same / like clothes as each other.
4 She works as / like an accountant in a local bank.
5 She is getting richer and richer / more rich every year.

Now look at 10a on page 168.

Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.

6 We hadn’t expected the trip to be .......... exhausting.
   A such     B so     C such a     D like this
7 .......... behaviour will get you into trouble with the director.
   A Such     B Such a     C So     D Like
8 There were .......... people at the party there was no room to move.
   A so much     B that much     C so many     D such many
9 The bill was much .......... expensive for me to pay on my own.
   A very     B too     C high     D quite
10 I don’t have .......... to speak now.
    A enough of time     B plenty time     C enough time     D a time

Now look at 10b on page 170.
Underline the correct word or phrase A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.

11 She’s .......... sensitive to other people’s problems.
   A a quite       B quite a       C quite       D the quite
12 It was .......... good result but you could’ve done better.
   A rather       B a bit         C a little     D a fairly
13 We had .......... nice meal last night.
   A very         B too           C rather a     D quite
14 She’s .......... too thin for her part in the play.
   A lot          B a bit         C little too   D little
15 She .......... rather moody at the moment.
   A behaves      B likes         C grows       D seems

Now look at 10c on page 173.

Underline the correct adjective A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.

16 I felt so .......... when my parents turned up at John’s party!
   A shy of       B shameful      C shamed      D embarrassed
17 I felt so .......... as I sat outside the dentist’s, thinking it would be really painful.
   A bad-tempered B embarrassed C nervous     D frightening
18 I would never cheat – I would be .......... of being caught.
   A worried      B anxious       C afraid      D nervous
19 We watched a very .......... programme on television last night which made us laugh a lot.
   A amusing      B enjoying      C tiring      D sympathetic
20 Don’t be so .......... – you can call me Pete.
   A formal       B typical       C tiresome    D afraid

Now look at 10d on page 176.

For questions 21–25, use the word given in capitals at the end of the line to form a word that fits in the space.

21 Your handwriting is completely illegible – you shouldn’t be so .......... when you write.
   C ARE
22 Do you have any books .......... for young children?
   SUIT
23 Although she was told the operation would be .........., she still felt very nervous about it.
   PAIN
24 I didn’t mean to upset you – perhaps you’re just a little too ...........
   SENSE
25 She ought to write things down if she’s so ...........
   FORGET

Now look at 10e on page 179.

TOTAL SCORE
Grammar
10a comparisons

as ... as ...
We use as ... as ... to say two things are similar or equal in some way. The pattern is:

- as + adjective + as, or as + adverb + as.
- We can omit the second part, as ..., if the comparison is clear:

  Mary is as tall as Jane but she's not as tall as Andrew.
  She's not as tall (as him / as he is).
  John didn't do as well as Helen in the exam.
  John didn't do as well (as her* / as she did).
  * This is considered informal.
- We use as ... as, but not as ... so, in comparisons:

   ✗ Tea isn't as strong so coffee.
   ✓ Tea isn't as strong as coffee.

as + many / much / little / few + as

We use as + many/ much/ little/ few + as in comparisons without a. We cannot use more/ less/ several etc:

Bill doesn't have as much money as Anne.
If she had as little money as he did, she would think differently.
Bill doesn't eat as many meals as she does.
If she had as few meals as Bill, she would be thinner.

the same (as)

We always use the in comparisons with same:

Their car is the same (as ours).
Peter is the same age (as George).
- We can emphasise the same using exactly:

  Their car is exactly the same (as yours).
  Peter is exactly the same age (as George).

so ... as ...

In negative statements we can use so ... as instead of as ... as:

Computers are not quite as/ so expensive as they were.
- In positive sentences and in questions we cannot use so ... as:

  ✗ She worked so hard as she could to finish early.
  ✓ She worked as hard as she could to finish early.
  ✗ Could you try and get here so quickly as you can, please?
  ✓ Could you try and get here as quickly as you can, please?

like and as

We use like and as to say things are similar. We use like to make a comparison, and as to describe a position or function:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>like + noun</td>
<td>He runs like the wind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like + pronoun</td>
<td>My brother is just like me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like + noun</td>
<td>Like the Greeks, Italians use a lot of olive oil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as + noun (phrase)</td>
<td>She works as a doctor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as + noun (phrase)</td>
<td>As your teacher, I advise you to work harder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as + noun (phrase)</td>
<td>Don't use your shirt as a towel!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- As + verb phrase means 'as thoroughly as':
No one knows these islands as I do.
repeating comparatives

We can repeat the comparative adjective to say that something is changing (increasing or decreasing) all the time, usually with the Present Continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>comparative adj + and + comparative adj</td>
<td>changing all the time</td>
<td><em>She was getting more and more irritated.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the + comparative adj + verb + the + comparative adj + verb</td>
<td>two things change at the same time</td>
<td><em>The older I get, the wiser I become. The less intelligent they are, the more difficult they will find the test. (See page 153.)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the + comparative adj + the + comparative adj</td>
<td>used in common phrases</td>
<td><em>the bigger the better the sooner the better</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice

1. Look at the information in the table and complete the sentences about Bob and Tony using the prompts given.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The twins:</th>
<th>Bob</th>
<th>Tony</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date of birth</td>
<td>22 August</td>
<td>22 August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time of birth</td>
<td>11.10 am</td>
<td>11.20 am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weight at birth</td>
<td>3 kilos</td>
<td>3.5 kilos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair</td>
<td>fair</td>
<td>fair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resembles</td>
<td>mum</td>
<td>dad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>height now</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>1.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school</td>
<td>Central College</td>
<td>Central College</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geography</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maths</td>
<td>C+</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English history</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupation</td>
<td>unemployed</td>
<td>businessman (coal miner)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Weight: At birth, Bob was not .................... Tony.
5. Hair: Bob has the same .................... Tony.
7. Geography: Tony was not as good at .................... Bob.
8. Maths: Bob was not as .................... Bob.
9. English: Bob was just as bad .................... Tony was.
10. History: Bob was .................... Tony was.
11. Height: Bob is not .................... Tony is.
12. Money: Bob doesn’t have as much .................... has.
13. Appearance: Bob looks like .................... but Tony looks ....................
14. Occupation: Tony works ....................
15. Success: Bob has not been .................... Tony has.
so and such

We use *so* and *such* to say something is similar to something we have already mentioned. We use these words in the following patterns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>so</em> + adjective</td>
<td>very of that kind causing</td>
<td>It’s so hot in here – can’t we open a window?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>so</em> + adj + (that)</td>
<td>of that kind causing ...</td>
<td>My car is so old (that) I can’t get any spare parts for it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>so</em> + adverb</td>
<td>to that extent</td>
<td>I wish you wouldn’t talk so much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>so</em> + adverb + (that)</td>
<td>of that kind causing ...</td>
<td>She drives so fast (that) nobody can keep up with her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>so</em> + many/much/little/few</td>
<td>emphasis on quantity</td>
<td>How did you make so much money?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>so</em> + many/much/little/few + noun (phrase) + (that)</td>
<td>emphasis on quantity causing ...</td>
<td>They were so many people waiting in the queue that we went home again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>such</em> + noun (phrase)</td>
<td>of that kind</td>
<td>X We were not prepared for so weather.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>such</em> + adj + countable/ uncountable noun</td>
<td>very</td>
<td>✓ We were not prepared for such weather. She hadn’t expected such a welcome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>such</em> + adj + plural noun</td>
<td>of that kind</td>
<td>She’s got such lovely hair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>such</em> (a/an) + adj + noun + (that)</td>
<td>of that kind causing ...</td>
<td>We ate such delicious food.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

too, very, enough

*Too* means ‘more than is reasonable or bearable’.  
*Very* means ‘a lot’. Compare:  
*I was too tired. (= so I didn’t do any work)*  
*I was very tired! (= but I could still do some work)*  
*✓ I was too happy when I received your letter.*  
*✓ I was very happy when I received your letter.*  

- We do not use *very* with adjectives that already have a strong meaning:  
  *✓ Meno Park in Tokyo is very huge.*  
  *✓ Meno Park in Tokyo is huge.*  
  *✓ Meno Park in Tokyo is absolutely huge.*

See also 10c.
We use *enough* and *too* in the following patterns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>enough</em> + noun</td>
<td>Do we have <em>enough</em> cheese for a pizza?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>enough</em> + noun + <em>to</em>-infinite</td>
<td>Do you have <em>enough</em> money to buy the book?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>not</em> + adj + <em>enough</em> + <em>to</em>-infinite</td>
<td>I'm <em>not</em> clever <em>enough</em> to study medicine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>not</em> + adverb + <em>enough</em></td>
<td>You aren't driving quickly <em>enough</em> — we'll be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>too</em> + adverb/adverb</td>
<td>I can't drink this — it's <em>too</em> hot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>too</em> + adj + <em>to</em>-infinite</td>
<td>I can't keep up with you — you walk <em>too</em> quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>too</em> + adj + <em>for</em> + sb + <em>to</em>-infinite</td>
<td>The coffee was <em>too</em> hot to drink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>too</em> + adverb + <em>for</em> + sb + <em>to</em>-infinite</td>
<td>The coffee was <em>too</em> hot <em>for</em> me to drink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He walked <em>too</em> quickly <em>for</em> the children to keep up with him.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Practice**

1. Match the two halves to make correct sentences.

   Example: The pianist played so badly that ....

   (The pianist played so badly that ........) 
   1. She was so clever that .......... a. I don’t know how you can stand him.
   2. The food was so bad (that) ........ b. I don’t have to do much to keep it clean.
   3. She’s got so many clothes ........ c. nobody could eat it.
   4. It’s such a tiny kitchen that ........ d. his teeth will rot.
   5. He eats so much sugar that ........ e. all the universities wanted her.
   6. He talks so much rubbish ........ f. she never wears the same thing twice.
   7. (g. the audience walked out.)

2. Underline the correct phrase in the following sentences.

   1. We had to pay a *high such price/ such a high price* for coffee in London.
   2. Passing my driving test was *such a/a so good feeling!*
   3. He had *such/ such a* bad breath no woman would go near him.
   4. We had a *such/ such an* awful day that we wouldn’t do it again.
   5. She loved him *such/ so* deeply she couldn’t bear it when he was away.
   6. There were *so few/ such a few* people there, they nearly cancelled the performance.
   7. The film was *such a/ so* scary I nearly left the cinema.
   8. I had *so many/ so much* things to do I didn’t know where to start.
   9. It was a *so/ such a* lovely day we took a picnic to the park.
   10. There was *so much/ such* noise I could hardly hear myself think.
Complete the following sentences with too, enough, very, so or such.

1. It's much .................. hot in here – turn the heating down.
2. If you've had .................. food, I'll take the plates away.
3. She doesn't speak Spanish well .................. to order a meal on her own.
4. The food was much .................. salty to eat.
5. That's a .................. beautiful piece of music. What is it?
6. I don't understand native speakers because they speak .................. quickly.
7. You're not writing quickly .................. – the test is nearly over.
8. I don't have .................. room in the house to put you up.
9. The film was .................. good. I wouldn't mind seeing it again.
10. We're .................. different characters I don't know how we'll manage to get on.

Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence using the word given. Do not change the word given. Use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. We were caught by surprise by the cold weather.
   such
   We .................. weather.
2. I didn't have the strength to carry the case on my own.
   heavy
   The case was .................. carry on my own.
3. The shelf was too high for me to reach.
   tall
   I .................. reach the shelf.
4. I cried because the film was very sad.
   so
   The film was .................. cry.
5. We can't hear her because her voice is very soft.
   softly
   She .................. can't hear her.
6. John's marks were too low for the university.
   high
   John's marks .................. for the university.
7. If there had been fewer people in the queue we would have waited.
   so
   There .................. in the queue that we decided not to wait.
8. He got drunk because the wine in the restaurant was very strong.
   strong
   The wine .................. he got drunk.
9. If this soup was not so hot I could drink it now.
   for
   This soup is too .................. drink now.
10. The ticket was too expensive for us.
    enough
    We didn't .................. a ticket.

An acquaintance is someone you know well enough to borrow from but not well enough to lend to.
quite, rather, etc; linking verbs

a bit / a little, fairly, quite, rather, very

These have meanings which range from 'slightly' (marked (-) below) to very strong (marked +++):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>She's a bit / a little tall</th>
<th>She's fairly tall</th>
<th>She's quite tall</th>
<th>She's rather tall</th>
<th>She's very tall</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(-)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

They can be followed by a number of structures:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a bit + adj</td>
<td>slightly</td>
<td>She's a bit short for the team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a little + adj</td>
<td>slightly</td>
<td>She's a little short for the team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fairly + adj / -ing</td>
<td>= quite</td>
<td>She's fairly tall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a fairly + adj + noun</td>
<td>= quite</td>
<td>It's a fairly good road.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite + adj / -ing</td>
<td>not very but more than slightly</td>
<td>She's quite clever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite a + adj + noun</td>
<td>to some extent</td>
<td>She's quite a clever person.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite a + noun</td>
<td>a big (used for emphasis)</td>
<td>It was a quite rude answer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite + verb</td>
<td>to some extent</td>
<td>It was quite a surprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather + adj / adv</td>
<td>to some extent by not as much as very</td>
<td>I quite like coffee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather a (+ adj) + noun (phrase)</td>
<td>a fairly big</td>
<td>He did rather badly in the test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather + verb</td>
<td>quite a lot (= formal)</td>
<td>It came as rather a (big) surprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very + adj / adv</td>
<td>a lot (used for emphasis) (See 10b.)</td>
<td>I rather like her.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Quite is much less strong than very. Compare: She's very clever. She's quite clever.
- Quite is stronger than a little: She's a little greedy. She's quite greedy.
- Quite + adjective/adverb can also mean 'completely':
  No, thanks, I won't have any more to eat. I'm quite full. (= completely full)
  Yes, I'm quite certain he is the same man. (= absolutely certain)
- Here are some common combinations with quite meaning 'completely':
  quite amazing  quite clear  quite right
  quite safe  quite true  quite wrong
- We can use rather/a bit/a little before comparative forms:
  The new house is rather/a bit/a little smaller than the old one.
- We use quite as... (as...) or not quite as/so... (as...) to make comparisons:
  Tea is not quite as enjoyable as coffee.
  Maria isn't quite as/so tall.
- We use very with adjectives ending in ful, but not less (see 10e).
linking verbs

A linking verb joins a subject to an adjective or a noun phrase. The following are linking verbs:

appear feel keep sound
be get look stay
become go seem taste
come grow smell turn

• We can use many adjectives after linking verbs:
  They didn’t want to look suspicious.
  I feel sick.
  He seems happy.
  This tastes awful.

• We can use to be + adjective after some linking verbs:
  The house seems to be empty.
  The children appeared to be hungry.

• We can also use a past participle after some of them:
  She looks depressed.
  Their row seemed forgotten.

Here is a summary of the patterns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linking verb + adj</td>
<td>I feel sick.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linking verb + to be + adj</td>
<td>The fridge seems to be empty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linking verb + past participle</td>
<td>I feel depressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(See also 13c.)

Practice

1. Rewrite the following sentences correctly.

1. It was fairly good day so we went for a walk.

2. Wembley Stadium is very enormous.

3. He’s rather a noisy in class.

4. She’s always been a quite hard-working.

5. I really like the theatre but I prefer films.

6. John is quite more talkative than his brother.

7. Yes, I fairly agree with everything you say.

8. It came as quite shock to get home and find the house burgled.

9. I’m afraid I found the film bit boring.

10. The test seems be quite easy.

2. Fill in each space in these sentences, using an appropriate adjective from the list.

long harder sour experienced young

certain healthy worried interesting safe
disappointed unpleasant strong careless

time pleased

1. The film was quite .................. but a bit too ..................

2. We had quite a .................. time at the party.

3. She’s an .................. driver but a bit .................. .

4. I’m quite .................. you will pass the test if you work a little .............. .

5. Don’t look so .................. – I promise you I’m quite a .................. driver.

6. It came as rather an .................. surprise to get a bill for £100.

7. I was very .................. indeed to get such a nice present but I felt .................. that you couldn’t come to the party.

8. This milk has gone .................. – it smells ..................

9. If you water the plants, they will grow .................. and .................. in a month or so.

10. Though his hair has turned .................. he seems to be quite .................. in other ways.
3 Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces 1–5.

1 She can be .................. bad-tempered first thing in the morning.
   A quite B a quite C quite a D quite the
2 In fact she's .................. unpleasant much of the time.
   A a rather B rather a C rather D rather to
3 That was .................. attempt but you still failed.
   A fairly good B fairly C fairly a good D a fairly good
4 Forgive her – she can be .................. shy with strangers.
   A little bit B a little C little a D a bit little
5 The film was .................. and my grandson screamed at one point.
   A quite frightened B quite a fright C quite frighten D quite frightening

4 Choose a correct form of one of the verbs in brackets to complete the sentences.

1 Jana .................. so pleased to have won the competition. (look, see)
2 Finding a cure for breast cancer still ................. impossible. (stay, seem)
3 Avoiding illness is one thing, ................. healthy is another. (sound, stay)
4 I ................. quite exhausted after the race. (keep, feel)
5 He ................. to be completely innocent of all charges. (look, appear)

5 Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space.

A REPORT

Athens is becoming more and ................. (1) attractive to tourists. Although the city may seem to ................. (2) big and noisy, tourists can still find ................. (3) a lot of quiet places with a romantic atmosphere to enjoy a tasty Greek meal and listen ................. (4) to traditional music. We found that the prices in the restaurants were ................. (5) reasonable, not ................. (6) expensive for the average tourist. The standards of hygiene appeared ................. (7) to be fairly high and they seem to be getting ................. (8) rather than worse. The service was ................. (9) bit slow at times but the waiters were usually ................. (10) friendly. Indeed, sometimes they were a ................. (11) too friendly compared with what we were used to in other countries! As for transport, the number of taxis in Athens is ................. (12) amazing and apart from the rush hour it is quite ................. (13) to get hold of one when you need it. We found the cost of getting around by taxi ................. (14) cheaper than in most European capitals but taxi-drivers can ................. (15) a bit rude at times.
Vocabulary

10d adjectives which are similar

ashamed, shameful, shy or embarrassed?

- Ashamed means ‘guilty and disgusted with yourself because of something bad that you have done’:
  People who steal from the poor should be ashamed of themselves.
- Shameful describes behaviour which people think should make you feel ashamed:
  The cruel way some people treat their pets is shameful.
- Shy means ‘anxious about talking to people, especially people you don’t know’:
  Jimmy is very shy with adults but he’s fine with other children.
- Embarrassed means ‘feeling socially uncomfortable and nervous’:
  You can imagine how embarrassed I felt when I couldn’t pay the bill.

anxious, nervous, worried or bad-tempered?

- Anxious means ‘very worried because you fear something bad may happen or may have happened’:
  Their daughter hadn’t come home from school and they were anxious about her safety.
- Nervous means ‘worried because you are in, or about to enter, a stressful situation’:
  I was so nervous about the exam that I couldn’t sleep.
- Worried means ‘unhappy because you have, or expect to have, a problem’:
  She was worried that the hotel bill was going to be too high.
- Bad-tempered means ‘easily annoyed and angry’:
  The farmer was a bad-tempered old man who wouldn’t let anyone cross his land.

afraid, scared or frightened?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>afraid + to-infinitive</td>
<td>unwilling to do something because you are anxious about what may happen</td>
<td>She was afraid to eat it in case it was poisonous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afraid of + noun / -ing</td>
<td>anxious about something which might happen</td>
<td>Most criminals are afraid of being caught.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scared of + noun</td>
<td>very nervous or afraid of something or somebody</td>
<td>I’ve always been scared of dogs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scared of + -ing</td>
<td>very nervous or afraid of doing something</td>
<td>He’s scared of going home alone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scared + to-infinitive</td>
<td>very anxious or afraid to do something</td>
<td>She lay on the floor trembling, too scared to move.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightened (of) + noun</td>
<td>nervous or afraid (of something)</td>
<td>He had a frightened look on his face.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightened of + -ing</td>
<td>nervous or afraid of doing something</td>
<td>I was frightened of being left by myself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightened + to-infinitive</td>
<td>very anxious or afraid to do something</td>
<td>She was too frightened to look out of the plane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
amusing or enjoyable?
- Amusing means 'causing you to smile or laugh':
  The speaker was embarrassed when the microphone stopped working but the audience found it amusing.
- Enjoyable means 'pleasant and causing you to feel happy':
  It was one of the most enjoyable holidays we've ever had.

sympathetic or likeable?
- Sympathetic means 'showing you understand the problems of others':
  He expected people to be sympathetic because his mother had died.
- Likeable means 'easy to like':
  He's a selfish, greedy little man and not at all likeable.

tiring or tiresome?
- Tiring means 'causing tiredness':
  Staring at a computer screen all day can be very tiring, can't it Helen?
- Tiresome means 'annoying or irritating':
  I find these so-called jokes extremely tiresome.

typical, usual or ordinary?
- Typical means 'having the main characteristics of a group or thing; behaving in the usual way':
  It was a typical English summer - rain every second day!
  It was typical of him to get angry.
- Usual means 'the same as what happens most of the time':
  Is it usual for lectures to start so early? I'll meet you at the usual time.
- Ordinary means 'without any special qualities or features':
  It was just an ordinary house in an ordinary street.

Practice

Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate form of a word in the list. Some words do not need to change.

enjoy shy embarrass tire worry bad temper ordinary shame (x 2) amuse
like afraid

1. You may laugh, but I don't find anything ............... about finding a snake in your tent in the middle of the night.
2. Gardening may be hard work but it can also be ............... . I think it's a wonderful way to spend one's time.
3. I needed a lift home but I was too ............... to ask the other guests because they were almost strangers.
4. I was ............... of having lied to my mother. I shouldn't have done it.
5. When I speak English I sometimes feel a bit ............... , especially when I make mistakes.
6. The violent way he treated his children in public was ............... .
7. 'I am not ............... about money,' he said. 'I've got plenty.'
8. She gets very ............... when the house is a mess, and starts shouting at the kids.
9. He says that he is ............... of losing his job if the company decides to get rid of staff.
10. If Philip weren't so arrogant he'd be quite ............... ; as it is, few people like him.
11. We've all had a very ............... day – let's go to bed.
12. Although he's a famous millionaire, he behaves like an ............... man.
Underline the correct phrase in the following sentences.

1. I have always been afraid of / afraid to spiders.
2. If you were threatened, would you be too afraid / too afraid to scream?
3. Ben hates hospitals – he's so afraid / afraid of and always faints.
4. I can't watch the match – I'm afraid of losing / afraid to lose.
5. It was pitch dark and we were too scared to / scared of move.
6. Leave the light on, the baby's scared of / scared to the dark.
7. I won't go near the fruit trees because I'm frightened by / frightened of bees.
8. The teacher was always late but we were too frightened to / frightened of complain.
9. I'll apply even though I'm frightened to be / frightened of being rejected.
10. I refused to jump off the edge because I was so frightened / frightened to.

Fill in each space with an appropriate word from the list.

nervous embarrassed enjoyable bad-tempered usual ordinary anxious formal amusing typical shy afraid tiresome ashamed sympathetic

**Culture shock**

Penny, a friend of mine, has just got back from a trip to Japan. She had a very ... (1) time but there were occasions, she says, when the rather ... (2) behaviour of her hosts led to moments of cultural confusion, and at times she even felt ... (3) by some of the mistakes she made. For example, it is ... (4) for Europeans to call each other by their first names, but this is not the ... (5) way of addressing people in Japan. Now, because Penny was ... (6) to show everyone how friendly she was, she called everyone by their first name. Most people were ... (7) because she was obviously a foreigner but some became quite ... (8) and showed little sympathy.

At first, Penny found bowing to people quite ... (9) – she is, after all, an actress – but after a while it became a bit ... (10) having to bow to everyone you met.

Penny is not at all ... (11) – she loves meeting new people – but after the first few misunderstandings she was ... (12) to open her mouth in case she offended someone. I myself am quite an experienced traveller, but I would feel ... (13) about putting my foot in it in Japan because there even ... (14) people observe the most elaborate rules of social behaviour – silence for example is nothing to be ... (15) of in Japanese culture, but in the West we get very worried if there are even short periods of silence at social gatherings.

It's not that I'm afraid of death – I just don't want to be there when it happens.

Woody Allen
10e  suffixes (4)

Remember that we use most suffixes to change the part of speech of a word (see 1e, 3e, 4e, 12e, 13e):
season (noun) + al = seasonal (adjective)
act (noun) + ive = active (adjective)
danger (noun) + ous = dangerous (adjective)
Here, we examine other suffixes that form adjectives.

Here are common pairs of words which use ful and less:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>paying attention</td>
<td>She's very careful about what she eats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careless</td>
<td>not paying enough attention</td>
<td>You shouldn't be so careless when you drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harmful</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>All this traffic pollution is harmful to our health.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harmless</td>
<td>not dangerous</td>
<td>Don't be afraid – the dog is harmless, it won't bite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hopeful</td>
<td>full of hope</td>
<td>The situation is difficult but I'm still hopeful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hopeless</td>
<td>without hope</td>
<td>The situation is pretty hopeless – there's nothing we can do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painful</td>
<td>full of pain</td>
<td>It will be a painful operation so they'll give her an anaesthetic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painless</td>
<td>without pain</td>
<td>It will be a painless operation – she has nothing to worry about.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thoughtful</td>
<td>being kind to others</td>
<td>It was very thoughtful of you to make coffee for everybody else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thoughtless</td>
<td>unkind</td>
<td>It was thoughtless of you to mention his illness. You know he doesn't like to think about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>useful</td>
<td>helping you to do or get something</td>
<td>The tourist office gave us some useful advice about where to stay in Budapest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>useless</td>
<td>not of any use</td>
<td>The guide to the city was useless because it was years out of date.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can use very with adjectives ending in ful, but not less. We use completely, utterly, etc: The injection was very painful. Did you think your dog was completely harmless?

- In the following, only one form, either ful or less, exists: dreadful forgetful grateful skilful stressful successful cloudless homeless ruthless

These instructions are useless!
able, ible

We add *able* or *ible* to a verb to form an adjective which shows that something can be done. Here are some examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning/use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drink + able</td>
<td>safe to drink</td>
<td>Is the water drinkable here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash + able</td>
<td>able to be washed</td>
<td>This shirt is machine washable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rely + able</td>
<td>able to be relied on</td>
<td>She's a very reliable colleague.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suit + able</td>
<td>appropriate</td>
<td>This book is not suitable for children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profit + able</td>
<td>making a profit</td>
<td>The business is not very profitable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sense + ible</td>
<td>reasonable</td>
<td>I think that's a very sensible suggestion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Some adjectives ending in *able / ible* have a first part which does not exist by itself, especially those with *un*, for example: *unworkable / palpable / edible*

ive

We can also form adjectives by adding *ive* to verbs or nouns (see page 240):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning/use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>act + ive</td>
<td>doing things</td>
<td>It was an active holiday in the mountains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expense + ive</td>
<td>costing a lot of money</td>
<td>Who bought you that expensive watch?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Again, some of these adjectives have a first part which does not exist by itself, for example *pensive*.
• Some of these adjectives need *itive*, for example *sensitive* from *sense*.
• We often add the prefix *in* to form the negative of these adjectives: *inactive / inexpensive / insensitive*

ous

We add *ous* to some nouns to form adjectives (see 13e):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fame + ous</td>
<td>well known</td>
<td>She's a famous singer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courage + ous</td>
<td>full of courage</td>
<td>That was a courageous decision.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Famous means 'very well-known': *She became famous after winning a gold medal in the Olympics.*
• Infamous means 'having a bad reputation': *This is a photograph of the infamous gangster, Al Capone.*
• Again, sometimes the first part cannot exist by itself, for example *conscientious*.

other suffixes

Other suffixes we use to form adjectives include (see also 13e):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun + ic</th>
<th>noun + y</th>
<th>noun + ish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apologetic</td>
<td>guilty</td>
<td>babyish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chaotic</td>
<td>healthy</td>
<td>childish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economic</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>foolish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enthusiastic</td>
<td>salty</td>
<td>selfish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heroic</td>
<td>scary</td>
<td>sheepish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>historic</td>
<td>sloppy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimistic</td>
<td>speedy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pessimistic</td>
<td>thirsty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>realistic</td>
<td>wealthy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scientific</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sympathetic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tragic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun + al</th>
<th>noun + istic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>national</td>
<td>elitist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>racial</td>
<td>sexist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ant | ent

| arrogant | affluent |
| distant  | dependent |
| hesitant | efficient |
| ignorant | violent   |
| important|          |
Practice

1. Complete the second sentence, using an appropriate form of the underlined words.
   1. It was an evening I will **always remember**. It was a .................... evening.
   2. We had a marvellous time. I will **never forget** it. It was ....................
   3. She's **always forgetting** things. She's very ....................
   4. That water is **not good enough to drink**. It is ....................
   5. I find her novels **easy to read**. Her novels are ....................
   6. His ideas are practical and they **make sense**. His ideas are ....................
   7. This injection will **cause you a little pain**. This injection will be a little ....................
   8. We **haven't given up hope** of finding survivors. We are still .................... that survivors will be found.
   9. I **can understand** her reaction. Her reaction was ....................
   10. The villagers greeted us with **hostility**. The villagers gave us a .................... reception.
   11. He **does not easily tolerate** other people's opinions. He is ....................
   12. She **showed such courage**, didn't she? She was ...................., wasn't she?

2. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

   **Earthquake rocks Afghanistan**
   Half a million people have been left .................... (1) after a .................... (2) earthquake destroyed thousands of homes and caused .................... (3) damage to hundreds of others in northern Afghanistan yesterday. It was the most .................... (4) earthquake in living memory, leaving .................... (5) damage in its wake.

   **Reports slams TV for young**
   A new report describes the .................... (6) effects of TV on children's educational and .................... (7) development. After .................... (8) periods of watching TV, children tend to become absent-minded and .................... (9) The report also says many TV programmes are .................... (10) for children and it is the responsibility of parents to ...

3. Add a word which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.

   **OUR NEIGHBOURS**
   Although Britain is becoming **more** .................... (0) and more multicultural, it is often said that .................... (1) British are not as friendly towards foreigners ............... (2) other nations. However, in our neighbourhood, we all get on very well. Our neighbours, Mr and Mrs Patel, work .................... (3) doctors in a local hospital. Mr Patel is as nice a man .................... (4) you could ever hope to meet – he looks a bit ............... (5) Omar Sharif – and his English is almost .................... (6) good as mine – on the phone he sounds just ............... (7) Prince Charles. His wife, Shiva, is about the same age ............... (8) my mum and they have become good friends – they behave ............... (9) if they've known each other for years.

   *He's such a careful driver that he always looks both ways before hitting something.*
Exam practice 5

Part 1

For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Example:
0 A gone B brought C taken D come

E-MAIL OR SNAIL MAIL?

Modern technology has .......... (0) about enormous improvements in communications and yet many people are still very worried .......... (1) using the latest computer technology. I am often .......... (2) to meet colleagues who still don't know what the 'e' in e-mail stands for and they are too .......... (3) to ask. They assume you have to be skilled .......... (4) computers to send a message via e-mail but in fact it is .......... (5) thing in the world. It is also .......... (6) to send an e-mail message .......... (7) to send an ordinary letter or a 'snail' message which also takes .......... (8) longer. An e-mail message is only .......... (9) more expensive than a local telephone call to send; on top of the call itself you also have to pay a fee to your 'server'. If you send a letter by .......... (10) mail it will take a couple of days to get there whereas an e-mail will not take .......... (11) than a few seconds. Once you become .......... (12) to using the system you will be .......... (13) at how much more .......... (14) it is than other means of communication. Of course, before you have access to e-mail, you will need a fairly .......... (15) computer, which can be quite expensive.

1 A for
2 A surprising
3 A embarrassing
4 A about
5 A simplest
6 A cheaper
7 A as
8 A much
9 A little
10 A second-hand
11 A more long
12 A capable
13 A amazed
14 A confident
15 A strong

B about
B irritating
B embarrassed
B into
B the more simple
B more cheaper
B than
B more
B slightly
B low-paid
B longest
B accustomed
B puzzled
B certain
B great

C at
C surprised
C tired
C to
C simpler
C cheapest
C that
C as
C less
C part-time
C as long
C clever
C experienced
C efficient
C powerful

D with as
D irritated
D tiring
D in
D the simplest
D the cheaper
D from
D lot
D least
D first-class
D longer
D good
D pleased
D skilful
D large
Part 2

For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

THE MYSTERY OF STONEHENGE

Stonehenge is a group of very large, tall stones arranged in (0) circles which stand on Salisbury plain in the south of England. They look (16) they've been put there by a race of giants. The stones originally came from south Wales, 240 miles away. They are (17) big and heavy that the transportation of these stones over (18) a distance is incredible. The question is why did they use (19) huge stones and why are there such a (20) of them? It must have been quite (21) nightmare transporting them. Stonehenge is such (22) mystery (23) all kinds of theories have been put (24) to explain it. The stones (25) to have been put there in about 2500 BC and one fairly plausible theory is that they are a religious sign. It is just (26) likely, however, that they were a way (27) studying the sun. It is also believed that the stones may have (28) used in religious ceremonies by druids, but this theory is not (29) popular with scientists as the first two, but it all happened (30) long ago that it is impossible to be sure what Stonehenge means.

Part 3

For Questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

Example: 0 Do you regret what you did?

sorry

Are you sorry for what you did?

31 I think his wife is a journalist.

married

I think ...................... a journalist.

32 A teacher should like children.

fond

It is important for a teacher ...................... children.

33 The parents felt great pride in their children's success.

proud

The parents ...................... their children's success.

34 The postman isn't usually so late.

unusual

It ...................... the postman to be so late.
35 I lost interest in the subject and stopped going to classes.
    bored
    When I ................................ the subject I stopped going to classes.
36 Spanish and Greek are not at all similar.
    different
    Spanish and Greek ............................... each other.
37 Basil’s behaviour towards the guests was very impolite.
    rude
    Basil ........................................... the guests.
38 The enemy were not prepared for the attack.
    surprised
    The enemy ................................. the attack.
39 The athlete was sure he would win the race.
    confident
    The athlete ................................. winning the race.
40 It won’t be my fault if the project fails.
    responsible
    I will ........................................ the failure of the project.

**Part 4**

For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (√) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning, (0) and (00).

**WHY AM I LEARNING ENGLISH?**

0 English is the most widely spoken language in the world ........
00 today. It is a quite amazing how the use of English has ...
41 become so widespread. The English is not as easy as Esperanto, ....
42 which was especially written for to be as easy as possible ....
43 for people to learn, and yet the Esperanto is spoken by very ....
44 few people around the world. For many people English is not as ....
45 more beautiful a language as French but it seems too late for ....
46 French to catch up with English as an international language. ....
47 German is the quite a useful language if you are in business ....
48 in Europe but it is not half as easy to learn so as English, ....
49 and people say it doesn’t sound as if pleasant as English. ....
50 English has become so important that it is becoming the more ....
51 and more essential to know it if you want to get a good job. ....
52 There are also so many of films and so many songs which are
53 in English. It is too much early to say whether English will remain
54 as influential as it is today but it seems like difficult to stop its
55 growth. It looks like it will be a world language for a long time.

Part 5

For questions 56 – 65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the
end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an
example at the beginning (0).

ON THE BOX

What do you need to become a successful (0) TV personality?
The people who are .................. (56) chosen to host TV quiz
shows and chat shows seem to have few .................. (57) for the
job apart from having an .................. (58) appearance; in the case
of women, this often means being blonde and .................. (59).
A certain level of intelligence and education is .................. (60)
but most people who work in the media do not seem to be very
.................. (61) in any other respects. The sad thing is that TV
personalities have a .................. (62) influence on viewers and it
is .................. (63) for younger viewers to admire these charming
people, wearing the .................. (64) fashions and always smiling.
However, today's youth deserve .................. (65) role models
than these.
Entry test

For questions 1–5, fill in each space with the correct form of a word in the list.

quiet  day  beauty  probable  happy

1  Bessie plays the cello .................. .
2  Mary closed the door .................. so that she wouldn't wake the baby up.
3  The children were playing ............... on the beach.
4  I wonder why our friends haven't arrived? They've .................. been delayed by the traffic.
5  There's a plane from London that arrives .................. at 10.00.

Now look at (11a) on page 188.

For questions 6–10, put the words in the correct order.

6  She opened slowly the door.

7  He always is laughing in class.

8  She doesn't probably speak French.

9  He dangerously drove on Sunday along the motorway.

10  I have very much always liked music.

Now look at (11b) on page 191.
Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.

11 You must try and get to the lesson .......... .
   A more early       B more earlier       C the earlier       D earlier

12 She works .......... than me.
   A more hard than       B more hardly       C much harder       D much hard

13 I use the car .......... often than I used to.
   A less             B the less             C least            D lesser

14 She ran to the station as .......... as she could.
   A quicker          B most quick           C more quick        D quickly

15 Try to get here .......... you can.
   A the soon          B soon as             C as soon as         D soonest

Now look at 13c on page 194.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.

16 I don’t .......... what you mean at all. Can you explain?
   A realise          B see                  C take              D make out

17 Could you let me have a .......... at your newspaper for a minute?
   A look             B read                 C borrow           D minute

18 Have you heard .......... John? He’s had an accident on his motorbike.
   A for              B of                   C around           D about

19 Are you .......... the radio or shall I switch it off?
   A listening to     B listening             C hearing          D hearing about

20 Will you .......... after the cat for us while we’re on holiday?
   A take             B watch                C mind             D look

Now look at 14d on page 196.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 21–25.

21 Her parents often complain because she comes home .......... .
   A lately           B latest             C late              D later

22 Read the letter .......... – I want to know what Mary says.
   A loud            B loudly               C aloud              D more loud

23 His English is not very .......... but his French is excellent.
   A well            B fluently             C high               D good

24 The dentist told him to open his mouth .......... .
   A wide             B widely              C deep              D deeply

25 They sat .......... to each other so they could share the newspaper.
   A closely          B close                C closed            D closest

Now look at 13c on page 200.
use

We use adverbs to modify verbs, adjectives, other adverbs and sometimes whole sentences. Their most common use is to describe how someone does something (called 'adverbs of manner'):

She read the book quickly.
They behaved foolishly.
✓ She played beautifully.
× She played beautiful.
✓ You must drive more carefully.
✓ You must drive more carefully.

• Adverbs can also describe where or when something happens (adverbs of place and time), how often (adverbs of frequency), or how much or how strongly (adverbs of degree):

Let's go tomorrow. (adverb of time)
I'll wait here. (adverb of place)
I come every week. (adverb of frequency)
It's very cold in winter. (adverb of degree)

• We can use by far, frankly, easily, etc. to modify a superlative:

This is quite frankly the worst essay I've read.
It was easily the best party I've been to.

• There are other types of adverb, for example 'linking adverbs' such as also and 'comment adverbs' such as sadly:

This car is silver but we have it in blue, bronze or black as well. (linking adverb)

To tell the truth, I don't like any of those colours. (comment adverb)

• When a phrase acts as an adverb, we call it an 'adverbial phrase'. A phrase can be:

You're driving far too fast. (adverbial phrase)
There's a huge truck behind you. (prepositional phrase)
Let's go tomorrow afternoon. (noun phrase)

form

We form most adverbs by adding -ly to the adjective:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>beautifully</td>
<td>She plays the violin beautifully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brilliant</td>
<td>brilliantly</td>
<td>Sampras played brilliantly and won the championship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>I wish you would drive more carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effective</td>
<td>effectively</td>
<td>With e-mail, I can communicate effectively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>efficient</td>
<td>efficiently</td>
<td>We must work more efficiently.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excited</td>
<td>excitedly</td>
<td>'We've won,' she announced excitedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurried</td>
<td>hurriedly</td>
<td>They left the room hurriedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occasional</td>
<td>occasionally</td>
<td>I occasionally eat meat although I don't enjoy it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shy</td>
<td>shily</td>
<td>She walked shily into the room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truthful</td>
<td>truthfully</td>
<td>Answer me truthfully - did you do it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undoubtedly</td>
<td>undoubtedly</td>
<td>Undoubtedly there will be problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unexpected</td>
<td>unexpectedly</td>
<td>Peter turned up unexpectedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wholehearted</td>
<td>wholeheartedly</td>
<td>I wholeheartedly agree with everything you say.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adjectives ending in -le form adverbs by changing -le to -ly:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gentle</td>
<td>gently</td>
<td>They broke the news gently.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>probable</td>
<td>probably</td>
<td>They are probably on their way now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple</td>
<td>simply</td>
<td>I simply don’t believe you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suitable</td>
<td>suitably</td>
<td>Bob wasn’t suitably dressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terrible</td>
<td>terribly</td>
<td>Bessie played terribly that night.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives ending in -y form adverbs by changing -y to -ly:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>easily</td>
<td>Our team is easily the best.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noisy</td>
<td>noisily</td>
<td>The pupils came into the room noisily.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives ending in -ic form adverbs by adding -ally:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>automatic</td>
<td>automatically</td>
<td>The machine gives you your money back automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heroic</td>
<td>heroically</td>
<td>The soldiers fought heroically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tragic</td>
<td>tragically</td>
<td>He died tragically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some adverbs which end in -ly come from nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>daily</td>
<td>Newspapers are delivered daily. (= every day)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortnight</td>
<td>fortnightly</td>
<td>The magazine is published fortnightly. (= every two weeks)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hour</td>
<td>hourly</td>
<td>The database is updated hourly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>monthly</td>
<td>They meet monthly to discuss progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>week</td>
<td>weekly</td>
<td>The magazine is published weekly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>year</td>
<td>yearly</td>
<td>We pay fees yearly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We cannot add -ly to adjectives which end in -ly. We use in a ... way / manner / fashion:
  I’ve never met a policeman who behaves in a friendly way.
  She spoke in a silly manner.
  He lived his life in a lonely fashion.

- Some adverbs have the same form as adjectives (see page 200):
  drive fast  a fast driver
  sit still  still water

- Some words ending in -ly are not adverbs but adjectives:
  a friendly policeman
  a silly story
  a lonely life
  lovely weather
  an ugly painting

- The adverb from public is publicly:
  He publicly confessed to his crimes.
  X He was publically humiliated.
  ✓ He was publicly humiliated.

- With full we simply add -y:
  I fully agree with you.

- With true we change -e to -ly:
  He was a truly great President.

- The adverb from good is well:
  ‘How did she do in the race? ’She did very well – she came first.’
  X Did I do good in the test?
  ✓ Did I do well in the test?
Practice

1. Complete the chart using the words in the list. Where possible, choose either an adverb or a correct prepositional phrase. There are two examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>prepositional phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>quietly</td>
<td>in a silly way / manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>way</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

suitable  beautiful
unlucky   tragic
lovely    month
fourth    day
possible true
ugly      fast
awful     undoubted
full      efficient
simple    public
lonely    still

2. Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate adverb using the words in the list.

day soft well occasion early beauty month easy careful noise

1. The orchestra played the symphony .............., I thought.
2. John spoke so ............... I could hardly hear him.
3. Hold the baby .............., please.
4. The children played .............. in their bedroom and kept their father awake.
5. In Britain, some people have their newspaper delivered ...............
6. The magazine is published .............. so we get twelve issues a year.
7. I go to the theatre .............. – I just don’t have the time to go more often.
8. You could .............. pass the test with a bit more work.
9. Come .............. if you want to find a good seat.
10. I hope you do .............. in your driving test.

3. Complete the sentences using the correct adverb form of the adjective or noun in brackets.

1. He treats his dog ............... (terrible)
2. If the phone doesn’t work, you get your money back ............... (automatic)
3. She touched him on the arm ............... (gentle)
4. She turned up at the party ............... (unexpected)
5. It is .............. too late to catch the plane now. (probable)
6. The exam was .............. easy and everyone passed. (surprising)
7. ‘I have a question,’ she said, raising her hand ............... (shy)
8. She has to take the medicine ............... (hour)
9. There was a .............. beautiful view from the bedroom. (true)
10. The firemen fought .............. to put the fire out. (heroic)
11b adverbs: word order

group 1: initial, middle or end position
Most adverbs of manner (e.g. slowly) and some adverbs of time (e.g. once) and frequency (e.g. occasionally) can come at the beginning, in the middle (before the main verb) or at the end of a sentence. They modify verbs or clauses. The choice of position is a matter of emphasis:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>beginning of sentence</th>
<th>middle of sentence</th>
<th>end of sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slowly, she opened the door.</td>
<td>She slowly opened the door.</td>
<td>She opened the door slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Once I had a motorbike.</td>
<td>I once had a motorbike.</td>
<td>I had a motorbike once.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occasionally, he loses his temper.</td>
<td>He occasionally loses his temper.</td>
<td>He loses his temper occasionally.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

group 2: initial or end position
Many adverbs of time (e.g. yesterday) and place (e.g. outside) usually come at the end of a sentence but can also come at the beginning:

✗ I'll be in a moment with you.
✓ I'll be with you in a moment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>beginning of sentence</th>
<th>end of sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yesterday I had a difficult day.</td>
<td>I had a difficult day yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside it was raining.</td>
<td>It was raining outside.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Prepositional phrases usually come at the end:
  There's a sports car in the fast lane.
  However, there are exceptions:
  In January he expects to get a pay rise.
  He expects to get a pay rise in January.

group 3: middle position
Some adverbs of frequency (e.g. always), time (e.g. already), degree (e.g. almost) and most adverbs of degrees of certainty and probability (e.g. definitely, probably) usually come in the middle of the sentence, before the main verb:

I always get up early.
I never drink milk.
I definitely saw him.
She probably thinks everything is all right.
✗ Never she apologises.
✓ She never apologises.

• Here are more examples of adverbs in group 3:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequency</th>
<th>degree</th>
<th>degree of certainty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>almost</td>
<td>certainly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ever</td>
<td>hardly</td>
<td>definitely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frequently</td>
<td>nearly</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hardly</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>really</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td>normally</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eventually</td>
<td>often</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rarely</td>
<td>seldom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>usually</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time</th>
<th>other meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soon</td>
<td>even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>still</td>
<td>just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merely</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Adverbs in group 3 go immediately after auxiliary verbs (be, have, do) and modal verbs (can, may, should, etc.):
  He is always first to arrive.
  I have never drunk iced tea.
  You should definitely accept the offer.
  She'll probably come to the wedding.

• However, when the verb is negative, adverbs of degree or certainty come before the auxiliary:
  He probably won't come to the party.
  He certainly can't accept this situation.
group 4: end position

(See also group 1 on page 191.)
Adverbs of manner (e.g. well, badly) and adverbs of place and time usually come at the end of a sentence. Adverbial phrases (e.g. in the playground, at home, on Sunday morning) are almost always placed at the end of a sentence.

He comes home late.
She sings well.
He plays badly.
\[ I \text{ like music very much.}\]
\[ X \text{ I like music very much.}\]
\[ \checkmark \text{ She very well speaks English.}\]
\[ \checkmark \text{ She speaks English very well.}\]
He woke up with a headache on Sunday morning.
They were standing in the playground.

\* When we use two clauses, the position of adverbs can change meaning:
He promised without complaining that he would pay for the damage. (= a promise without complaining)
He promised that he would pay for the damage without complaining. (= payment without complaining)

\* Here are more examples of adverbs in group 4:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>manner</th>
<th>place</th>
<th>time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>as well</td>
<td>in London</td>
<td>daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>badly</td>
<td>in the stadium</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheerfully</td>
<td>at the cinema</td>
<td>monthly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happily</td>
<td>on the dance floor</td>
<td>once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mildly</td>
<td>by the television</td>
<td>at once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politely</td>
<td></td>
<td>at six o'clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly</td>
<td></td>
<td>on the hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regularly</td>
<td></td>
<td>on Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweetly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenderly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very much</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\* We often use more than one adverb in end position. They follow this order:

manner + place + time
quietly at home in the evening

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>manner</th>
<th>place</th>
<th>time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They played badly</td>
<td>at Wembley</td>
<td>on Saturday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She ran quickly</td>
<td>to the bus stop</td>
<td>this morning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\* We often change the order of place and time:

They played badly at Wembley on Saturday.
They played badly on Saturday at Wembley.

Practice

1 Tick (✓) the correct sentences or write the correct sentence if the adverb is in the wrong position.

1 I went yesterday to the post office.

2 The magazine comes out monthly.

3 I’ve become recently interested in skiing.

4 We play football in the playground after school often.

5 Very carefully he drives on the motorway.

6 He got up and walked suddenly away.

7 I have never visited the United States.

8 Outside he is waiting.

9 Only I like ice-cream not chocolate.

10 I cooked and as well I washed the dishes.
2 Rewrite the following sentences, adding the adverb or adverbs in brackets in the correct positions.

1 You’ll finish your homework if you don’t hurry up. (**never, in time**)

2 I have lived in this neighbourhood for a year. (**probably**)

3 I love travelling by plane. (**very much**)

4 Doesn’t she play the piano! (**well**)

5 We arrived. (**on Sunday morning, at nine o’clock, at the station**)

6 She won’t be coming to work. (**today, probably**)

7 He performed the part. (**on Saturday, superbly, at the National Theatre**)

8 She visits her mother. (**usually, in hospital, at the weekend**)

9 Our party won’t raise taxes. (**definitely**)

10 Can you come? (**at six o’clock, to my office, in town**)

3 Fill in each space in the following text with an appropriate adverb or adverbial phrase from the list.

- the night before
- probably
- usually
- occasionally
- after midnight
- always
- never
- rarely
- quickly
- a few minutes later
- hardly
- outside
- yesterday
- immediately
- often

One of those days

Bill wasn’t feeling very well ................ (1) – he had a headache and was feeling dizzy so he ................ (2) decided to go and see the doctor. He didn’t ................ (3) have to go to the doctor – in fact he very ................ (4) had a health problem. ................ (5), say once every two years, he would go and have a check-up and the doctor had ................ (6) found him to be in good shape. He had ................ (7) had any serious health problem. There ................ (8) wasn’t anything seriously wrong with him this time, either, but he ................ (9) arranged an appointment, finished his coffee and ................ (10) he was ready to go ................ (11), it was raining lightly but Bill ................ (12) noticed, so surprised was he to find his car missing ................ (13), he had been to a party at a friend’s house and he had had a great time. He had got back ................ (14) and parked his car where he ................ (15) parked it, but now it was gone.

I never travel without my diary – one should always have something sensational to read in the train.

Oscar Wilde
11c adverbs: comparison

one-syllable adverbs

These take -er in the comparative and (the) + -est in the superlative:

- Bill ran fast. John ran faster than Bill. Gary ran (the) fastest of all.
- They work hard. The girls work harder. The girls in the first group work (the) hardest.
- We can omit the in the superlative of adverbs ending in -est:
  - Bill ran the fastest of all the competitors.
  - Bill ran fastest of all the competitors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>early</td>
<td>earlier</td>
<td>(the) earliest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td>(the) fastest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>harder</td>
<td>(the) hardest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high</td>
<td>higher</td>
<td>(the) highest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>later</td>
<td>(the) latest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>longer</td>
<td>(the) longest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loud</td>
<td>louder</td>
<td>(the) loudest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>(the) lowest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>nearer</td>
<td>(the) nearest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick</td>
<td>quicker</td>
<td>(the) quickest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow</td>
<td>slower</td>
<td>(the) slowest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soon</td>
<td>sooner</td>
<td>(the) soonest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Early forms the comparative and superlative by changing -y to -i and adding -er and -est:
  - She arrived early. She arrived earlier than expected. She arrived (the) earliest of them all.
  - You must come more early.
  - You must come earlier.

adverbs of two or more syllables

Nearly all adverbs of two syllables or more use more/less... and (the) most/(the) least... to form the comparative and superlative:

- Work quietly. Can you work more quietly?
- I often used to travel. I used to travel more often in my previous job. In my new job I travel most often in the winter.
- Could you drive slowlier?
- Could you drive more slowly?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quietly</td>
<td>more/less quietly</td>
<td>(the) most/least quietly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slowly</td>
<td>more/less slowly</td>
<td>(the) most/least slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>more/less quickly</td>
<td>(the) most/least quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td>more/less often</td>
<td>(the) most/least often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>more/less carefully</td>
<td>(the) most/least carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seriously</td>
<td>more/less seriously</td>
<td>(the) most/least seriously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerously</td>
<td>more/less dangerously</td>
<td>(the) most/least dangerously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautifully</td>
<td>more/less beautifully</td>
<td>(the) most beautifully</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We use superlative adverbs with -est in a few common phrases. Examples are:
  - The soonest I can send it is Friday.
  - The earliest I can come is three o'clock.
  - Bill ran (the) slowest of all and came last.

He couldn't take his job more seriously if he tried.
irregular adverbs

Some adverbs have irregular forms of comparison:
Bessie plays the piano well. Bessie plays the piano better than Mary. Bessie played the piano best of all and won first prize.
Terry did badly in the test. Terry did worse in the test than Tom.

• We rarely use worst as an adverb but it would be possible to say:
  Terry performed the worst in the class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>well</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>badly</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lot</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>further/farther</td>
<td>furthest/farthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• We can use either farther or further to talk about distances:
We'd better not go any farther/further tonight.
For farther/further as adjectives, see page 153.

• We can use as + adverb + as to show how something is done in comparison with some other way of doing it (see also page 168):
I ate breakfast as quickly as I could and left.
Bessie didn't play as well as she usually does.

Practice

1 Fill in each space with the appropriate adverb phrase using the word given.
   Example: My wife drives more carefully than I do. (careful)

   1 She works ..................... than everyone else in the office. (efficient)
   2 I play chess .................. my son does. (bad)
   3 He got up ..................... anyone else. (early)

   4 If you don’t eat .................. , you’ll be sick. (slow)
   5 She doesn’t drive ................ as her husband does. (dangerous)
   6 I play football .................. than before, now that I’m employed. (often)
   7 She didn’t do .................. in the test as she expected. (good)
   8 The person who runs ................ will win first prize. (quick)
   9 You ate .................. than anybody else at the party. (much)
   10 You’ll have to work .................. if you want to get your degree. (hard)

2 Complete the sentences below with appropriate adverbs based on the words in the list.

   hard loud long efficient early bad
   often careful near quick

   1 You’ll have an accident if you don’t drive .................. .
   2 She should work .................. if she wants to pass her maths test.
   3 You should have got there .................. if you wanted a good seat.
   4 Can you speak .................. , please? We can’t hear you at the back.
   5 There’s been an accident. Come as .................. as you can, please.
   6 I caught a taxi because if I had come by bus, it would have taken me much .................. .
   7 We need to save time and money – so can we all try and work .................. ?
   8 ‘I’m fed up with staying in all the time.’
      ‘Well, go out .................. .’
   9 The .................. . I got to getting a job was being short-listed.
   10 His parents are worried about him because his marks are getting .................. .

   He who laughs last laughs longest.
# Vocabulary

## 11d seeing and hearing

### Seeing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>see; see sth</td>
<td>(a) understand sth</td>
<td><em>I see</em> what you mean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) realise sth</td>
<td><em>I can see you're not very happy with the situation.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) use your eyes to look at things</td>
<td><em>I can't see a thing without my glasses.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) find out</td>
<td><em>See if there's any cheese in the fridge.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>use your eyes in order to see sth</td>
<td><em>If you look carefully, you will find your keys.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look at sb / sth</td>
<td>paying attention to sb / sth</td>
<td><em>Look at me when I'm talking to you.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look after sb / sth</td>
<td>take care of sb / sth</td>
<td><em>Don't worry; I'll look after the kids tomorrow.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Will you look for the baby while I'm out?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Will you look after the baby while I'm out?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look for sb / sth</td>
<td>try to find sb / sth</td>
<td><em>I'm looking for Steve – have you seen him?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward to</td>
<td>be excited and pleased about sth which is going to</td>
<td><em>I am looking for my keys.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ sth / -ing</td>
<td>happen</td>
<td><em>+ I am looking for my keys.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look into sth</td>
<td>try and find out the truth about sth</td>
<td><em>I'm really looking forward to our vacation.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look through sth</td>
<td>look for sth / check sth</td>
<td><em>We're looking forward to seeing you again.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look sth up;</td>
<td>check a word in a dictionary or other reference</td>
<td><em>Police are looking into the disappearance of the two children.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up sth</td>
<td>book</td>
<td><em>I've looked through my pockets but I can't find my keys anywhere.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a look</td>
<td>look quickly to check sth</td>
<td><em>He looked up the word in his dictionary.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaze into sth</td>
<td>look into space, etc.</td>
<td><em>Can you just have a quick look at the engine for me?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gazé (at sb / sth)</td>
<td>look at sth for a long time</td>
<td><em>Patrick was gazing into the fire.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glance (at sth)</td>
<td>quickly look at sth once</td>
<td><em>She gazed at the beautiful landscape.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glance through sth</td>
<td>read sth very quickly</td>
<td><em>He glanced nervously at his watch.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glimpse sth / sb</td>
<td>see sth / sb by chance for a very short time</td>
<td><em>She glanced round the room to see if there was anyone she knew.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch a glimpse</td>
<td>see sb / sth very briefly</td>
<td><em>Can you glance through my essay and tell me what you think of it?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of sb / sth</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>I glimpsed her face in the crowd and then she was gone.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>I only caught a glimpse of him as he drove off.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**catch sight of**

sb / sth  
see sb / sth briefly

**notice** sb / sth  
see, hear or feel sb / sth

**stare (at sb / sth)**  
look at sb / sth for a long time because you are interested or angry

**stare into sth**  
look for a long time into sth

**watch** (sb / sth)  
look at sb / sth and pay attention

**keep an eye on** sb / sth  
take care of, look after sb / sth

---

**hearing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>hear</strong> sb / sth</td>
<td>notice by using your ears</td>
<td>Did you hear that sound?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hear</strong> sb + -ing</td>
<td>notice sb is near by using your ears</td>
<td>I think I can hear someone knocking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hear</strong> sb do sth</td>
<td>notice sb do sth by using your ears</td>
<td>Have you heard Boyzone sing their latest hit?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hear about</strong> sb / sth</td>
<td>know about because sb told you</td>
<td>Have you heard about the fire at the chemical factory?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hear of</strong> sb / sth</td>
<td>know sb / sth exists</td>
<td>I’ve never heard of him before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hear from</strong> sb</td>
<td>receive news from sb</td>
<td>Have you heard from Sarah lately?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hear (that)</strong> + noun clause</td>
<td>find out sth</td>
<td>I hear (that) you’ve been selected to play in the team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be hearing things</td>
<td>be imagining you hear a sound</td>
<td>I must be hearing things – I’m sure someone called my name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>listen</strong></td>
<td>pay attention to a sound or speech</td>
<td>Listen! There’s a strange noise coming from the engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>listen to</strong> sb / sth</td>
<td>pay attention to sb / sth</td>
<td>I am listening to the radio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen to sb / sth</td>
<td>pay attention to sb / sth</td>
<td>I like listening to the radio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen to sb / sth</td>
<td>take sb, sb’s advice seriously</td>
<td>I hear the news now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen hard</td>
<td>listen very carefully</td>
<td>I am listening to the news now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be all ears</td>
<td>be very keen to hear about sth</td>
<td>I wish I’d listened to his advice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend an ear</td>
<td>listen sympathetically to what sb says</td>
<td>I listened hard but could hear nothing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As soon as I mentioned money, Karen was all ears.

I’m always ready to lend an ear if you need to talk.
1 Fill in each space in these sentences with an appropriate form of a verb from 11d.

1 I didn't ..................... you come in because I was ..................... TV.
2 Ann's really angry with me and I can ..................... why.
3 Joe couldn't ..................... the phone ringing because he was ..................... to music.
4 I have never ..................... of a composer called Piccolini. Is there one?
5 I haven't ..................... my son in Australia for over a year.
6 She ..................... nervously behind her to see if anyone was following.
7 I only ..................... a glimpse of John as he rushed past my office this morning.
8 The police ..................... something suspicious about the man and decided to follow him.
9 I am ..................... my wallet – have you seen it anywhere?
10 ..................... carefully to what I've got to say because I'm not going to say it again.
11 I ..................... that you're going away on Saturday – where are you going to this time?
12 I wish you'd stop ..................... at me like that. It's not very polite, you know.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence using an appropriate form of the word given.

1 The police are investigating the murder.
look
The police ..................... the murder.

2 Nobody had told them anything about the accident.
heard
They ..................... the accident.

3 My sister takes care of the children while we go out to work.
after
My sister ..................... while we go out to work.

4 I looked through the newspaper very quickly this morning.
had
I ..................... through the newspaper this morning.

5 Do you know what's happened about the strike?
about
Have you ..................... the strike?

6 I thought I heard the doorbell ring but it was just my imagination.
things
I ..................... when I thought I heard the doorbell ring.

7 He searched the drawers but he couldn't find his favourite tie.
look
He ..................... the drawers but he couldn't find his favourite tie.

8 One quick look at the clock and I knew I would be late.
glance
A ..................... and I knew I would be late.

9 I'm afraid I don't know him.
hear
I'm afraid I .....................

10 I saw Abbie this morning getting onto a bus.
sight
I ..................... Abbie this morning getting onto a bus.
3 Fill in each space with an appropriate word.

Simply magic

We were .......... (1) through the paper, trying to find somewhere to spend Saturday evening in London. Luckily, we had found a baby-sitter to .......... (2) after the twins so we were free for the evening. Suddenly, I caught .......... (3) of an advertisement for an 'All Star Magic Show' at a theatre not far from where we lived. I'd .......... (4) about the Camden Popular Theatre from a friend of mine who works in the box-office there. I'd never .......... (5) a magic show performed live before and I was always .......... (6) for new experiences, so we thought we'd give it a try.

By the time we got to the theatre we were both .......... (7) forward to a bit of fun but nothing more. I've never understood what '.......... (8) is believing' meant but now I think I .......... (9) what people mean. The first magician came on. He gazed intently .......... (10) various members of the audience before asking my wife, Mary, to volunteer to help with his first trick. She glanced .......... (11) me for support, I nodded, and she agreed. She got onto the stage, .......... (12) a bit anxious. The magician gave her a book and asked her to .......... (13) carefully to what he was going to say. He asked her to look at any page she chose, at random. Mary .......... (14) through the book and stopped at page ninety-six. The magician asked her to have a .......... (15) at the first line and choose any word, as long as it was a short word. He then told her which word she had chosen.

4 Cross out the word in each group which cannot be used with the verb in bold.

Example: observe frequently now suddenly carefully completely once often

1 see well carefully badly often further outside occasionally
2 look slowly often badly daily farther earlier carefully
3 notice once suddenly fast now earlier sometimes easily
4 hear frequently yesterday well carefully outside once later
5 listen often suitably more occasionally tomorrow now carefully
6 watch beautifully occasionally publicly outside often normally soon
7 glimpse suddenly slowly earlier unexpectedly once often hurriedly
8 gaze lazily longest further slowly happily fast yesterday
9 stare hopelessly occasionally every day now quickly casually most
10 understand completely highly always well yesterday just suddenly
Some adverbs have the same form as the adjective:
We had an **early** breakfast. (adjective) We left **early**. (adverb)
He's a **fast** driver. (adjective) Run **fast**. (adverb)
It will be a **long** journey. (adjective) Don't take **long**. (adverb)
✗ The river runs **deeply**.
✓ The river runs **deep**.

**adverbs with different forms and meanings**

Some adverbs have two forms – one the same as the adjective and one ending in -ly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>direct</td>
<td>without stopping anywhere on the way</td>
<td>They flew <strong>direct</strong> to Rome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directly</td>
<td>(a) with no one else in between (b) immediately (c) straight</td>
<td>(a) You'll be <strong>directly</strong> responsible to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free</td>
<td>without paying</td>
<td>We got into the cinema <strong>free</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freely</td>
<td>without any restriction</td>
<td>He comes and goes <strong>freely</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>with effort or force</td>
<td>She pushed the door <strong>hard</strong> but it still wouldn't open. She tried <strong>hard</strong> to remember where I had parked the car. It was raining <strong>hard</strong> and we all got wet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hardly</td>
<td>almost not</td>
<td><strong>It was hardly</strong> raining earlier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>not at the agreed time</td>
<td>She's always arriving <strong>late</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lately</td>
<td>recently</td>
<td>Have you seen Natasha <strong>lately</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high</td>
<td>a long way up</td>
<td>He can jump <strong>high</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highly</td>
<td>very favourably</td>
<td>I think <strong>highly</strong> of you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last</td>
<td>after all the other</td>
<td>He came <strong>last</strong> in the race.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lasty</td>
<td>finally</td>
<td><strong>Lastly</strong>, I'd like to say...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>correctly</td>
<td>The calculations didn't come out <strong>right</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rightly</td>
<td>justifiably</td>
<td>The audience was <strong>rightly</strong> upset by what they saw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td>completely</td>
<td>Open your mouth <strong>wide</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widely</td>
<td>to many places</td>
<td>She has travelled <strong>widely</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sometimes the two forms of the adverb have the same or a similar meaning:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rough/roughly</td>
<td>He plays rough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He pushed her roughly. (both = in a violent way)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loud/loudly</td>
<td>Don’t talk so loud/loudly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tight/tightly</td>
<td>Hold on tight!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He held on tightly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong/wrongly</td>
<td>You’ve done it all wrong!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rightly or wrongly, the house belongs to her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick/quickly</td>
<td>Get out of here quick!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They ran out of the room as quickly as they could. (= the more common form)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12 She gave me the .............. address and I got lost.
13 They sat very .............. to each other to keep warm.
14 He had a very .............. voice which you could hear a mile away.
15 Feel .............. to ask me any questions you like.
16 It hasn’t rained much ..............; the last time was two months ago.

2 Fill in each space with the correct adverb based on a word in the list. Some words do not need to be changed. Use one word twice.

| long | late | far | high | wide | most | slow | quick | further | wrong | little |

Practice

1 Fill in each space with an appropriate adjective or adverb.

1 If she tries .............., she may succeed in breaking the world record.
2 I was so shocked I could .............. speak.
3 The teacher gave us a very .............. task to do but we managed it quite well.
4 The road isn’t .............. enough for the lorry to get through.
5 The dentist asked her to open her mouth ...............
6 The name of the suspect is .............. known in town – nearly everyone knows who it is.
7 She did very .............. in the test.
8 Her results were so .............. that she got into Cambridge University.
9 Don’t drive so .............., slow down!
10 He drove in the .............. lane on the motorway because he was in a hurry.
11 If you answer .............., cross it out and write it again.

2 Catch that thief!

There have been a number of burglaries in our neighbourhood .............. (1). We are not sure who is to blame but it is .............. (2) believed that the burglaries are .............. (3) the work of one gang. The police have been very .............. (4) to act and they still know very .............. (5) for certain. The public, rightly or .............. (6), blame the police for not acting more .............. (7). Most people do not think very .............. (8) of the local police and indeed so .............. (9) they have arrested only one suspect. They say they need more evidence before they can take the matter .............. (10). Whenever they are called in to investigate a burglary, it takes them so .............. (11) to get to the scene of the crime that it is always too .............. (12) to catch the culprits.

Still waters run deep.
Entry test

Underline the correct answer in 1–5. (− = no word)

1 She got a first class-degree from the / − Oxford University.
2 Jones was found guilty and sentenced to five years in − / the prison.
3 Can we meet outside the / outside of hospital at about six o'clock?
4 Mum, there's some / a spider crawling all over my arm!
5 She punched her attacker in his / the face and he ran off.

Now look at 12a on page 204.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.

6 There are already .......... people waiting outside to buy tickets.
   A a       B some       C the       D lots
7 I would be glad to answer .......... questions you may have.
   A some       B every       C any       D the
8 Could you please go and get .......... chair from next door?
   A an other       B another       C other       D more
9 Unfortunately, there was .......... we could do to help the old man.
   A a few       B few       C a little       D little
10 We haven't got .......... money but we manage to get by.
   A more of       B many       C several       D much

Now look at 12b on page 208.
Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.

11 If you want .......... sensible advice, go to Jack.
   A a   B the   C a little of   D some

12 I don’t need all this money – take .......... back.
   A it   B those   C that   D them

13 I forgot to take the spaghetti out of the water and .......... went soft.
   A they   B all   C it   D she

14 She’s excellent at languages but her Spanish .......... better than her Italian.
   A hears   B listens   C are   D is

15 I prefer furniture made of .......... wood, don’t you?
   A a   B the   C some   D –

Now look at 12d on page 212.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.

16 .......... is one of the most interesting subjects at school.
   A Physic   B The Physic   C The Physics   D Physics

17 I’ll have to start wearing .......... glasses if my eyes get any worse.
   A the   B some   C –   D any

18 They have a lovely house on .......... of the city.
   A outskirts   B an outskirts   C the outskirts   D the outskirts

19 There’s a fire – call .......... fire brigade!
   A a   B their   C –   D the

20 When you get to the traffic lights, ask someone for .......... directions.
   A their   B –   C our   D some

Now look at 12d on page 216.

For questions 21–25, fill in the spaces with the correct form of the words in the list.

opportune public generous reluctant depress

21 She’s just come out of a long period of .......... but she’s better now.

22 Going to the States to work is an .......... you can’t afford to miss.

23 Although he’s a rich businessman, he’s not well known for his .......... .

24 The Prime Minister’s speech got a lot of .......... in the media.

25 He agreed to take part in the show but with great .......... .

Now look at 12d on page 219.
## Grammar

### 12a articles

Here is a summary of the way we use articles with different kinds of noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>article</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>countable singular</td>
<td>indefinite <em>a</em> or <em>an</em></td>
<td><em>She has a bicycle already.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>countable singular</td>
<td>definite <em>the</em></td>
<td><em>The red bicycle is hers.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>countable plural</td>
<td>definite <em>the</em></td>
<td><em>The bicycles are in the shed.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>countable plural</td>
<td>none</td>
<td><em>They use bicycles to get to work.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncountable singular</td>
<td>definite <em>the</em></td>
<td><em>The salt is in the cupboard.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncountable singular</td>
<td>none</td>
<td><em>Salt is cheap.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here is a summary of the main uses of articles:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>meaning</th>
<th><em>a</em> / <em>an</em></th>
<th><em>the</em></th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specific</td>
<td><em>She has a cat.</em></td>
<td><em>She feeds the cat.</em></td>
<td><em>She has cats in the house.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general</td>
<td><em>A cat is a quiet animal.</em></td>
<td><em>The cat was sacred in ancient Egypt.</em></td>
<td><em>Cats are not as popular in some cultures as dogs.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listener does not know which person or thing</td>
<td><em>There's a cat outside the door.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listener knows which</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>The cat outside is black.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We also use indefinite articles before nouns in the following ways:

### Indefinite article (*a* / *an*): use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sth which has not been mentioned before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've just seen <em>a</em> car coming up the drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's a spider in the bath.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He buys <em>a</em> newspaper every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× I want to be a teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ I want to be <em>a</em> teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all things of the same kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is <em>a</em> spider <em>an</em> insect?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>a</em> hundred / <em>a</em> few / <em>a</em> lot / <em>a</em> little / <em>a</em> great deal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A few weeks from now I'll be in Venice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>twice</em> <em>a</em> week (= twice each week)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I get fifty pounds <em>a</em> day, (= each day)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This car goes at 110 miles <em>an</em> hour, (= in one hour)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expressions of frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>a</em> cup and saucer (≠ <em>a cup and a saucer</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>a</em> knife and fork (≠ <em>a knife and a fork</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two things that are often mentioned together as though they are one thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>This area produces</em> <em>a</em> fine cheese.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a type of a particular thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is <em>a</em> Mr Wilkins to see you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sb's name when we don't know the person</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• We also use *a/an* after *what, such, rather* to emphasise what we are saying:
  
  *What a day it’s been!*
  
  *He’s such a fool!*
  
  *It’s rather a high price, isn’t it?*

We use definite articles before nouns in the following ways:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>definite article (the): use</strong></th>
<th><strong>examples</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sth or sb which you have mentioned before</td>
<td>I’ve got two cats – the black one is called Bob, the white one is called Rosie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sth which is unique in some way</td>
<td>Which is the tallest building in the world?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sth specific, in an expression with <em>of</em> or <em>which</em></td>
<td>London is the capital of Britain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sth restricted to a particular case</td>
<td>The power enjoyed by politicians doesn’t interest him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the names of certain countries</td>
<td>the United States / the Lebanon / the United Kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the name of a group of mountains</td>
<td>the Alps / the Pyrenees / the Himalayas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the name of a canal, river, sea, ocean</td>
<td>the Ganges / the Mississippi / the River Thames / the Aegean Sea / the Atlantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sb we visit regularly</td>
<td>She's gone to the doctor / the dentist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sb in an official position</td>
<td>the Pope / the President / the Queen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the name of a whole family or group</td>
<td>the Joneses / the Mitchells / the Beatles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sth that everybody knows because it is part of nature or everyday life</td>
<td>We drove through the night. Ella's always complaining about the traffic!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a part of sb's body</td>
<td>She hit him on the ear. (= his ear) He punched him on the nose. (= his nose)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an adjective used as a noun referring to a group of people</td>
<td>the sick / the injured / the rich / the young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an adjective used as a noun describing a nationality</td>
<td>the Japanese / the Asians / the Afro-Caribbeans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the date (in speech)</td>
<td>March the twenty-fifth / the twenty-fifth of March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a type of entertainment</td>
<td>We went to the cinema / the opera / the theatre. She plays the guitar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the name of a hotel and restaurant</td>
<td>The Hilton / The Sheraton</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We do not use an article before:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>no article: use</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the plural form of a countable noun when it is used in a general sense</td>
<td>I buy magazines about computers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>× I like the music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✓ I like music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an uncountable noun when it is used in a general sense</td>
<td>She hates dishonesty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>× Many people are afraid of the death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✓ Many people are afraid of death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the name of a language</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an adjective, unless the adjective is followed by a noun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an airport or train station</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a university</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a shop or bank named after people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a church or cathedral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a meal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a disease or illness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a street or road</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a mountain or continent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a country, county, state, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a school, college, church, prison when we are not focusing on the particular one</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a hospital, university, etc. when we think of the purpose of the institution, not the building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a way of travelling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We say German (e.g. We learn German at school.), but we say 'the German language'.
- We do not use an article in common phrases such as at work/home, in bed.
Practice

1. Complete the following sentences with a, an, the or no article.

1. ........ audience clapped and cheered.
2. People say ........... British are not very friendly but I disagree.
3. If we do not protect ........... nature, our environment will get worse and worse.
4. I pick up ........... kids from ........... school and take them ........... home when Mary is at ........... work.
5. Take these letters to ........... post office, will you?
6. Are we going round to ........... Wilsons for supper on Saturday?
7. Where do you work during ........... day?
8. What will you do if they cut ........... electricity off?
9. She kissed him on ........... cheek.
10. The Government should tax ........... rich more and ........... poor less.
11. ........... power doesn't interest him but ........... money does.
12. We arrived at Heathrow and got ........... taxi which took us to ........... Oxford Street.

2. Articles have been removed from the following passage. Write it again including 18 missing articles.

London Bridge is falling down

Romans invaded Britain in AD43 and, chasing ancient Britons along Thames, they came to first place where it was easy to cross. They built garrison there – and London was born. They also erected bridge over river. Garrison became major trading post. Later, bridge suffered neglect and whole area was raided by Vikings. In AD886 Alfred Great drove out raiders, bridge was repaired and city prospered again. Hundred years later, Vikings returned but King Ethelred sailed up Thames, attached ropes to London Bridge, headed downriver and pulled it down.

Complete the paragraph below with a, an, the or no article.

This morning I woke up around ten. I made ........... (1) cup of coffee, took it into ........... (2) bedroom and put it on ........... (3) table next to ........... (4) bed, on ........... (5) side my wife sleeps on. I go through this ritual twice ........... (6) week – I do it on ........... (7) Saturday and ........... (8) Sunday mornings. On ........... (9) other days of ........... (10) week, we go to ........... (11) work at different times and I always get up first to get ........... (12) kids ready for ........... (13) school. I drop them off outside ........... (14) school which is an old Victorian building on the corner of ........... (15) Hill Road, and then go straight to ........... (16) work.

I work in ........... (17) office in ........... (18) city centre and I always have ........... (19) problem finding ........... (20) parking space. My wife says I'm always complaining about ........... (21) traffic and the pollution, which is true – you see, I grew up in ........... (22) country, close to ........... (23) nature and I have never got used to living in ........... (24) city. I think the only thing I would miss about living in ........... (25) big city like this is going to ........... (26) concerts of all kinds. I love rock and classical music, too, and especially going to ........... (27) cinema, which I am particularly keen on. I also like ........... (28) good food and occasionally we go out and have ........... (29) dinner in a nice restaurant, but most of the time we eat at ........... (30) home, where the food is delicious – except when I make it!
Determiners include *a*, *an* and *the* (see 12a) and other words that come before nouns. Here is a list of common determiners excluding articles:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>determiner</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>all</em> / <em>all of</em></td>
<td>the complete amount, the whole number or amount of, every one of</td>
<td>He had spent <em>all (of)</em> his life working in a factory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: We use <em>all of</em>, not <em>all</em>, before pronouns: We say <em>all of them</em></td>
<td>He spent it <em>all</em> bottling lemon juice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not <em>all them</em>.</td>
<td>There was a terrible storm but <em>all of us</em> managed to get back safely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>another</em></td>
<td>an additional person or thing (used with singular countable nouns)</td>
<td><em>We need another</em> chair.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| *any*          | for quantities which do not or may not exist (in negative sentences and questions) | *I don’t have any* money. Do you have *any* money on you?   
|                | for quantities that may not exist (in conditional sentences)                  | *X I’m not sure if she has some brothers.*  
|                | it doesn’t matter which one                                                   | *✓ I’m not sure if she has *any* brothers.*  
| *both / both of* | two people or things together                                               | Please phone me if you have *any* problems.                                                                                                                                                       |
|                | in the expression *both ... and* to emphasise that something is true of one thing and another | *We can go to any* restaurant you like.                                                                                                                                                         |
|                | Notes:                                                                        | *Both (of) her parents are doctors.*                                                                                                                                                            |
|                | 1 We use *both of*, not *both*, before pronouns: We say *both of them*       | *He has lived in both Britain and America.*                                                                                                                                                      |
|                | not *both them*.                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                | 2 *Both* is always plural.                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| *each / each of* | every single one of two or more things or people (considered separately)     | *I don’t know which book to buy. Why don’t you buy both of them?*                                                                       |
|                | Note: We always follow *each* with a singular noun, but *each of* with a plural noun or pronoun and a singular verb. | *Both these books are mine.*                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                |                                                                               | *Jane had a blister on each foot.*                                                                                                                                                             |
|                |                                                                               | *Each of the children was given a present.*                                                                                                                                                    |
|                |                                                                               | *Each child was given a present.*                                                                                                                                                             |
**either (...or)**

one or the other of two things or people

Notes:
1. We use *either of*, not *either*, before pronouns. We say *either of them* not *either them*.
2. We follow *either* with a singular noun.

**every**

each one of a group of things or people
to emphasise that you are talking about the whole of sth
to indicate that sth happens at regular intervals of time or distance

**a few / a few of**
a small number of; enough (with plural countable nouns)

**few / few of**

not many, not enough (with plural countable nouns)

**a little / a little of**
a small amount

**little**

not much (with uncountable nouns)

**a lot of / lots of**
a large amount

**many / many of**
a large number of people or things (with countable nouns)

Note: In this use, *many / many of* is more formal than *a lot of*.

**much / much of**
a lot of (with uncountable nouns), used especially in negative sentences and questions

**most / most of**
nearly all

Note: We use *most of*, not *most*, before pronouns.

**more**
a larger amount

Notes:
1. We use *more of*, not *more*, before pronouns.
2. We often imply a comparison, without stating it.
3. We use a plural noun or pronoun after *more of*.

I've lived in New York and Chicago but I don't like either city much.
You can have either this blue one or that one over there.

'Do you want the big bag or the small one? 'Either of them would do.'

*Either bag will be suitable.*

*Every student has to fill in a questionnaire.*

I enjoyed *every minute of the film.* (= I enjoyed the whole film)

Richard visits his mother *every week.*
You should change the oil *every 5,000 miles*.

Yes, we have a *few jobs available in our company*. I've read a *few of her books*.

Unfortunately, there are *few jobs available at present.* (= not enough)

*Few of the customers complained.*

I told him a *little bit about it.*
The city is regaining a *little of its former glory.*

Unfortunately, by then we had *little money left.*

There were *a lot of / lots of people at the party.*

Many people find this kind of movie unpleasant. *Many of our staff are part time.*

*How many brothers do you have?*

There isn't *much time – pack the bag quickly.*

Do you get *much chance to travel in your job?*

*Most universities offer a wide range of courses.*

*Most of the people there were strangers.*

*Most of them offer a wide range of courses.*

She makes *more phone calls than anyone else.*

She likes *more of them than I do.*

We sell *more of these maps.* (= more than other kinds of maps)

We need *more of these books.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determiner</th>
<th>Meanings and Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>neither</em> (...nor)</td>
<td>not one or the other of two people or things (with positive verbs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes: 1 We use <em>neither of</em>, not <em>neither</em>, before pronouns. 2 We follow <em>neither</em> with a singular noun.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| *none of* | not any of three or more things or people (with positive verbs) |

| *other* | people or things in addition to the ones already known |
| Notes: We can use *others or the others* on its own without a noun. |

| *several*/ *several of* | some, but not a large quantity |
| Notes: We use *several of*, not *several*, before pronouns. |

| *some*/ *some of* | not many or much (in affirmative statements) |
| Notes: We use *some of*, not *some*, before pronouns. |
| when we expect the answer yes or no (in questions) a large amount of sth (with certain uncountable nouns) |

---

- *Others* means 'other people'; *the others* means 'those not mentioned already'.
  *Some people like watching horror films but others hate them.*
  *Two climbers went to the top and the others waited in the tent.*

- We do not usually use two determiners together:
  *Either other* plan is hopeless.
  ✓ *Either* plan is hopeless.
  ✓ *Both* plans are hopeless.

- Singular countable nouns must always have an article or a determiner.
  *You don't have chance of winning.*
  ✓ You don't have a / any chance of winning.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example Sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Neither parent cares what happens to the child.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ <em>Neither John's father nor mine could understand my problem.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ <em>Neither John's father nor mine could understand my problem.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both players have been warned but <em>neither of them</em> seems to take it seriously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example Sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>None of my friends phone me anymore.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ <em>All of us didn't want to go to bed.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ <em>None of us wanted to go to bed.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You've already met Peter but I have two <em>other</em> brothers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example Sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>The others are waiting in the office.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Others want this job if you turn it down.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Milk will keep for several days in a fridge.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Several of us think it's a bad idea.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*There are <em>some people waiting outside.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*There is <em>some cheese in the fridge.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Some of them are cold.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example Sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*Could you give me <em>some bread?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Would you like <em>some orange juice?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>It will be <em>some</em> time before the bridge is finished.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

- *Some people like watching horror films but others hate them.*
- *Two climbers went to the top and the others waited in the tent.*
Practice

1. Underline the correct alternative in the sentences below.

1. None of/Neither of you need worry; I'm not going to ask any of you for a loan.

2. None/Each of the children will be met at the station, so they will be safe.

3. The price is sixty pounds a week, then ten pounds for each/some extra day.

4. Every/Any item has been carefully checked and they are all fine.

5. Each/Every of the children had the same weight at birth.

6. I have asked them both and neither/both of them knows the answer.

7. I have every/all record the group has ever made.

8. Freda had to stop and rest after each/many hundred metres or so.

9. Sadly, there were few/a few people at the concert.

10. I'd like to have few/a few words with you if you don't mind.

11. Fortunately, I had a little/little time to spare.

12. She had very little/few money – just a few/a little coins.

13. I had never seen so much/many bright stars in the sky.

14. These days most/most of crime is against property, not people.

15. The court case cost them few/several million dollars.

16. My mother has inherited some/another land in Australia.

17. Can you give me some/enough idea of the cost?

18. Can you pass me other/another mug?

19. We only spent a few/many days in Rome; on the first day we visited a museum and on the other/others days we just strolled around.

20. I can get to Edinburgh by plane or train but either/neither way it is very expensive.

2. Look at the results of the UFO survey and then fill in each space in the text below with an appropriate word.

Survey: Is there life on other planets?

- Number of people interviewed: 400
- Age: 18+

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>YES</th>
<th>NO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Is there life on other planets?</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Has earth been visited by other species?</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Have you seen a UFO?</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Do you believe those who say they've seen a UFO?</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Do you have evidence of the existence of UFOs?</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Do you believe we will get evidence in the future?</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do you believe in UFOs?

In our survey, we asked ............ (1) hundred people whether they believed there was life on ............ (2) planets. The answer ............ (3) people gave was that there must be ............ (4) planets in the universe with ............ (5) kind of life on them. They thought it was unlikely that ............ (6) of the planets in the universe were deserted except for ours. On the other hand, very ............ (7) people thought we had actually been visited by any ............ (8) species. Hardly ............ (9) of the people we interviewed claimed that they had seen a UFO and only a ............ (10) believed stories told by ............ (11) people of meetings with aliens. ............ (12) of those who said they had first-hand experience could offer ............ (13) proof and, sadly, it seemed there was ............ (14) chance that in future anyone would come up with such proof. ............ (15) the people in the survey were adults.
countable and uncountable nouns

We can count countable nouns. A countable noun has both singular and plural forms:

apple / apples  child / children

- We cannot count uncountable nouns. An uncountable noun has no plural form and we do not use it with a/an:

We need new furniture.

Poverty can lead to unhappiness and despair.

- Opposite are some common errors:

X The money are insufficient.
✓ The money is insufficient.
X They have many works to do.
✓ They have a lot of work to do.
X The news are very hopeful.
✓ The news is very hopeful.
X She gave me a good advice.
✓ She gave me some good advice.
X For long travels we use the train.
✓ For long journeys we use the train.

Below is a summary of the basic differences between countable and uncountable nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>use of a, an, the</th>
<th>countable example</th>
<th>uncountable example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plural noun</td>
<td>a book, the book</td>
<td>cheese, the cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some + noun</td>
<td>books, the books</td>
<td>(no plural form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any + noun</td>
<td>some books</td>
<td>some cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough + noun</td>
<td>any book, any books</td>
<td>any cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many + noun</td>
<td>enough books</td>
<td>enough cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few / a few + noun</td>
<td>many books</td>
<td>(not possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less + noun</td>
<td>(a) few books</td>
<td>(not possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little / a little + noun</td>
<td>(not possible)</td>
<td>less cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much + noun</td>
<td>(not possible)</td>
<td>(not possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that / this + noun</td>
<td>that / this book</td>
<td>that / this cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>those / these + noun</td>
<td>those / these books</td>
<td>(not possible)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can also say:

This is a fine cheese. (= a fine variety or type)

These cheeses are produced only in Italy. (= these types of cheese)

- We can say one fish, two fish, one deer, two deer. We can also say all the fishes in the sea. (= the different varieties of fish)

plural forms

- Here are nouns with regular plural forms:

computer / computers
address / addresses
box / boxes
city / cities
journey / journeys

- Here are examples of nouns with irregular plural forms:

aircraft / aircraft
sheep / sheep
calf / calves
tooth / teeth
child / children
Walkman / Walkmans
cod / cod
wife / wives
deer / deer
woman / women
foot / feet
fish / fish
fruit / fruit
loaf / loaves
rendezvous / rendezvous
series / series
species / species
common mistakes with plurals

- Some uncountable nouns are often countable nouns in other languages and will cause special difficulty. Here are some of the most common ones:
  
  She gave me advice but I didn't listen.
  Could you help me to carry all this baggage?
  The countryside here is beautiful.
  Accidents cause a lot of damage - be careful.
  I don't feel comfortable with electronic equipment.
  Can you give us any more evidence? This evidence is not very reliable.
  I like your furniture - where did you get it?
  Your hair looks great - how do you get it to look like that?
  She is in very good health.
  The teacher gives a lot of homework and expects it in on time.
  Where do you get your information from - is it reliable?
  Do you have much knowledge of economic theory?
  I don't need this money - take it back.
  The news says the weather is going to get better.
  What he said was nonsense - wasn't it?
  I've got permission to go.
  You've made progress - keep trying.
  I made the spaghetti especially for you - did you like it?
  I had a lot of work to do in town and I've only just finished it. (Compare I had lots of jobs and I've only just finished them.)

- The words means, series and species look like plural nouns but they are usually countable and singular:
  
  They found that the only means to cross the river was to swim.
  Which is your favourite series on TV?
  It was a series about an animal hospital.
  One species is destroyed in forest fires every day.

- Spaghetti looks like a plural noun but it is uncountable:
  The spaghetti is ready.

common uncountable nouns

- Below is a list of nouns which are uncountable. In some cases, there is a singular or plural use when we refer to a particular variety or example:

  - absence
  - advice
  - age
  - agriculture
  - anger
  - atmosphere
  - baggage
  - beauty
  - behaviour
  - bread
  - childhood
  - comfort
  - company
  - concern
  - confidence
  - countryside
  - courage
  - damage
  - death
  - democracy
  - depression
  - design
  - duty
  - earth
  - education
  - electricity
  - energy
  - environment
  - equipment
  - evil
  - evidence
  - existence
  - experience
  - failure
  - faith
  - fear
  - flesh
  - food
  - freedom
  - fun
  - furniture
  - ground
  - growth
  - hair
  - happiness
  - health
  - help
  - homework
  - ice
  - industry
  - information
  - intelligence
  - justice
  - knowledge
  - love
  - luck
  - luggage
  - machinery
  - means
  - money
  - music
  - nature
  - news
  - nonsense
  - paper
  - peace
  - permission
  - poverty
  - pride
  - progress
  - reality
  - research
  - rubbish
  - seaside
  - spaghetti
  - traffic
  - training
  - transport
  - travel
  - weather
  - work

- If we refer to a specific amount with certain uncountable nouns, we can use a piece of, a bit of, a slice of, etc:

  a bit of cheese
  a blob of paint
  a bunch of flowers
  a cup of coffee
  a drop of water
  a glass of orange juice
  a loaf of bread
  a lump of sugar
  a piece of paper
  a pile of rubbish
  a pool of blood
  a portion of chicken
  a slice of bread
  a spot of rain
  a touch of flu
Some words can be both countable and uncountable. Here are examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>countable example</th>
<th>uncountable example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>He sat there and ate a whole chicken.</td>
<td>I’ll have some chicken and chips, please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>I’d love a coffee now. (= cup of coffee)</td>
<td>Is there any coffee left?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experience</td>
<td>Failing an exam was a new experience for me.</td>
<td>Have you had any previous experience?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit</td>
<td>A kumquat is an exotic fruit.</td>
<td>You should eat fruit every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair</td>
<td>The cat has left white hairs all over the sofa.</td>
<td>Get your hair cut – it’s getting too long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juice</td>
<td>I’d like an orange juice, please. (= a glass of)</td>
<td>I’ll just squeeze some juice from these oranges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noise</td>
<td>I heard a noise outside the window.</td>
<td>Stop making so much noise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes, the countable and uncountable forms have completely different meanings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>countable example</th>
<th>uncountable example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iron</td>
<td>Is the iron hot enough?</td>
<td>Spinach is full of iron.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper</td>
<td>Go to the newsagents and get me a paper, will you? (= newspaper)</td>
<td>You’ll need some paper to write on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wood</td>
<td>There’s a wood near our house.</td>
<td>His sculpture was made of wood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>the complete works of Shakespeare</td>
<td>I’ve got a bit of work to do now.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practice

1. Complete the crossword using the clues.

```
   1  2  3
4
6 7
8
9 10 11
12
13
14
```

**Down**
1. By the time he got back, his ........ had grown past his shoulders.
2. No wonder she looks so tired – she’s got twelve ........ to look after.
3. Have you heard from your parents? What’s their latest ........ ?
4. The ........ of elderly people can really suffer in the winter months.
5. Within minutes, the vultures had stripped the bones of all their ........ .
6. I don’t know whether I prefer the ........ of Strauss or Mozart.
7. Between the two of them, their ........ of how computers work is negligible.
8. Do you agree that there’s far too much ........ in the world?
9. I’ve got a great deal of ........ left to do.

**Across**
4. They swallowed their ........ and apologised.
5. With all the ........ in the world, I’m still not likely to pass this test.
6. With the destruction of the rainforests, we’re losing a hundred ........ per week.
7. Between the two of them, their ........ of how computers work is negligible.
8. Do you agree that there’s far too much ........ in the world?
9. I’ve got a great deal of ........ left to do.
2 Fill in each space in the following sentences with an appropriate form of a countable or uncountable noun.

1 I need some ............... about buying a house. I've never bought one before.
2 This type of bear has been declared an endangered .......... .
3 You should eat fresh ............... such as oranges every day.
4 ............... which is used by dentists should be kept clean.
5 Beverly Hills 90210 is a TV ............... about young people in America.
6 She got ............... to leave class early because she wasn't feeling well.
7 Jane has long blond ............... that comes down to her shoulders.
8 Kids can use ............... for games but they also have access to the Internet.
9 You'll find all the ............... you need in the shed.
10 I have so much maths ............... to do that I won't be able to watch TV.

3 Complete these pairs of sentences using the correct form of one of these words. Use a / an where necessary.

beer cod iron experience noise
deer work

1 I saw ............... grazing in the field and took a picture of it.
   Yesterday, there were ............... in the field but now they've gone.
2 Two pieces of ............... and some chips, please.
   The North Sea is full of ............... .
3 I'm thirsty. Let's have ............... in that pub over there.
   In Britain, people go to pubs to drink ............... , not watch television.
4 The huge gate was made of ............... .
   John bought himself ............... and started ironing his own clothes.

5 She's had ............... with children before and would make a good baby-sitter.
   Moving house is ............... . I'd rather forget.
6 Hamlet is one of Shakespeare's finest ............... .
   Gareth has been without ............... for six months now and jobs are hard to find.
7 She'd been working in her room till ............... disturbed her.
   In addition to car fumes, ............... can also be a form of pollution.

4 Fill in the spaces in the following text with one appropriate word, or put – if no word is needed.

The chance of a job

David had been buying ............... (1) paper every day for months though he wasn't interested in ............... (2) news about the latest disasters around the world. It was ............... (3) work he wanted. David had been out of ............... (4) work for ages and when he got the chance of ............... (5) job in the local youth centre he applied at once. He rang and asked them for ............... (6) information about ............... (7) job and they told him he needed to have ............... (8) experience of working with ............... (9) children and if possible ............... (10) training in counselling techniques. David had quite a lot of ............... (11) knowledge of counselling because he had ............... (12) degree in psychology from ............... (13) Edinburgh University and at one time he had seriously considered doing ............... (14) research in educational psychology. Before going to the interview, he asked his mum for ............... (15) advice about what he should wear, and she told him to wear a suit and get his hair cut.
Vocabulary

12d uncountable nouns ending in -s; collective nouns

Uncountable nouns ending in -s
Some nouns end in -s but are uncountable and take a singular verb:

Physics is difficult.
Maths is a compulsory subject.

• Other examples include:
economics aerobics athletics
classics economics genetics
linguistics mathematics measles
mumps physics

X Mathematics are my favourite subject.
✓ Mathematics is my favourite subject.
X He wears a glasses which make him look intelligent.
✓ He wears glasses which make him look intelligent.

• Some uncountable nouns ending in -s also have a plural meaning:
Politics is a dirty business. (= in general)
His politics are right wing. (= specific)

Nouns that are always plural
Some nouns are always plural and take a plural verb. We normally use the with them:
The talks are going ahead between the Government and the unions.

X The authority had refused them their civil rights.
✓ The authorities had refused them their civil rights.

• Sometimes the noun has only a plural form:
His clothes are dirty but he is actually well off.
I believe congratulations are in order!

Below are some common plural nouns. (We use the with many of them. See the examples.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plural noun</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authorities</td>
<td>people in charge</td>
<td>The British authorities are investigating the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conditions</td>
<td>the physical situation</td>
<td>Conditions in the prison are very poor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contents</td>
<td>the things inside</td>
<td>He emptied the contents of his pocket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foundations</td>
<td>material under a building to support it</td>
<td>The foundations of the building were laid ten years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outskirts</td>
<td>parts of the city furthest from the centre</td>
<td>The outskirts of the city are a very nice place to have a house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>premises</td>
<td>building or part of building that a shop uses</td>
<td>The premises are in a new office block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>races</td>
<td>an occasion when horses race</td>
<td>They went for a day out at the races.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resources</td>
<td>available money, equipment, skills, etc.</td>
<td>We do not have the resources to deal with the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sights</td>
<td>places of interest in an area</td>
<td>Let's go and see the sights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stairs</td>
<td>steps inside a house</td>
<td>The stairs are made of wood.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• We often use *my, her, his, etc.*, with these plural nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plural noun</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>activities</td>
<td>Are you aware of our activities?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feelings</td>
<td>You’ve hurt her feelings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headquarters</td>
<td>Their headquarters are in New York.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likes and dislikes</td>
<td>We discussed our likes and dislikes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movements</td>
<td>The police traced his movements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terms</td>
<td>These are our terms for ending the strike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travels</td>
<td>His travels have provided good material for a book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We often use some plural nouns without an article or determiner:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plural noun</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appearances</td>
<td>Appearances can be deceptive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congratulations</td>
<td>Congratulations on your wedding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lodgings</td>
<td>He rented lodgings near the college.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refreshments</td>
<td>Refreshments will be served in the interval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>troops</td>
<td>Troops were sent in to restore order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplies</td>
<td>They ran out of supplies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• We can use some words either with *the* or with no article:
  *The goods* in the airport lounge are sold duty-free.
  *Goods* must be paid for before leaving.
  *The expenses* for her trip were paid by the firm.
  Imagine the trip – no work and all *expenses* paid!

**Clothes and tools**

Many clothes, tools and equipment are designed with two parts joined together. We use them as plurals with *-s* and a plural verb:

*His glasses* are new.
*Bring me the pliers* which are on the table.
*The scissors* are in the drawer.
*She was wearing shorts* which were too big for her.
*My trousers* are dirty.

• Other examples include:
  *binoculars, braces, compasses*
  *dungarees, handcuffs, jeans*
  *overalls, pants, pyjamas*
  *scales, sunglasses, tights*
  *spectacles, trunks, underpants*

• To refer to a single item we say:
  *a pair of scissors*  *a pair of glasses*  
  *a pair of jeans*    *a pair of tights* 

• When we use the expression *a pair of* with a plural noun, the verb that follows is singular if it is in the same clause and plural if it is in a relative clause:
  *This pair of jeans is new.*
  *I bought a pair of jeans which were much cheaper.*

**collective nouns**

Collective nouns refer to a group of people or things, e.g. *army, committee, team*. We can think of them as either a single unit or as members of a group:

*collective noun + singular verb*  
*The team is the best in the country.*
*
The council is building a new road.*

*collective noun + plural verb*  
*The team are confident of victory.*
*
The council are voting on the issue.*

• Here is a list of common collective nouns:
  *army, audience, the BBC*
  *community, class, committee*
  *crew, data, the European Union*
  *family, government, group*
  *gang, jury, media*
  *herd, press, public*
  *staff, team, the United Nations*

• These words take only a plural verb:
  *Cattle are kept for their meat.*
  *The people are very pleased.*
  *The police have been called in.*
1 Fill in each space with an appropriate word from the box.

pair of shorts foundations scissors jury expenses media

cOMPANY interests troops army supplies

1 You're very lucky - travelling around the world, staying in nice hotels, all .......... paid.

2 The mass .......... nowadays, TV and the press, have enormous power.

3 In the summer, you can't go around wearing long trousers all the time. You'll need a nice ...........

4 Can you pass me those .......... so I can cut this article out of the paper?

5 The .......... have weighed all the evidence and have found the accused guilty.

6 She lives alone and just needs .......... now and again, someone to talk to.

7 What are your ..........? I mean, do you have any hobbies? Do you play any sports?

8 Our .......... are ready to attack the enemy; they have a bigger .......... than we have but it isn't as well equipped with weapons and tanks.

9 We're running out of food and water - we'll have to telephone and ask for more .......... to be sent.

10 They laid the .......... of the building months ago but they still haven't started to build it.

2 Complete the following sentences with the appropriate verb, article or pronoun.

1 Physics .......... an interesting subject at school but I wasn't very good at ...........

2 Athletics .......... less popular before the Olympics made .......... fashionable.

3 Politics .......... by no means the only area where women are doing better but .......... is one of the most important.

4 Classics .......... what I wanted to study but my parents persuaded me that economics .......... more useful so I did .......... instead.

5 I think you hurt .......... feelings when you forgot to invite her to your party.

6 The goods .......... being packed now and .......... will be delivered first thing tomorrow morning.

7 Could you tell me a bit about .......... likes and dislikes? .......... mathematics your best subject?

8 .......... police .......... co-operating with .......... authorities in other countries which have a drugs problem.

9 The Government .......... planning new taxes but .......... don't know yet whether their own supporters will accept such a policy.

10 The audience .......... requested not to bring .......... refreshments into the auditorium.

Two's company; three's a crowd.
**suffixes (5)**

**ion**

We use most suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech (See also 1e, 3e, 4e, 10e, 13e).

A verb + *ion, tion*, etc. makes a noun:

- *invent* (verb) + *ion* = *invention* (noun)
- *decorate* (verb) + *tion* = *decoration* (noun)

Here are nouns using the suffix *ion*. Note the changes in spelling:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb ending</th>
<th>+ suffix = noun</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ss</td>
<td>+ ion</td>
<td>confession, depression, discussion, impression, possession, profession</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nt</td>
<td>+ ion</td>
<td>invention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-de</td>
<td>+ sion</td>
<td>collision, conclusion, decision, exclusion, explosion, intrusion, provision, seclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-se</td>
<td>+ sion</td>
<td>confusion, immersion, repulsion, revision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-it</td>
<td>+ sion</td>
<td>admission, omission, permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(but: limit – limitation, visit – visitation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ere</td>
<td>+ sion</td>
<td>cohesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ert</td>
<td>+ sion</td>
<td>diversion, inversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nd</td>
<td>+ sion</td>
<td>expansion, extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ate, -ute, -ce</td>
<td>+ tion</td>
<td>collocation, complication, decoration, deflation, delegation, education, excavation, federation, graduation, operation, pollution, production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-se, -ite, -ote</td>
<td>+ ation</td>
<td>accusation, invitation, privatisation, quotation, admiration, allegation, expiration, starvation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ge, -ve, -ire</td>
<td>+ ation</td>
<td>adaptation, flotation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-t</td>
<td>+ ation</td>
<td>alteration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-er</td>
<td>+ ation</td>
<td>formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rm</td>
<td>+ ation</td>
<td>occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-py</td>
<td>+ ation</td>
<td>valuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ue</td>
<td>+ ation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ify</td>
<td>+ ication</td>
<td>classification, identification, qualification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ish</td>
<td>+ ition</td>
<td>abolition, demolition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ose</td>
<td>+ ition</td>
<td>exposition, imposition, opposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-eat</td>
<td>+ ition</td>
<td>repetition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dd</td>
<td>+ ition</td>
<td>addition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Some nouns ending in *ion* do not have a first part that exists separately, for example: *incursion, jubilation, nutrition, tradition*
* Some nouns ending in *ion* are from adjectives, for example: *precision (from precise), profusion (from profuse)*
**ity**

An adjective + the suffix *ity* makes a noun:

- *active* (adjective) + *ity* = *activity* (noun)
- *invisible* (adjective) + *bility* = *invisibility* (noun)

Here are nouns using the suffix *ity*. Note the changes in spelling:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adj ending</th>
<th>+ suffix = noun</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-e</td>
<td>+ <em>ity</em></td>
<td>activity futility mobility opportunity scarcity security severity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ive</td>
<td>+ <em>ity</em></td>
<td>creativity productivity sensitivity (but: authoritative – authority)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ed, -id</td>
<td>+ <em>ity</em></td>
<td>celebrity humidity stupidity validity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nal</td>
<td>+ <em>ity</em></td>
<td>community eternity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-al, -an, -ar</td>
<td>+ <em>ity</em></td>
<td>equality fatality humanity mortality normality reality similarity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ary</td>
<td>+ <em>ity</em></td>
<td>necessity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ic</td>
<td>+ <em>ity</em></td>
<td>publicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-or</td>
<td>+ <em>ity</em></td>
<td>majority minority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ous</td>
<td>+ <em>osity</em></td>
<td>curiosity generosity (but: hilarious – hilarity, prosperous – prosperity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ble</td>
<td>+ <em>bility</em></td>
<td>acceptability advisability credibility eligibility flexibility illegibility instability invisibility irritability possibility readability reliability responsibility sensibility suitability visibility (but: hospitable – hospitality)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Some nouns ending in *ity* do not have a first part that exists separately, for example:
  - *affinity* calamity heredity vicinity
- We use *sensitivity* to refer to ‘the ability to understand other people’s feelings and problems’:
  - *To teach young children, you need lots of sensitivity and imagination.*
- *Sensibility* is a formal word which means ‘to understand feelings expressed in literature, music, art’:
  - *An art critic is a person of sensibility and perception.*

*To teach, you need sensitivity and imagination.*
Less common noun and adjective suffixes are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun suffix</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ure</em></td>
<td>close – closure, press – pressure, expense – expenditure, natural – nature, pleasant – pleasure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ence</em></td>
<td>correspond – correspondence, exist – existence, patient – patience, refer – reference, scientific – science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> consequences is almost always plural.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>cy</em></td>
<td>fluent – fluency, frequent – frequency, tend – tendency, efficient – efficiency, private – privacy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective suffix</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>cal</em></td>
<td>geography – geographical, history – historical, music – musical, philosophy – philosophical, psychology – psychological</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Practice**

1. These nouns are formed with the suffix *ion*. Complete the chart with the original verbs. There is an example at the beginning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>noun</th>
<th>verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>discussion</td>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>expansion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>decision</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>opposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>abolition</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>graduation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>addition</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>accusation</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>decoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>flotation</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>demolition</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>collision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>repetition</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>rendition</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>qualification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>confession</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>starvation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>cohesion</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>abolition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>seclusion</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>valuation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a noun that fits in the space in the same line.

1 On Saturday we had a long .................. about where to go for our summer holidays.
2 Whose .................. was it to make sure the bills were paid?
3 There is a .................. of a new earthquake in the region.
4 She went through a long period of .................. when she lost her job.
5 The .................. of the bomb was heard several kilometres away.
6 What made you choose law as a ..................?
7 If you don’t do more .................. before the exam, you’re not going to pass.
8 Scientists have made an important .................. about why we grow old.
9 The actor gave the finest .................. of her career.
10 There has been an increase in the .................. of bank-robberies lately.
11 This insurance plan can offer your family financial .................. in case of death or accident.
12 The .................. of people in this city live in flats because it’s cheaper.

3 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1 The economic crisis forced them to close the factory.
   led
   The economic crisis .................. of the factory.
2 I am very pleased to introduce our next speaker.
   gives
   It .................. to introduce our next speaker.
3 For the next three years they corresponded regularly.
   continued
   They .................. for the next three years.
4 We don’t have any proof that life exists on other planets.
   prove
   We .................. of life on other planets.
5 Louise was very patient with me when I was ill and irritable.
   showed
   Louise .................. with me when I was ill and irritable.
6 We agreed never to refer to the matter again.
   make
   We agreed not .................. to the matter again.
7 The Curies are best known for discovering radium.
   famous
   The Curies are .................. of radium.
8 It could rain tomorrow.
   is
   There .................. rain tomorrow.
9 Peter has always been very generous with his friends.
   great
   Peter has always .................. towards his friends.
10 You will be able to take the exam one more time.
   given
   You will .................. to retake the exam.
4 Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits the space in the same line. The first (0) is given as an example.

**How to learn vocabulary**

Students are under enormous pressure (0) to learn huge amounts of vocabulary but they are rarely given guidance (1) as to how to go about it. They have a tendency (2) to try and learn long lists by heart, but this is hardly the most efficient (3) approach to the problem. The golden rule is to do lots of revision (4) at regular intervals. Secondly, students should concentrate on words with the highest frequency (5), particularly everyday words which also improve the students’ spoken fluency (6). They should also take every opportunity (7) to use the words in communication – there is considerable evidence that learners who like using the foreign language improve their oral performance (8) and their overall fluency (9) of the language much more rapidly than students who are reluctant (10) to practise the language in real situations.

*Doctor, I think I’m getting smaller and smaller.*

*You’ll just have to be a little patient.*
Exam practice 6

Part 1

For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Example: 0 A quiet B quite C more quiet D quietly

NIGHT VISITOR

She put the key in the keyhole as ...... (0) as she could but she found it ...... (1) as the door was old and rusty. As she ...... (2) opened the door, it squeaked ...... (3) on its old hinges. 'I wish they'd oil the thing a bit more ...... (4),' she muttered to herself ...... (5). She closed the door ...... (6) behind her and then tiptoed ...... (7) across the room. Unfortunately, this time it was the floorboards that betrayed her as they creaked ...... (8) with every step she took. It had been so ...... (9) since the old house had been built – it had ...... (10) been about two hundred years before and for all Helen knew they had ...... (11) replaced the original floorboards. Helen's heart began to beat ...... (12). It was one o'clock. Helen's parents must have gone to bed ...... (13). This was most unusual. Rarely ...... (14) to bed before she got home. No sooner had she put her foot on the first stair ...... (15) she heard a muffled voice call out, ‘Who's there? Is that you, Helen?’

1 A hardly B easy C hard D easily
2 A slowly B loudly C careful D noisy
3 A lightly B noisily C softly D gently
4 A frequent B oftener C sooner D frequently
5 A with angry B angry C angrily D from anger
6 A shyly B efficiently C carefully D fast
7 A softly B gentle C finely D shortly
8 A aloud B loud C loudly D allowed
9 A along B long time C long D a long time
10 A probably B certainly C definitely D may not
11 A rarely B scarcely C never D occasionally
12 A fastly B more faster C more fast D faster
13 A early B more earlier C the earliest D more early
14 A they went B they did go C they have gone D did they go
15 A then B than C that D there
Part 2

For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

SETTING OUT

It was only a two-day crossing from Piraeus to Alexandria, but (0) soon as I saw the dingy little Greek steamer I felt I ought to have made (16) arrangements. Even from (17) quay it looked overcrowded, like (18) refugee ship; and when I went aboard I found there wasn’t (19) room for everybody. The bar was the size of (20) cupboard and there was an old barman serving breakfast snacks. The man looked as if he had spent (21) night in the bar. I asked for a black coffee and a (22) of toast. I looked around for a chair but found that (23) only one that was not occupied was near the (24) which kept flying open to let in the cold winter wind. The floor space was taken up by a (25) of noisy Italian schoolchildren screaming at the tops of (26) voices and chasing each other round the room. Most (27) them were in shorts and T-shirts but a (28) had put their anoraks on to protect them from the chilly breeze. My Italian (29) pretty fluent and no doubt I would get the (30) to practise over the next two days. I drank my coffee and made my way out to the deck.

Part 3

For Questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

Example: 0 I had only just said goodbye to John when Maria turned up.
          hardly
          Hardly had I said goodbye to John when Maria turned up.

31 There has never been a time when I didn’t like music.
    fond
    I (31) music.

32 I don’t think he’s likely to come to work today.
    probably
    He (32) to work today.

33 He did quite badly in the last exam.
    well
    He (33) in the last exam.

34 She doesn’t smoke as much as she used to.
    less
    She (34) she used to.
35 The teacher's voice was too quiet.

loudly
The teacher .................................................. enough.

36 I haven't been to a party as enjoyable as this for ages.

been
Rarely ............................................................ to a party as enjoyable as this.

37 As soon as she finished her chocolate, she started eating an ice-cream.

finished
Scarcely ........................................................ when she started eating an ice-cream.

38 She came into the room as soon as I left.

sooner
No ................................................................. than she entered the room.

39 You must work harder.

working
You ................................................................. enough.

40 I'll have finished the book in a very short while.

long
It won't ........................................................ finished the book.

Part 4
For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (0) and (00).

TIPS ON ERROR DETECTION

0 We asked teachers how students were coping with the error

00 detection exercise in the exam. The most teachers said

41 students enjoy looking for more errors; the task was often seen

42 as a competition to see who could find the most of errors.

43 The examiners' reports of included tips to help students

44 achieve the best of possible results in the exam.

45 To read to the end of the sentence before you decide

46 if a line is correct or incorrect. The any evidence that

47 a line is incorrect may be in the part of the sentence

48 on the next line. Pay particular attention to each

49 articles, the relative pronouns and prepositions.

50 Another of problem may be auxiliary and modal verbs.

51 In the error detection text there may be a final line which

SCORE
ends the text. Because of the line has no number, no answer
is necessary. If candidates think a line is correct, they should
put a tick on the answer sheet. If they leave as a blank
space, no mark will neither be given. Other marks, such
as a cross, should not be used.

Part 5
For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (O).

SPEAKING ENGLISH WELL
I have a Dutch friend who speaks English beautifully (O). I have always wondered how the Dutch manage to learn languages so ............... (56). The Dutch, like the Germans, often speak English ............... (57) than some native speakers or at least they seem to speak the language more ............... (58) than some English people. Will says that if you want to speak English ............... (59) with a reasonable accent, you should listen to tapes as ............... (60) as possible. If you can afford ............... (61) to go to an English-speaking country, you should go but you should also study the rules of English ............... (62), care especially if you want to speak ............... (63). Will also feels very ............... (64) that there are no magic solutions but that you ............... (65) have to work hard at the new language.
Entry test

Underline the correct answer in 1–5.

1 The woman who / who she lives next door is a university professor.
2 This is the school where / when I used to go as a child.
3 That’s the man that his / whose house was burnt down.
4 The company for where / which he works has gone bankrupt.
5 Jill, who / Jill who works as a nurse, has just written her first book.

Now look at 13a on page 230.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.

6 I saw a woman ......... in the corner on her own so I went over to have a chat.
   A stand    B to stand    C who stands    D standing
7 She was lying in the middle of the road, ......... for help.
   A she was crying   B she cried   C crying    D and she crying
8 He just sits around all day, ......... nothing.
   A doing    B to doing    C to do    D is doing
9 ......... that I wouldn’t pass the exam, I didn’t bother to take it.
   A I know    B Knowing    C I knew    D I knowing
10 ......... our meal, we had a cup of coffee.
   A Finished    B We have finished   C Having finished
   D Have finished

Now look at 13b on page 234.
Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.

11 .......... the house is old, it is still very warm.
   A Although   B Even   C Despite   D No matter
12 She liked teaching in spite of .......... it was badly paid.
   A it was a fact B the fact that C – D in fact
13 Despite .........., she wouldn’t take her coat off.
   A it was hot B that it was hot C being heat D the heat
14 I was hoping to deal with this matter quickly. .......... it is more difficult
     than I thought.
   A No matter, B No matter C However, D However
15 I am going to get this qualification, .......... long it takes.
   A no matter B however C nevertheless, D while

Now look at 136 on page 236.

Underline the correct word A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.

16 If we’re going to share the same office we’d better learn to get .......... .
   A by   B around   C along   D off
17 By the way, did you get your money .......... when the concert was
     cancelled?
   A over   B out   C away   D back
18 I have a committee meeting till eleven o’clock but I should be able to
     get .......... before then.
   A away   B in   C off   D up
19 I got .......... the Arts Faculty at the University of London to study
     history.
   A through   B on   C into   D from
20 I still haven’t got .......... the shock of failing to get my degree.
   A through   B off   C together   D over

Now look at 136 on page 238.

For questions 21–25, fill in the spaces with the correct form of the
words in the list.

threat addiction envy approve history

21 You’re becoming a TV .......... – why don’t you read a book for a
       change?
22 The audience cheered and clapped in .......... .
23 Ancient Greek .......... like Herodotus and Thucydides are still popular.
24 She stared .......... at Helen’s beautiful new dress.
25 The Government would not give in to terrorist .......... .
Relative clauses give more information about something we have just mentioned in a sentence. There are two types of relative clause.

**Type A**

Type A identifies which person or thing we mean exactly. (We also call it a ‘identifying’ or ‘defining’ relative clause.) We cannot leave information in defining relative clauses out of a sentence:

- It’s the car *that I saw here yesterday*.
- *It’s the car.* This sentence is incomplete.

The table below shows how we form defining relative clauses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>possession</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>people</td>
<td>who / that:</td>
<td>who / whom / that:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She’s the woman <em>who / that reads the news on TV.</em></td>
<td>She’s the woman <em>(who / whom / that) I saw on TV last night.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animals / things</td>
<td>which / that:</td>
<td>which / that:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>That’s the kind of dog <em>which / that makes a good pet.</em></td>
<td>It’s the kind of dog <em>(which / that) I’d like to have.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I don’t want a car <em>which / that breaks down all the time.</em></td>
<td>This is the house <em>(which / that) we live in.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can leave out the relative pronoun if it refers to the object of the sentence:
  - *It’s the job *(which / that) I’d like to have.*

- We do not use commas in defining relative clauses.

- We can also use the relative pronoun as the object after a preposition *(for which, to whom, etc.)*. We now usually omit the relative pronoun object and put the preposition at the end of the clause:
  - *Miss Berry was the person to whom I sent the letter.* *(formal)*
  - *Miss Berry was the person I sent the letter to.*

- *Whom* as the object is now formal. We commonly use *who*, except when we say *to / for / with whom*:
  - Is she the person to *whom* you gave the letter?
  - That’s the company for *whom* you work, isn’t it?
  - He’s the man with *whom* I share an office.

- *He’s the person *whom* I saw her with.*
- *He’s the person *who* I saw her with.*
Type B

Type B gives additional information about a person or thing. (We also call it a 'non-identifying' or 'non-defining' relative clause.) The sentence still makes sense without the non-identifying relative clause:

The summer here, which I don't like, lasts for months.
The summer here lasts for months.

The table below shows how we form non-identifying relative clauses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>possession</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>people</td>
<td>who:</td>
<td>who/whom:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>His wife, who is French, speaks</td>
<td>His wife, who/whom I met in Paris, is French.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animals/things</td>
<td>which:</td>
<td>which:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The novel, which has already sold thousands of copies, is the author's first one.</td>
<td>The book, which I read last week, is brilliant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The computers, which have been on sales for months, proved to be unreliable.</td>
<td>The car, which we liked a lot, was much too expensive to buy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We cannot usually leave out the relative pronoun (who, whom, whose) if it refers to the object of the sentence, especially in spoken English.
- We use commas with non-identifying relative clauses. Note possible changes in meaning between Type A (without commas) and Type B (with commas):
  - Mr Smith who teaches English is so fat! (= it is the Mr Smith who teaches English that I am referring to)
  - Mr Smith, who teaches English, is so fat! (= Mr Smith is fat and also teaches English)

relative adverbs

Relative adverbs (when, where, why) describe time, place or reason. They have a close relationship with the pattern: preposition + relative pronoun. Instead of a relative adverb, we can use a preposition + which:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>relative adverb</th>
<th>preposition + which</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>That was the year when I graduated.</td>
<td>That was the year in which I graduated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May 6 was the day when we got married.</td>
<td>May 6 was the day on which we got married.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Twelve o'clock was the time when we met.</td>
<td>Twelve o'clock was the time at which we met.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>That's the factory where they make chemicals.</td>
<td>That's the factory in which they make chemicals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>That's the spot where the statue will be built.</td>
<td>That's the spot on which the statue will be built.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mykonos is the island where we go every summer.</td>
<td>Mykonos is the island to which we go every summer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reason</td>
<td>I'll tell you the reason why you were fired.</td>
<td>I'll tell you the reason for which you were fired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can omit relative adverbs, except for where in some sentences.
**whatever, whichever, etc.**

We use relative clauses beginning *whatever, whichever, whoever, wherever* or *whenever* to talk about someone or something when it does not matter what, which, who, etc:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>things</th>
<th>whichever</th>
<th>Buy whichever book you want. (= any book you want)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>whatever</td>
<td>Whatever she can do to help, she will. (= anything she can)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people</td>
<td>whoever</td>
<td>Invite whoever you like. (= anyone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>places</td>
<td>wherever</td>
<td>I'll go wherever I like. (= to any place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>whenever</td>
<td>Come whenever you like. (= at any time)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Whichever usually comes before a noun.

---

**Practice**

Join the following pairs of sentences using *who, whose, which, where* or *when.* Make the underlined sentence the relative clause. There is an example at the beginning.

*Example: The teacher is very amusing. *She teaches French.*

The teacher who teaches French is very amusing. (Type A)

or: The teacher, who teaches French, is very amusing. (Type B)

1. The new director is very popular. *She gets on well with everyone.*

2. The beach is very quiet. *We always go to it.*

3. I went to see the film *Titanic.* *I enjoyed it very much.*

4. Our cat is called William. *We've had him for five years.*

5. It was 1998. *I met her for the first time.*

6. The house is the biggest in the village. *The doctor lives there.*

7. George speaks Spanish. *His wife is from Argentina.*

8. The winters are very cold. *I enjoy them.*
2 Rewrite these sentences, putting the preposition at the end.

Example: Computer programming is something about which I know little.

Computer programming is something (which / that) I know little about.

1 It was a mistake for which they have already apologised.

2 Mathematics is a subject in which she has little interest.

3 It was the guerrillas to whom they sold the weapons.

4 It was the Queen to whom the Prime Minister sent the letter.

5 It was the bank from which he borrowed money.

6 That was the year in which I was born.

7 March 25 is the day on which the country celebrates its independence.

8 That’s the hospital in which the twins were born.

9 That is the island on which we spent our honeymoon.

10 These are the reasons for which I chose to marry him.

3 Now rewrite sentences 7–10 above using the relative adverb when, where or why.

Example:

6 That was the year when I was born.

7 ........................................

8 ........................................

9 ........................................

10 ........................................

4 Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word. The first (0) is given as an example.

The return of the native

1980 was the year when (0) I first went back to the small village (1) I was born. I was only three years old (2) my parents went to settle in the States.

(3) I now consider my home. But like a lot of first-generation Americans (4) parents were constantly talking about ‘home’ as another country, I was curious to find out more about this place from (5) we had emigrated more than twenty years before. The reason (6) I hadn’t visited the land of my parents earlier — something (7) I now regret — perhaps had something to do with the way (8) they would always talk about it as if it were my real home. (9) for me was the States. The first impression I got on arriving in Santa Maria was the heat (10) was unbearable. The people (11) were waiting to greet me at the airport were all incredibly friendly and they spoke of the time (12) I was a child in the village as if it was yesterday. My grandfather (13) eyes filled with tears when he saw me, and who I would be staying (14) while on the island, looked incredibly like my father, (15) hair had recently started to go grey. The village itself, which was a two-hour journey up the mountain, was simply stunning.

People who live in glass houses shouldn’t throw stones.
participles

form

Participles have two forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| present participle or -ing form | I saw him walking his dog.  
Putting his foot on the accelerator, he drove off down the road.                                                                 |
| past participle                | I have made a cake. She has seen him.  
I had met him before.  
I had seen her at the first meeting.  
The house has been sold.  
It had been built in the 1960s. |
| in the Present Perfect         |                                                                                                                                 |
| in the Past Perfect            |                                                                                                                                 |
| in passive structures          |                                                                                                                                 |

uses of present participles

use

• to shorten relative clause (active structures)

• to talk about two actions (or more) happening at the same time; often after verbs such as sit, stand, lie and come

• after the verbs see, watch, feel, hear, listen to, smell, notice: verb + object + -ing

• before the main clause for emphasis

• to replace a clause of reason beginning because, since, as

• instead of time clauses beginning when, after, before, as soon as or while.

• as adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anyone arriving late will not be admitted (= anyone who arrives late)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| He lay on the sofa, drinking wine and watching TV.  
She stood there, waiting for him to turn up.  
He just sat there, doing nothing.  
I heard someone crying. |
| Laughing and shouting, the children ran out of the room.  
(= they were laughing and shouting at the same time as running out of the room) |
| Knowing that John wouldn’t be at the party, she didn’t bother to go.  
Being so well qualified got him the job.  
Realising he had left the lights on, he told the taxi driver to turn back.  
Closing the door behind her, she got into the car and drove off.  
a burning house (= a house which is on fire) |

uses of past participles

use

to shorten a relative clause in the passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| She lives in a house built in the nineteenth century.  
I would never go into a haunted house – would you? |
Practice

1. Combine the following pairs of sentences into one, using a participle.

Example: She was doing the high jump. She twisted her ankle.
She twisted her ankle doing the high jump.

1. Bill was listening to the lecture. He fell asleep.

2. She was training to be a nurse. She lived in London for a year.

3. The students waited at their desks. They felt nervous.

4. The teacher gave out the questions. She told the students not to open the booklet.

5. The students opened the test booklets. They looked anxiously for the easiest questions.

2. Make sentences beginning with Having.

Example: Maria handed in her script. She had answered all the questions.
Having answered all the questions, Maria handed in her script.

1. He wrote her a letter. He had tried phoning her several times.

2. I had received an invitation. I felt I had to go to the party.

3. He couldn't understand the message. He hadn't learnt any Japanese.

4. After he had picked up his luggage, he went to look for a taxi.

Fill in each space in the following text, using an appropriate present or past participle of the verbs given in the box. You will need to use one of the verbs twice.

come build hold make break follow
talk carry look hide begin haunt
know wear wait stare get have

THE HAUNTED HOUSE

Just after midnight, Julian and Anne, with Tommy the dog, arrived at the ................. (1) house, having first ................. (2) sure that no one would notice their absence. The house, ................. (3) in the seventeenth century, had been abandoned for several years and the ................. (4) windows stood ................. (5) like the eyes of a frightened ghost. Julian, ................. (6) by Anne and Tommy, took out his torch and pointed it towards the fence, ................. (7) for the gap which they had ................. (8) a few days earlier.

But how had their latest adventure ................. (9)? Julian had been sitting in a café ................. (10) a drink when he overheard some men ................. (11) about hiding 'the stuff' in the haunted house till things had quietened down ................. (12) that the police were looking for drug traffickers in the area, Julian had followed the men to their car, ................. (13) sure to take down the number.

Julian, Anne and Tommy the dog spent the next few evenings at the house, ................. (14) in one of the old stables next to the house, ................. (15) patiently for the arrival of the criminals. At last, their efforts were rewarded. They saw the lights of a car ................. (16) closer. When the car stopped, a man got out ................. (17) what seemed to be a large parcel. A few seconds later they saw another figure ................. (18) out of the car, ................. (19) a long black overcoat and ................. (20) something in his hand that, in the darkness, looked like a gun.

Happiness is being busy with the unimportant.
13c linking words and phrases

Here is a simple way of linking clauses by expressing contrast:
Jack works very hard but he doesn't have a lot of money.

- We can express the same idea using other conjunctions such as:
  Although Jack works very hard, he doesn't have a lot of money.
  Though Jack works very hard, he doesn't have a lot of money.
  In spite of / Despite working hard, Jack doesn't have a lot of money.
  Jack works hard, yet he doesn't have a lot of money.
  Jack works hard. Nevertheless, he doesn't have a lot of money.
  Jack works hard; however, he doesn't have a lot of money.
  On the one hand, Jack works hard; on the other, he doesn't have a lot of money.
  Whereas Jack works very hard, he doesn't have a lot of money.
  While Jack works very hard, he doesn't have a lot of money.

Here is a summary of the main linking words we can use when making contrasts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>linking word</th>
<th>followed by</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>rest of sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>although / (even) though</td>
<td>+ clause + comma</td>
<td>(Even) though she is successful,</td>
<td>she is so modest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in spite of / despite</td>
<td>+ noun</td>
<td>In spite of / Despite her success,</td>
<td>she is so modest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in spite of / despite</td>
<td>+ -ing</td>
<td>In spite of / Despite being successful,</td>
<td>she is so modest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in spite of / despite</td>
<td>+ the fact that + clause</td>
<td>In spite of / Despite the fact that she is successful,</td>
<td>she is so modest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ comma + clause</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nevertheless / however</td>
<td>+ comma + clause</td>
<td>She is very successful,</td>
<td>she is so modest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nevertheless / However,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whereas / while</td>
<td>+ clause</td>
<td>She is very successful, whereas / while</td>
<td>others are not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Even though is more emphatic than although or though. We use it to emphasise the surprising contrast of two facts:
I can still remember that day, even though it was a long time ago.

* We can reverse the order of the two clauses:
Even though it was a long time ago, I can still remember that day.

* We use however meaning 'in spite of this fact'. Nevertheless is also possible but is considered more formal:
What you said was true. However, / Nevertheless, it was a little unkind.

* We can also use however when we add information that seems surprising or contrasts with what we have just said:
This method has been accepted. However, it may not be the best one.

* We use whereas to say that something is true of one thing but it is not true of another:
Why are some cancers curable whereas others are not?

* We use while at the beginning of a clause to introduce information which contrasts with something we have said in the main clause:
The first car is made in Korea while the second one is manufactured in Japan.
Practice

1 Fill in each space with an appropriate word or phrase. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

1 .......................... she joined the company only a year ago, she has already been promoted twice.
2 Fast food is cheap ........................ food in a proper restaurant is more expensive.
3 We went out ................. the rain.
4 ................. he was only twelve he could run faster than any other child in the class.
5 Even .................. they loved each other, they decided to part.
6 The children are very clever. .................., they can be very noisy at times.

2 Match the items in the two columns. The first one has been done as an example.

Example: Even though he set off early, g

1 I like holidays in the mountains, .........
2 Despite public protests, ...........
3 In spite of high prices, ........
4 She works in a hospital, ........
5 The economic situation has been quite difficult. .......
6 Even though I don't really like going to football matches, .......

a while her husband is a taxi driver.
b consumer goods are selling well.
c However, it is getting better now.
d it'll be better than staying at home.
e the Government decided to build a road through the wood.
f whereas my wife loves the seaside.
(g he still arrived late.)

3 Use the words in the list to complete the gaps. You will need to use some words/phrases more than once. The first (0) is given as an example.

despite/in spite of however whereas although but even though

Shop till you drop!

. . despite/in spite of... (0) the fact that Kelly had lots of homework to do, she agreed to go shopping with her friend Justine. Justine loved to buy wild clubbing clothes, ...................... (1) Kelly was more of a jeans and T-shirt kind of girl. ...................... (2) the rain, they set off on Saturday morning for the town centre. Justine, as always, had far more cash than Kelly. ...................... (3) Kelly had an eye for a bargain. Lunch time found them happy and hungry at the local burger bar. ...................... (4) they'd spent nearly all their money, there were still a few shops that Justine wanted to visit (...................... (5) she'd promised to be frugal), and ...................... (6) having aching feet, they managed a couple more hours' shopping.

Although I disagree with what you say, I will defend to the death your right to say it.
VOLTAIRE
## Phrasal Verbs with Get

Here are some of the most common phrasal verbs with *get* and their uses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Meaning / Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get about</td>
<td>travel to different places</td>
<td>Jane gets about the city on her bike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get sth across</td>
<td>explain</td>
<td>How can I get across (to you) how I feel?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get around</td>
<td>travel a lot</td>
<td>In my job I get around quite a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get around to</td>
<td>finally do</td>
<td>I'll get around to your request later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get away</td>
<td>succeed in leaving</td>
<td>I should be able to get away from the office by seven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get away</td>
<td>escape</td>
<td>The three men got away in a stolen car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get away with sth</td>
<td>escape punishment</td>
<td>I don't know how they manage to get away with treating their workers like that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get back</td>
<td>return to a place</td>
<td>We'll probably get back about nine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get sth back; get back sth</td>
<td>have something returned</td>
<td>X We returned back home in time for dinner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get back to sb</td>
<td>phone someone later</td>
<td>✓ We got back home in time for dinner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get by</td>
<td>have just enough money to buy the things you need</td>
<td>Did you get that money back that you lent Bessie?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get sb down</td>
<td>make someone feel sad or unhappy</td>
<td>X Did you take back the money you lent her?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get sth down; get down sth</td>
<td>write down</td>
<td>✓ Did you get back the money you lent her?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get in</td>
<td>manage to enter</td>
<td>I'm a bit busy at the moment – can I get back to you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get in(to) somewhere</td>
<td>manage to enter (a country, university, etc.)</td>
<td>She can just get by on her pension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get off</td>
<td>leave (a bus, train, plane)</td>
<td>X I get on with the little I have.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on</td>
<td>make progress</td>
<td>✓ I get by with the little I have.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on (with sb)</td>
<td>have a friendly relationship with</td>
<td>All this delay and waiting is getting her down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on with sth</td>
<td>continue to do something</td>
<td>The reporters were trying to get down everything he said.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get over sth</td>
<td>get well after an illness</td>
<td>They arrived at the stadium in good time but they still couldn't get in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get sth over</td>
<td>succeed in communicating</td>
<td>How many of your students got into university?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get together</td>
<td>meet for a talk, to practise etc.</td>
<td>The bus driver will tell you where to get off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get round sth</td>
<td>find a solution to a problem</td>
<td>He's new but he's getting on fine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get through (to sb)</td>
<td>succeed in reaching sb by telephone</td>
<td>How does Gina get on with her colleagues?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Get on with your work!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>She's still trying to get over that cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parents never really get over the death of a child.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>There's no point in having brilliant ideas unless you can get them over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Let's get together next week and discuss it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Your mother can't stay here – we'll have to get round the problem somehow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>At last, I managed to get through to one of the managers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice

1 Fill in the correct particle or preposition in the following sentences.

1 Gill managed to get .......... from the man and call the police.
2 Just because he's been working here a long time, he thinks he can get .......... with being late every day.
3 I never lend books because I never get them .......... .
4 With four kids to feed, Jenny just about gets .......... on 100 dollars a week.
5 I was working hard to get .......... Cambridge University.
6 I tried your telephone number several times but I couldn't get .......... .
7 Although they often shout at each other, they actually get .......... well.
8 Jones was trying to get .......... when he was shot in the back.
9 When my work gets me .......... , I try to think of the summer holiday.
10 It took me a long time to get .......... my friend's death.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence using the word given. Do not change the word given.

Example: It's a difficult problem but we'll find a solution somehow.

get
It's a difficult problem but we'll get round it somehow.

1 They are very friendly with their neighbours.
get
They .......... with their neighbours.
2 I've been phoning all day but I still haven't managed to speak to her.
get
I've been phoning all day but I haven't been .......... to her.

3 Please just continue with what you're doing until I return.
get
I'd like .......... what you're doing until I return.
4 It is important to make it clear to young people that smoking isn't cool.
get
We .......... to young people that smoking isn't cool.
5 I find stories about death depressing.
gets
It .......... to hear stories about death.

3 Read the text below and add a word which best fits each space.

Getting away from it all

After a long hard winter I was looking forward to getting .......... (1). Spring in Seville seemed just the thing to help me get .......... (2) my winter depression. In my job (I work for an advertising company), I don't get .......... (3) very much and things had been getting me .......... (4) lately so I was very keen to .......... (5) up and go, leaving everything behind. I knew everything would still be there waiting for me when I got .......... (6) but for ten days I would be able to get .......... (7) from it all. The problem was I hadn't been getting .......... (8) well with my boss in the last few months – we didn't see eye to eye about policy and I just couldn't get .......... (9) to her how I saw the future of the company. Moneywise the job's fine – I make more than enough to get .......... (10) and I suppose prospects are good – I want to get .......... (11) in my career and the job gives me lots of opportunities for promotion. But some day soon I will have to get .......... (12) the difficulties I'm having with my boss.

If you can't get away for a holiday, stay home and tip every second person you meet.
We use most suffixes to change a word to a different part of speech (See also 1e, 3e, 4e, 10e, 12e). A noun + al makes an adjective:
comic (noun) + al = comical (adjective)

- Here are lists with less common suffixes which change nouns into other parts of speech. Note the many changes in spelling:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>+ suffix</th>
<th>= adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accident</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>accidental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bible</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>biblical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cervix</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>cervical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clinic</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>clinical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crime</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>criminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>critic</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culture</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>cultural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habit</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>habitual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>musical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nation</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>national</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origin</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profession</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>professional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>race</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>racial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>season</td>
<td>+ al</td>
<td>seasonal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>+ ical</td>
<td>economical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>historical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mystical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>poetical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>surgical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(but: industry - industrial)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Some adjectives ending in al do not have a first part that exists separately, for example:
  abnormal diagonal
- We can use most adjectives which end in ical as adjectives ending with ic, for example:
economic poetic historic
Surgical cannot be shortened in this way.
- A few words ending in al are nouns. The first parts are verbs, for example:
  approval (from approve)
  proposal (from propose)
  survival (from survive)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>+ suffix</th>
<th>= adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>+ ive</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addict</td>
<td>+ ive</td>
<td>addictive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effect</td>
<td>+ ive</td>
<td>effective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expense</td>
<td>+ ive</td>
<td>expensive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The first part of some of these adjectives can also be verbs, for example:
  active (from act)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>+ suffix</th>
<th>= adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>danger</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envy</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>envious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fame</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>famous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fury</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>furious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glory</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>glorious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industry</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>industrious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jealousy</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>jealous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humour</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>humorous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pity</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>piteous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>space</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>spacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>+ ous</td>
<td>studious</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Many adjectives ending in ous do not have a first part that exists separately and are not formed from nouns, for example:
anxious curious enormous generous noxious obvious precious serious

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>+ suffix</th>
<th>= adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>elite</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>elitist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marx</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>Marxist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terror</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>terrorist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sex</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>sexist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can make nouns from most adjectives which end in ist by changing the suffix to ism:
elitism Marxism terrorism sexism
• We can also use the suffix *ist* to make nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>+ suffix</th>
<th>= noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arson</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>arsonist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bigamy</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>bigamist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canoe</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>canoeist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cello</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>cellist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novel</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>novelist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piano</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>pianist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>science</td>
<td>+ ist</td>
<td>scientist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• A few nouns ending in *ist* are formed from adjectives, for example: fatalist (from fatal) loyalist (from loyal)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>+ suffix</th>
<th>= noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duke</td>
<td>+ dom</td>
<td>dukedom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free</td>
<td>+ dom</td>
<td>freedom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king</td>
<td>+ dom</td>
<td>kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheik</td>
<td>+ dom</td>
<td>sheikdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>star</td>
<td>+ dom</td>
<td>stardom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• A few nouns ending in *dom* are formed from verbs, for example: boredom (from bore)

We can use the suffix *en* to make verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>breadth</td>
<td>broad</td>
<td>broaden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depth</td>
<td>deep</td>
<td>deepen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threat</td>
<td>threatening</td>
<td>threaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>width</td>
<td>wide</td>
<td>widen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**US spelling**

Words which end in *our* in British English are usually spelt *or* in American English:

- favour – favor
- favourite – favorite
- labour – labor
- behaviour – behavior

• Both *ise* (realise, criticise) and *ize* (realize, criticize) spellings are acceptable in British English, but American English uses only *ize*.

### Practice

**Fill each space with an appropriate word from 13e.**

1. The hijacker ............... to shoot the hostages, if he was not allowed to go free.
2. Although she didn’t have her parents’ ............... , she got married anyway.
3. You’re always very ............... of my work – you never praise me.
4. We can’t buy that car! It’s far too ............... .
5. When Peter saw Helen’s brand new computer, he felt so ............... .
6. Journalists claim that ............... of expression is essential if they are to report the truth.
7. Many drugs are ............... and you should avoid taking them.
8. Jane Austen is a famous English ............... .
9. Only a ............... would say men are more intelligent than women!
10. I’m absolutely ............... with you for scratching my car.
11. They say travel ............... the mind.
12. Do ............... footballers earn too much money?
2 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word.

Example: Going by bus is cheaper than going by train.

economical

It is more economical to go by bus than by train.

1 His success made everyone else really envious.

diffused

Everyone ................................ at his success.

2 The committee accepted what he proposed.

made

He ...................................... which the committee accepted.

3 If you behave better in class you’ll learn more.

improves

If your ................................ , you’ll learn more.

4 The athletes are the heroes of the whole country.

national

The athletes ................................ heroes.

5 This book will give you a broader knowledge of English.

broaden

This book ................................ of English.

6 Odysseus really existed, he is not just a myth.

historical

Odysseus ................................ , not just a myth.

3 Complete the crossword by using the clues and the words on pages 240 and 241.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Across</th>
<th>Down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 An adjectival form of 'pity'.

2 Great Britain is also called the United .......

3 When he found out about her affair, he flew into a ....... rage.

4 The adjectival form of 'bigamy'.

5 Hilary and Jackie is a film about the ....... Jacqueline du Pré.

6 We had several ....... moments waiting for the test results.

7 Margery is eighty-eight but she is still very ....... and walks everywhere.

8 .......s are still working on a cure for AIDS.

9 They were devastated by the ....... loss of their baby.

7 You must be a competent ....... to attempt shooting those rapids.
Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning.

**TALENT**

My **favourite** (0) composer is Chopin and I am fortunate enough to have a friend who is also a very gifted .................... (1).

As a ..................... (2) musician, she believes strongly that ..................... (3) ability is mostly something you learn, not a ..................... (4) that you are born with. She thinks that ..................... (5) students can improve their ability enormously. I feel really ..................... (6) when I hear my friend perform and the ecstatic ..................... (7) that she gets from her audiences at the end of a ..................... (8). Both the public and ..................... (9) agree that she is one of the country's most talented ..................... (10). The huge amount of money she earns gives her the ..................... (11) to do almost anything that she likes, which I, as a humble ..................... (12), cannot compete with.
Entry test

Underline the correct preposition in questions 1–5.

1 I'm busy now – I'll be with you in/at a couple of minutes.
2 They'll be going in/to Paris for a few days at Easter.
3 We'd been waiting ages in/at the bus stop before the bus arrived.
4 I read about the fire to/in the Sunday News.
5 We arrived at/in France after a long delay.

Now look at 14a on page 246.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 6–10.

6 Most parents do not approve ............... their children smoking.
   A about  B of  C on  D to
7 We spent all night discussing ............... the film.
   A for  B about  C with  D –
8 I don't have to tell you the advantages ............. a university education.
   A of  B in  C from  D with
9 What's your opinion ............ Spielberg's new film?
   A for  B from  C to  D of
10 They blamed him ............. the accident.
   A with  B of  C for  D about

Now look at 14b on page 250.
Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 11–15.

11 Apparently, .......... is cheaper to go by train.
   A that       B this       C it       D there

12 .......... are much cheaper flights at the weekend.
   A It        B There       C They      D –

13 .......... seems that no one really knows where he's gone.
   A It        B There       C He        D One

14 Suddenly, .......... was a loud crash as the car hit the lamppost.
   A it        B this       C there     D what

15 .......... must be something we can do to help her.
   A There     B He         C It        D We

Now look at 14c on page 252.

Underline the correct answer A, B, C or D to fill the spaces in 16–20.

16 Can you please be quiet for a bit – I'm .......... the phone.
   A to      B in        C on       D at

17 They sat down .......... a corner table and called the waiter.
   A in       B at        C on       D to

18 She turned up for dinner .......... an old pair of jeans and a T-shirt.
   A into     B to        C with     D in

19 Isn't Antigone a play .......... Sophocles?
   A from     B of        C by       D for

20 It was my fault we lost the game, .......... some extent anyway.
   A in       B at        C from     D to

Now look at 14d on page 254.

For questions 21–25 fill in the spaces with the correct particle in the list.

back off out through up

21 I will not put .......... with your rudeness any longer.

22 If you just hang on, I'll put you .......... to the marketing department.

23 Please make less noise – you're putting me .......... my game.

24 She's still busy so she's put the meeting .......... an hour.

25 The army had to be called in to help put .......... the forest fire.

Now look at 14e on page 257.
### Grammar

#### 14a prepositions of time, place and movement

**prepositions in time phrases**

The following are the main prepositions which we use in time phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>used with</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| at          | • clock times, points of time in the day  
• weekends and holiday periods  
• points in time  | at nine o'clock; at 6.35  
at midnight, at noon, at dawn, at lunch time, at dinner time, at night  
at the weekend, at weekends, at Christmas, at Easter;  
at Ramadan, at the beginning, at the end, at last, at the moment, at present, at the time, at times  |
| in          | • the main parts of the day  
• months, years, seasons, centuries  
• events which will happen at the end of a period  
• at a point in time during a period | in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening  
in March, in 1999, in the autumn, in the twentieth century  
in an hour, in a couple of minutes, in a week, in a moment  |
| on          | • specific dates and days | × I'll be back until in an hour.  
✓ I'll be back in an hour.  
in the beginning, in the end  
in the night, in the evening, in a day  
on August 8, on Tuesday, on Wednesday, on weekdays, on New Year's Day, on Christmas Day, on the day of departure/arrival, on Wednesday morning, on a fine sunny day  |

#### on time or in time?
- **On time** means ‘not late, at the time expected’:
  The Intercity express always leaves **on time** so it doesn’t get there late.
- We can use right, dead or bang with **on time** to emphasize that it is exactly at the right time:
  The train arrived **right on time**.
  I finished my essay **dead on time**.
  Be **bang on time** or we’ll have to leave without you.
- **In time** means ‘early enough’:
  We got there **in time** to see most of the film but we missed the beginning.
  Hurry and we’ll be there **in time** for lunch.

#### at the end or in the end?
- **At the end** is a prepositional phrase usually followed by a noun; it refers to the final point or part:
  At the end of the book, they get married.
  At the end of the century, there were still too many people without food to eat.
- **At the end** is also an adverb which refers to the point at which something occurs:
  You can check your answers **at the end**.
- **In the end** is a link phrase and means ‘finally, after a long time’:
  **In the end**, we found a taxi and arrived at the theatre on time.
  She thought about it for some time and, **in the end**, she decided to go to America.
**prepositions in place phrases**

The following are the main prepositions which we use in place phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **at**      | • shows a point in space where something is happening  
              • useful phrases: | There was a huge queue at the bus stop.  
                            at the bottom of the pile, at the top of the hill,  
                            at the corner of the street, at the crossroads,  
                            at home, at Brenda's, at school, at work, at a hotel,  
                            at the table, at university, at the wedding, at the funeral  
                            X I'm fed up with being in my home all the time.  
                            ✓ I'm fed up with being at home all the time.  
            | | Our house is at the end of the road.  
                            We live at number 18 Hill Street.  
                            I waited at the door for five minutes.  
                            No running is allowed in the building.  
                            Come in the office. |
| **in**      | • tells us that something taking place is inside rather than outside: it can be used with verbs of movement  
              • useful phrases: | in a chair, in an armchair, in bed, in a book,  
                            in the centre, in the country, in the world,  
                            in hospital, in prison, in a hotel,  
                            in the middle of the road, in the centre of town,  
                            in the newspaper, in the north/south,  
                            in the open air, in the park, in the mountains,  
                            in a queue, in the sky, in town, in the city,  
                            in London, in Europe, in a place/area, etc. |
| **on**      | • useful phrases: | We arrived in the United States on Wednesday.  
                            I live in the old town.  
                            I am in the living-room.  
                            Wait for me in the pub.  
                            How many people are in the room?  
                            She likes lying on the beach.  
                            They spent the summer on an island.  
                            They have a house on the coast.  
                            on the island of Crete, on board, on a cruise,  
                            on an excursion, on a trip, on a tour,  
                            on Earth, on a stool, on a farm, on a mountain,  
                            on the outskirts, on page three, on the pavement,  
                            on the radio, on TV, on the screen, on the streets,  
                            on top of the box, on the corner of the street |

---

**We arrived in Loutro on the island of Crete and found a small hotel at the end of the bay.**
prepositions in movement phrases

at
We use at with arrive in sentences such as:
We arrived at the airport/at our destination.
• We also use at to show the person or thing that an action is aimed at:
They threw eggs at the speaker.
• We use throw to when we want someone to catch something:
She threw the pencil to me.

into
We use into with verbs that mean ‘to move from outside to inside an area’:
When she came into the room, they fell silent.
I saw Jim going into the paper shop.
She got back into bed.
They’re moving Stephen into a different class.

to
We generally use to with verbs of movement including go, come, travel, run, send, take, return, get, walk:
I am going to Room Three for a seminar.
I returned to England last month.
• We also use to with nouns that suggest movement, including welcome, journey, trip, stroll:
Our journey to Tibet was unforgettable.
Welcome to Britain!
• When been means ‘visited’, we use to:
I’ve been to Italy several times.
• When been means ‘stayed or lived’ we use in:
I’ve been in France for five days now.

towards
Towards means moving or pointing in a particular direction.
He noticed two policemen coming towards him.
All the windows face towards the river.
• We also use towards with nouns to suggest aiming to achieve:
They are working towards an agreement.

Practice

1 Fill in each space in the following sentences with in, on, at, to or into.

1 …… the morning we went …… the museum and then had lunch …… the cafeteria.
2 Look! You have mud …… your shoes. Wipe them …… the mat before you come …… the house.
3 They went …… the restaurant and sat down …… a corner table.
4 I’ve got to go …… town this morning but we can meet later …… the morning, …… John’s house.
5 It says …… the newspaper that they’re getting married …… the spring …… a small church …… the island of Santorini.
6 There I was, sitting …… the waiting-room when who do you think came …… the room?
7 …… Tuesday morning, I’m going …… town to put some money …… my bank account.
8 The coffee’s …… the table and there’s some sugar …… the cupboard if you want some.
9 The film starts …… eight o’clock and I’d like to be …… the cinema …… time to see the start of the film.
10 Mr Fisher is …… Boston now but he’ll be …… his way back …… London …… a couple of days’ time.
11 I saw Jessica …… Oxford Street …… Friday afternoon and she told me she’s still …… university.
12 Is there anything …… the television this evening? Have a look in the paper — I think the TV guide is …… the back page.
13 She stood up and walked …… the window. She saw a woman sitting …… a bench throwing a ball …… a dog, who caught it and brought it back …… her.
14 She was standing …… the queue …… the bus stop, with her back …… me.
15 I had never been …… the United States before so, when we arrived …… JFK airport …… that spring morning in 1989, I felt very excited.
2 Add the appropriate preposition of time to these phrases.

- present...... the beginning
- arrival...... a moment
- 6.30pm...... last
- the afternoon...... the year 2000
- Wednesday afternoon...... her birthday
- an hour...... midnight
- weekends...... March 25
- weekdays...... a winter's night
- a cold day...... times
- a week...... the summer

3 Add the appropriate preposition of place to these phrases.

- the corner of the road...... the streets
- the back...... work all day
- the crossroads...... the open air
- the television...... home
- a journey...... the park
- the bus stop...... a chair
- hospital...... the door
- Europe...... a queue
- Earth...... the bottom
- the north...... top

4 Read the text and add of the preposition which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.

**Going to the zoo**

On (0) Saturday morning, we took the children (1) the zoo because (2) school they are doing a project (3) the moment on zoos – and we thought they should go (4) one and do some research (5) the spot. Later on, when we got home, they looked up some information (6) the encyclopaedia and we found out that the first public zoo (7) the world was opened (8) Paris (9) 1793; this was the famous Jardin des Plantes. (10) it were animals, of course, but there was also a museum and a botanical garden. The next big zoo to be opened was (11) 1829 in Regent's Park (12) London. (13) Britain, there are now many more zoos. (14) Whipsnade Zoo, in Bedfordshire, animals from all parts of the world thrive, free to roam (15) the surrounding countryside.

*Truth lies at the bottom of a well.*
DEMOCRITUS
verb + preposition

Here are summaries of the way common verbs combine with particular prepositions or particles (in the heading):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>about</th>
<th>with</th>
<th>to</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>agree</td>
<td>apply</td>
<td>apologise</td>
<td>approve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>deal</td>
<td>belong</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>dream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>compare</td>
<td>listen</td>
<td>admire</td>
<td>accuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>remind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>cope</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>punish</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>provide</td>
<td>refer</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quarrel</td>
<td>sympathise</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>consist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worry</td>
<td>collide</td>
<td>shout</td>
<td>taste</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

at | in | from | on
---|---|------|---
arrive | arrive | differ | insist |
laugh | succeed | resign | rely |
look | believe | suffer | congratulate |
shout | involve | stop | bet |
joke | persist | recover | decide |
stare |        | come | count |

noun + preposition

Here are summaries of the way nouns combine with particular prepositions (in the headings):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>with</th>
<th>of</th>
<th>to</th>
<th>from</th>
<th>about</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relationship</td>
<td>delay</td>
<td>damage</td>
<td>departure</td>
<td>discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trouble</td>
<td>description</td>
<td>reaction</td>
<td>protection</td>
<td>information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>reply</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>quarrel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contract</td>
<td>idea</td>
<td>solution</td>
<td>extract</td>
<td>argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agreement</td>
<td>lack</td>
<td>objection</td>
<td>phone call</td>
<td>debate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harmony</td>
<td>map</td>
<td>thanks</td>
<td></td>
<td>hesitation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>between</th>
<th>in</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>choice</td>
<td>decrease</td>
<td>excuse</td>
<td>advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comparison</td>
<td>delay</td>
<td>reason</td>
<td>attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>expert</td>
<td>reputation</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contact</td>
<td>failure</td>
<td>respect</td>
<td>expert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relationship</td>
<td>increase</td>
<td>responsibility</td>
<td>talk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

connect with, connect to, connection between

- Connect to means 'to join two or more things':
  First, connect the speakers to the CD player.
- Connect with means 'to realise that two facts or events are connected':
  The police did not connect her with the crime.
- Connection between means 'the way two facts, ideas or events are related to each other':
  There is a proven connection between smoking and cancer.

hear of, hear about, hear from

- Hear of means 'to know that something or someone exists':
  I've never heard of him in my life.
- Hear about means 'to find out a piece of information':
  Did you hear about the fire?
- Hear from means 'to receive news from someone e.g. in a letter or by e-mail':
  Have you heard from Sarah lately?

pay by, pay for, pay in

- We pay for something when we buy it:
  She paid $200 for the use of the room.
- Pay by means 'pay using':
  Can I pay by Visa?
- We pay in a particular currency:
  Can I pay in euros/English pounds?

shout at, to, for, in

- Shout at somebody means 'to say something very loudly because you are angry':
  I wish you'd stop shouting at the children.
- Shout to somebody means 'to shout so they can hear':
  The children shouted to each other.
- Shout for means 'to shout in order to get':
  He rushed out of the house, shouting for help.
  I shouted for the children to come and eat.
- Shout in + noun means 'to shout because of':
  He shouted in pain as the ball hit him.
Practice

1 Which preposition goes with the following groups of verbs and nouns?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verbs</th>
<th>preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object, refer, manage, explain, compare, invite, talk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive, blame, charge, care, apply, arrest, search</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell, boast, care, complain, argue, hear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smile, throw, glance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch, concentrate, depend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge, communicate, connect, argue, interfere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nouns</th>
<th>preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>damage, invitation, solution, letter, attitude</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheque, demand, need, advertisement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge, experience, opinion, plan, drawing / painting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Fill in each space in the following sentences with the correct preposition.

1 I was tired .......... being an accountant – I needed a change.
2 The Government have known .......... the scandal for months.
3 Why are you staring .......... me like that?
4 On Friday we had a nice long discussion .......... the wording of the proposal.
5 We’d like to discuss our contract with you and agree .......... new terms, if possible.
6 It’s hard to see the difference .......... the centre and the liberal party.
7 Luke is afraid .......... the dark.
8 He’s an expert .......... electronic music.
9 The twins differed .......... each other in many ways.
10 I was ashamed .......... having lied to her.
11 I don’t think Branson is capable .......... committing murder.

12 While he was writing on the blackboard, the kids were shouting .......... each other. It was chaos.
13 I don’t see any connection .......... the book and the film at all.
14 Mother disapproves .......... every boyfriend I bring home.
15 Have you ever heard .......... a painter called Tiepolo?

3 Read the letter below and add the preposition which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.

Dear Ms Jones
I am writing .......... in (0) reply to your advertisement .......... (1) secretaries to work .......... (2) your central offices. I had already heard .......... (3) you from a friend of mine, Jenny Mansfield, who worked .......... (4) you a few years ago .......... (5) the sales department. I would be interested .......... (6) applying .......... (7) a full-time post. I am quite experienced .......... (8) secretarial work, and would have little difficulty .......... (9) the duties the current job involves. I think I’m quite skilled .......... (10) word processing. I also have wide experience .......... (11) handling members of the public. I enclose a reference .......... (12) my previous employer and copies .......... (13) my certificates. I would be happy to come for an interview at any time which is convenient for you.
I look forward to hearing .......... (14) you.

Yours sincerely,

Anne Dale

I like talking to a brick wall; it’s the only thing in the world that never contradicts me.
Oscar Wilde
impersonal uses of *it*

The use of *it* allows us to put the topic of a sentence at the end, and places more emphasis on what you want to talk about. Compare:

*Marking test papers can be very boring.* (emphasis on ‘boring’)

*It is very boring marking test papers.* (emphasis on ‘marking test papers’)

Here is a summary of the uses of *it* as a subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>use</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• to focus on an adjective:</td>
<td><em>It is useful to know how to use a computer.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>It’s essential to bring a raincoat.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✗ <em>It’s easy to buy what you want in a big city.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✓ <em>It’s easy to buy what you want in a big city.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to talk about the weather</td>
<td><em>It has been sunny all week.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>It snowed heavily last winter.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to tell the time</td>
<td><em>It has just gone six o’clock.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to introduce an action</td>
<td><em>It is going to take five hours to get there.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to describe a place</td>
<td><em>It was calm and beautiful up in the mountains.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to comment on a fact</td>
<td><em>It was surprising that so few people came to the show.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*it + be + adjective (+ that)*

We can use this structure with a variety of adjectives. We can omit *that*:

*It was amazing (that) no one was hurt.*
*It was funny that both of us thought the same thing.*
*It is possible (that) you were right after all.*

• Here are more examples of adjectives we can use with this structure:
  - awful
  - bad
  - essential
  - good
  - interesting
  - likely
  - obvious
  - possible
  - sad
  - strange
  - surprising
  - true
  - wonderful

*there*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>use</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• to say that something exists</td>
<td><em>There are some very good films on this week.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✗ <em>If you are not busy, is something I would like to ask you.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✓ <em>If you’re not busy, there is something I’d like to ask you.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to mention the presence of something</td>
<td><em>I think there’s somebody in the living-room.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to say something has happened or will happen</td>
<td><em>There’s been an accident at the crossroads.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>There’s going to be trouble.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• with modal verbs to express possibility and probability</td>
<td><em>There must be a solution to the problem.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>There may be life on other planets.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• with <em>seems</em> and <em>appears</em></td>
<td><em>There seems to be a bit of problem.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to explain a problem</td>
<td><em>There seems to be a traffic jam further up the road.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**There + be: singular or plural?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>be in singular form</th>
<th>be in plural form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>there + be + countable noun</td>
<td>If there's any chance of you coming, let us know.</td>
<td>Once upon a time there were three pigs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On the table, there was a pencil, a pen and some papers.</td>
<td>(not possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There was a lot of noise outside.</td>
<td>There were a lot of people in the room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There is some oil in the garage.</td>
<td>There are a few people waiting outside.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* In spoken and informal English, there and the auxiliary are usually contracted:  
  * There is... ⇔ There's...  
  * There would be... ⇔ There'd be...  
  * There will be... ⇔ There'll be...

**Practice**

1. Fill each space in these sentences with **it** or **there** and an appropriate verb.

   **Example:** It takes me one hour to get home.

   1. ................................ very expensive to buy a new car.
   2. ................................ difficult trying to reach her by phone so I sent a fax.
   3. He put his coat on because ................................ getting cold.
   4. ................................ to be some mistake – I've never met you before in my life.
   5. ................................ several fights outside the stadium but no one was hurt.
   6. ................................ been some time since I wrote to you, as I've been very busy.
   7. ................................ a pity you didn't come to the party; we had a lovely time.
   9. ................................ be some kind of explanation for such strange behaviour.
   10. ................................ no special way of doing it.

2. Fill each space in the paragraph below with **it** or **there**.

   **A CHANGE IN THE WEATHER**

   ................................ (1) has always been a disadvantage for visitors to Britain that the weather is very changeable and that ................................ (2) is always raining, even in summer. ................................ (3) are countless jokes about British weather and no doubt ............ (4) is a good reason for their popularity. ............ (5) is no smoke without fire. ............ (6) doesn't however seem to be the case any more that Britain does not have a summer. In fact, ............ (7) seems to be less and less rainfall nowadays, which is a worldwide phenomenon. What has happened is that ............ (8) has been a rise in the temperature of the planet as a whole. ............ (9) is getting hotter every year to such an extent that ............ (10) is no longer necessary to go abroad if you want to get a sun-tan. ............ (11) will be much quicker and cheaper to go to Brighton or Bournemouth. ............ (12) is thought that global warming is having both positive and negative effects in different parts of the world. ............ (13) have been several conferences to find a solution to the problem but ............ (14) has become obvious that ............ (15) is no simple answer to the problem.
Vocabulary

**14d prepositional phrases**

We often use prepositions in common phrases where little variation is possible. Some prepositions go with groups of similar words:
- **at** - at breakfast, at lunch, at dinner, at supper
- **for** - for example, for instance
- **in** - in a dress, in pyjamas, in a pair of jeans, in a skirt, in uniform
- **on** - on e-mail, on the phone

*Prepositions can combine to make compound phrases:
- **out of date**, **out of fashion**

- Words with related meanings often go with different prepositions:
  - *in* cash / dollars - *by* credit card
  - *on* earth - *in* the world
  - *by* accident - *on* purpose
  - at the bottom - *in* the bottom left-hand corner
  - at the door - *on* the phone
  - *by* car - *on* foot
  - on holiday - **at** work
  - *in* a loud voice - **at** the top of his voice

Here are more common phrases with prepositions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at</th>
<th>by</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>out of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at all times</td>
<td>by accident</td>
<td>for a change</td>
<td>in conclusion</td>
<td>on behalf of</td>
<td>out of order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at first sight</td>
<td>by heart</td>
<td>for ages</td>
<td>in the west</td>
<td>on condition that</td>
<td>out of practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the moment</td>
<td>by chance</td>
<td>for breakfast</td>
<td>in control</td>
<td>on no account</td>
<td>out of favour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the age of</td>
<td>by mistake</td>
<td>for fear of</td>
<td>in danger</td>
<td>on my own</td>
<td>out of the woods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the beginning</td>
<td>by the way</td>
<td>for fun / pleasure</td>
<td>in favour of</td>
<td>on purpose</td>
<td>out of the way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at breakfast</td>
<td>by bus / train</td>
<td>for good</td>
<td>in general</td>
<td>on second thoughts</td>
<td>out of touch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the bottom of</td>
<td>by sea / land / air</td>
<td>for granted</td>
<td>in other words</td>
<td>on the whole</td>
<td>out of work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the bus stop</td>
<td>by example</td>
<td>for ever</td>
<td>in time</td>
<td>on business</td>
<td>out of breath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at sea</td>
<td>by sight</td>
<td>for luck</td>
<td>in cash</td>
<td>on a diet</td>
<td>out of control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the corner</td>
<td>by means of</td>
<td>for life</td>
<td>in a uniform</td>
<td>on arrival</td>
<td>out of danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at dawn</td>
<td>by no means</td>
<td>for nothing</td>
<td>in a dress</td>
<td>on average</td>
<td>out of date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at last</td>
<td>by cheque</td>
<td>for ever</td>
<td>in haste</td>
<td>on foot</td>
<td>out of doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the door</td>
<td>day by day</td>
<td>for sale</td>
<td>in German</td>
<td>on the other hand</td>
<td>out of fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the end</td>
<td>by Beethoven</td>
<td>for short</td>
<td>in pencil</td>
<td>on line</td>
<td>out of luck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at first</td>
<td>by air mail</td>
<td>for a visit</td>
<td>in a group</td>
<td>on duty</td>
<td>out of fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at once</td>
<td>by e-mail</td>
<td>for a walk</td>
<td>in addition (to)</td>
<td>on fire</td>
<td>out of fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at home</td>
<td>by fax / phone</td>
<td>for a while</td>
<td>in answer (to)</td>
<td>on horseback</td>
<td>out of sight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at arm's length</td>
<td>by far</td>
<td>for now</td>
<td>in future</td>
<td>on the left / right</td>
<td>out of tune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at least</td>
<td>by the rules</td>
<td>for your birthday</td>
<td>in general</td>
<td>on the floor</td>
<td>out of reach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the same time</td>
<td>by the arm</td>
<td>for better or worse</td>
<td>in the news</td>
<td>on the phone</td>
<td>out of earshot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at daybreak</td>
<td>by telepathy</td>
<td>for my sake</td>
<td>in news</td>
<td>on the screen</td>
<td>out of money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at work</td>
<td>by hand</td>
<td>for the moment</td>
<td>in pairs</td>
<td>on holiday</td>
<td>out of time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in a loud voice</td>
<td>on holiday</td>
<td>out of pocket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>from</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to some extent</td>
<td>up to date</td>
<td>from A to B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the point</td>
<td>up to you</td>
<td>from bad to worse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to my surprise</td>
<td>up and down</td>
<td>from place to place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to your advantage</td>
<td>up till/until</td>
<td>from time to time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to our amazement</td>
<td>up the hill</td>
<td>from morning to night</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to your health</td>
<td>up the spout</td>
<td>from now on</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to some degree</td>
<td>up to no good</td>
<td>from my point of view</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to you</td>
<td>up as far as</td>
<td>from flour/wood/plastic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**in the beginning or at the beginning?**

- In the beginning (not usually with of) means 'near the start of an event':
  
  *In the beginning, the South had some success.*

- At the beginning of means 'at the very start of an event':
  
  *At the beginning of the Civil War, the fort was attacked.*

**at the end or in the end?**

- At the end (of) refers to the final part (of a period of time, a road, a book, a film, etc.):
  
  *He’s leaving at the end of October.*
  *Their house is at the end of the road.*

- In the end means ‘finally’:
  
  *We waited and waited; in the end, we decided to go back home.*

**by bus or on the bus?**

- By bus refers to using busses as a means of transport:
  
  *I usually go to work by bus.*

- We can use on the bus for specific journeys to particular destinations:
  
  *I came home on the bus.*
  *If we go there on the bus, we’ll have more time to chat.*

**made of, made out of or made from?**

- We use made of when it is obvious what substance has been used to make something:
  
  *A little doll made of wood.*

- We use made out of when we emphasise the substance from which something is made:
  
  *It’s made out of wood, not plastic.*

- We use made from to say what ingredients have been used:
  
  *Bread is made from flour, water and yeast.*

*Joe almost gave up but in the end he reached the top of the mountain.*
1 Fill in each space with an appropriate preposition.

1. The report, which will be ready .......... the beginning of next week, will be sent to you .......... e-mail.
2. I agree with you .......... some extent but .......... general I would have put things differently.
3. .......... the beginning, I thought the book was interesting but .......... the end of the book the hero gets killed.
4. He's been .......... of work for over six months and can't afford to go .......... holiday.
5. He thought the chair was made .......... of wood but .......... his surprise it was all plastic.
6. .......... the top left corner of the picture I can see a hill; .......... the bottom of the hill there is a bicycle.
7. He was driving .......... the middle of the road and seemed to be completely .......... of control.
8. .......... my opinion, you can't go to the party .......... a dress like that.
9. .......... dessert, we had a lovely cake made .......... chocolate and almonds.
10. There's a shop .......... the corner of the street that sells vegetables .......... morning till night.

2 Choose the correct word in each of the following sentences:

1. From my point of opinion / view, there's little advantage in buying shares now.
2. His health is going from bad to worse / ill.
3. The kids were really in a silly mood / behaviour after the party.
4. I don't know whether it's true but that's what it said on the radio / newspaper.
5. I can get the information to you more quickly if you're on phone / e-mail.
6. You don't think he would have broken the window on accident / purpose, do you?
7. He is the officer in charge / power of the investigation.
8. When Romeo met Juliet, it was love at first sight / look.
9. Why don't you send the message by e-mail / phone?
10. After the accident, she was rushed to hospital and is now out of danger / risk.

3 Read the text below and add the word which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.

Living a long time

It is often said that Japanese people, .......... (0) average, live much longer than Europeans. .......... (1) a large extent this must be due to the food most Japanese people eat since .......... (2) the point of view of lifestyle, life .......... (3) modern Japan is no less stressful than ours .......... (4) the West. The Japanese live .......... (5) a diet largely made up .......... (6) fish and rice. .......... (7) lunch time a typical Japanese family will consume .......... (8) least twice as many vegetables as we do in Europe. .......... (9) comparison with Europeans, the Japanese eat far less meat and fewer potatoes; .......... (10) the same time, they eat seven times more fresh fish than we do which makes their diet much healthier .......... (11). It would be fair to say that, .......... (12) general, the Japanese consume far less sugar than Europeans, though the modern Japanese – frequent visitors .......... (13) Europe .......... (14) business or .......... (15) pleasure – are discovering the pleasures and dangers of western-style eating habits.


## phrasal verbs with *put*

Here are some of the most common phrasal verbs with *put* and their uses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>put sth across;</em></td>
<td>explain ideas clearly</td>
<td>The union representative was able to <em>put across</em> her argument effectively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put across sth</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>The course will help <em>put over</em> your ideas more clearly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sth over;</em></td>
<td>explain ideas clearly</td>
<td>Let me <em>put</em> these books <em>away</em>. <em>Put away</em> your toys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put over sth</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>They’ve <em>put back</em> the meeting till next Thursday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put away sth</em></td>
<td>place something where it is usually kept</td>
<td>I’ll <em>put</em> your name <em>down</em> on the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sth back;</em></td>
<td>postpone, arrange to do something later</td>
<td>She <em>puts me down</em> all the time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put back sth</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Professor Kaplan has <em>put forward</em> a theory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sth down</em></td>
<td>write on a piece of paper</td>
<td>The meeting’s been <em>put off</em> till next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sb down</em></td>
<td>criticise somebody</td>
<td><em>Put</em> your coat <em>on</em> before you go outside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sth forward;</em></td>
<td>suggest a proposal, offer an idea for consideration</td>
<td>It’s freezing. <em>Put</em> the heater <em>on</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put forward sth</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Put</em> that cigarette <em>out</em> immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sth off; put off sth</em></td>
<td>arrange to do something later</td>
<td>Hold on; I’ll try to <em>put you through</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sth on; put on sth</em></td>
<td>to put clothing on your body; switch on a light, electrical equipment</td>
<td>They’re <em>putting up</em> some new office blocks. Our landlord <em>put the rent up</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sth out; put out sth</em></td>
<td>make a flame or fire stop burning</td>
<td>We can <em>put you up</em> on the sofa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sb through</em></td>
<td>build</td>
<td>How do you <em>put up with</em> all this noise?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sth up</em></td>
<td>increase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put sb up</em></td>
<td>let somebody stay overnight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>put up with sth/sb</em></td>
<td>accept an unpleasant situation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practice

**1** Complete these sentences with an appropriate phrasal verb.

1. I will not ............... your bad temper any longer! I’ve had enough.
2. All the hotels are full – can you ............... me ............... for the night?
3. She’s an excellent speaker – she really knows how to ............... a message.
4. I always ............... a couple of kilos over Christmas.
5. Please don’t leave that there, ............... it ............... .
6. Can you ............... me ............... to Mr Smith, please.
7. The Government has decided to ............... income tax again!
8. The building caught fire but the firemen soon ............... it ............... .
Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first sentence using the word given. Do not change the word given. Use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. A good teacher should be able to explain things clearly.
   **put**
   A good teacher should be able to ................................... clearly.

2. Please don’t leave your toys lying around the floor.
   **put**
   Can .................................. tidily, please.

3. I wasn’t able to keep notes on everything the lecturer said.
   **manage**
   I .................................... down everything the lecturer said.

4. It would be useful if you could propose something in writing.
   **forward**
   It would be useful if you could .................................. in writing.

5. If you keep delaying going to the doctor it will only make things worse.
   **off**
   The longer .................................. going to the doctor the worse it will be.

6. As soon as she had got dressed, she left the house.
   **put**
   As soon as she .................................. she left the house.

7. They’re planning to build new blocks of flats near the park.
   **put**
   They are .................................. new blocks of flats near the park.

8. The price of electrical goods has increased again.
   **put**
   They’ve .................................. electrical goods again.

9. The receptionist tried to connect me but the line was engaged.
   **put**
   The receptionist .................................. because the line was engaged.

10. I won’t accept being treated like a child any more.
    **put**
    I won’t .................................. being treated like a child any more.

**Churchill, on coming across the grammar rule that it is not wrong to split infinitives.**

*This is the sort of English up with which I will not put.*
Part 1
For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Example: O A tired B irritated C fed D angry

ON YOUR BIKE!
If you are getting ........ (0) up wasting time looking for parking space, my ........ (1) to you is to consider the bicycle as an alternative ........ (2) of transport. Cycling is probably the cheapest and healthiest way of getting ........ (3) in our congested city centres. ........ (4) it is convenient and environmentally desirable, it can be an unattractive ........ (5) on a cold wintry morning. It is much easier to ........ (6) onto a nice warm bus or jump into your car, ........ (7) the sight of cyclists as they weave their way in and out of the traffic may fill you with ........ (8) as you sit waiting in yet ........ (9) traffic jam. In spite of the ........ (10) that worsening pollution is getting many people ........ (11), causing more and more health problems, and ........ (12) it is fashionable to express one's ........ (13) of the environmentally safe bicycle, it is hard to ........ (14) the danger cyclists face in sharing the road with cars. ........ (15) cycling is not as risky as it looks at first sight, there are more and more accidents involving cyclists.

1 A advice B way C plan D solution
2 A method B warning C means D instrument
3 A on B through C over D about
4 A Despite B In spite C Although D Even as
5 A choice B advice C propose D transport
6 A enter B be C travel D get
7 A even B however C though D and
8 A approval B envy C angry D criticism
9 A other B more C another D longer
10 A truth B reality C fact D event
11 A round B down C as D together
12 A while B despite C belief D in spite of
13 A favour B agreement C deny D think
14 A refuse B criticise C Whereas D Although
15 A Even though B However C
Part 2

For questions 16—30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

GETTING TO HUNGARY

All flights ..to... (0) Hungary arrive .......... (16) Ferihegy Airport, Budapest. Another possibility is to fly to Vienna and .......... (17) there to come .......... (18) train to Hungary. Train travel, especially .......... (19) first class, is very comfortable. Trains also arrive .......... (20) Paris, Munich and Zurich. Reductions .......... (21) trains are given to young people and pensioners. If you need a visa, make sure you obtain it .......... (22) advance to avoid delays .......... (23) the border.

It is cheaper to get to Hungary .......... (24) bus but it is much harder. Another way to reach Budapest is by sailing down the Danube River .......... (25) a ferry from Vienna. .......... (26) the trip, passengers can enjoy the scenery. The ferry arrives .......... (27) the dock in the centre .......... (28) the city.

The official tourist season begins .......... (29) May 1 and ends .......... (30) the end of October. These months are the ideal time to come from the point of view of the weather.

Part 3

For Questions 31—40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Here is an example (0).

Example: 0 She was running for the bus and fell over.

when

She fell over when she was running for the bus.

31 Although I overslept, I still managed to catch the train.

time

Despite .........., I still managed to catch the train.

32 Although his leg was broken, he managed to get out of the car.

fact

In spite .......... leg was broken, he managed to get out of the car.

33 In spite of being sixty, Peggy runs five miles a day.

old

Although .........., she runs five miles a day.

34 It makes no difference how rich he is, they still don't like him.

how

No .........., they still don't like him.
35 In spite of the fact that he didn’t know French, he went to live in France.

36 I used to work in that factory many years ago.

37 That’s the man who had his car stolen last week.

38 When the teacher and I had talked about the problem, we decided to change schools.

39 I’m rather busy at the moment – do you mind if I phone you later?

40 You’ll recover from the shock of losing your friend, even if it takes a long time.

41 Harry Barber got his degree in philosophy, which his professor

42 he never believed he would ever manage, and decided to see the

43 world. Having been wandered aimlessly from one country to another,

44 Harry finally settled in Australia where he tried to make it his name

45 as a writer. Harry, some whose stories were based on his travels

46 around the world, stayed up until the early hours of the morning,

47 hoping inspiration would come. Although that he had sent off a

48 few stories to magazines, only one yet had been published, which

49 he was encouraging but it didn’t pay the bills. He was forced to get

50 himself a part-time job washing dishes but, in spite of the fact that

51 as the work was menial and left his mind free for his more

Part 4

For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. There are two examples at the beginning (0) and (00).

**BECOMING A WRITER**

0 Harry Barber got his degree in philosophy, which his professor ✓

00 he never believed he would ever manage, and decided to see the he

41 world. Having been wandered aimlessly from one country to another,

42 Harry finally settled in Australia where he tried to make it his name

43 as a writer. Harry, some whose stories were based on his travels

44 around the world, stayed up until the early hours of the morning,

45 hoping inspiration would come. Although that he had sent off a

46 few stories to magazines, only one yet had been published, which

47 he was encouraging but it didn’t pay the bills. He was forced to get

48 himself a part-time job washing dishes but, in spite of the fact that

49 as the work was menial and left his mind free for his more
50 creative activity. Harry felt so tired when he got to home that .......... 51 all he wanted to do was sleep. However, even he had got himself .......... 52 an agent with whom he was on the good terms. Harry hoped his .......... 53 first novel it would change his luck. However, when his .......... 54 agent saw the first draft of the book, he advised Harry to rewrite .......... 55 most of the chapters which he found too slow – people they wanted .......... fast-moving novels nowadays, he said.

Part 5

For questions 56 – 65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (O).

PROBLEMS AT SCHOOL

Stephen Murray was clearly going through a difficult adolescence (O). He had never managed to gain the ............... (56) of his teachers at school. He ignored repeated ............... (57) to change his attitude or be expelled. He was widely considered to be an ............... (58) pupil who was wasting his ............... (59) by misbehaving in class. His parents received regular ............... (60) about their son but in spite of their own experience of Stephen's rebellious ............... (61), it was their ............... (62) that the school was as much to blame as Stephen was for the ............... (63) that arose from time to time. They reacted ............... (64) to any suggestion that the boy's upbringing was in any way ............... (65) for Stephen's lack of discipline.
These exercises, each organised into groups related to topics, will help you to build your store of very useful words and phrases.

**Living conditions**

1. Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word is given.

   We live in a (1) d.............. house in the old part of the 
   (2) c.............. . It has three (3) f.............. and a basement which 
   I use as a study. It's got a small front (4) g.............. and a lovely 
   view over the bay. Many people dream of buying a (5) c.............. 
   in the country where they can escape to at weekends. Others even 
   hope to own a (6) v.............. in a beautiful location on the coast. 
   Most people here, however, live in (7) f.............. . There are a lot 
   of students living here in rented (8) r.............. and bed-sits.

2. Now read the text again and answer the questions.

   Which word or phrase means ...?
   1. a bedroom which is also used as a living room
   2. a large house in the country
   3. a small house in the country
   4. a house not joined to any other
   5. a set of rooms below ground level
Complete the sentences with one of the words given.

1. My bedroom doesn’t have a ............... so I don’t have anywhere to hang my clothes.
2. When she gets home she sits in a comfortable ............... in front of the fire.
3. The three children were all sitting on the ............... watching television.
4. I think we’ve got some sugar in the ............... in the kitchen.
5. The ............... is on the wall just as you go into the room. Just press it.
6. Make sure your hands are dry when you put the ............... into the socket, otherwise you might get an electric shock.
7. There were several couples in the pub sitting on ............... at the bar, drinking.
8. I can’t open this bottle of wine because I don’t have a ............... .
9. He had never used an ............... before so he scorched his new shirt.
10. She sat at the ............... table, looking at herself in the mirror.
11. I keep my socks and underwear in a ............... of drawers in my bedroom.
12. It’s too dark to read in here; why don’t you get a reading ............... ?
13. The ............... on the landing has gone and I can’t see a thing – can you put a new one in?
14. There were not enough chairs so some people had to sit on ............... on the floor.
15. On cold winter days, we used to sit round the ............... to keep warm.
4 Complete the chart below by putting the words in one of the three categories.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of home</th>
<th>Parts of a house</th>
<th>Things we find in the house</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>basement</td>
<td>block of flats</td>
<td>hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bungalow</td>
<td>remote control</td>
<td>attic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corkscrew</td>
<td>washing-up liquid</td>
<td>ground floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loft</td>
<td>detached house</td>
<td>bed-sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>power point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tea towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ironing board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>terraced house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>semi-detached</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>celler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>landing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Which household words can fill the gaps in the following sentences? More than one answer may be possible.

Example: It’s dark in here – turn the light on.

1 The ............... has come off.
2 She fell down ............... .
3 The ............... broke down yesterday.
4 My ............... was cut off.
5 The batteries in my ............... have run out. I must get some new ones.
6 We have to put the ............... back one hour tonight.
Social relationships

1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word is given.

A nuclear family consists of only a (1) h................, (2) w................ and children. In my country, an extended (3) f................ is more common. It consists not only of (4) p................ and children but also of (5) g............... aunts, uncles and cousins. My (6) g............... lives with us and loves looking after her grandchildren. My mum's brother, my (7) U................ George, is a widower and has lived with us since (8) A............... Helen died. He is also my godfather.

2 Read the clues and complete the crossword.

The Andrews family tree

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACROSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Susan's parents, Emily and George, are Australian. Jack is her ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Jack emigrated to Australia and married Daisy. Daisy is Susan's ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. They had another daughter, Lucy - so Emily has a sister. Lucy is Susan's ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. When Susan's brother Michael got married, he had two children, Bianca and Robbie. Now Susan has a niece and a ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Susan's dad died a few years ago and her mum became a ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Emily remarried and her new husband, Bill, is a lawyer. Bill is Susan's ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Susan's engaged. Her ............... is called Rupert. He's twenty-two and he's a computer programmer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Rupert's mum died when he was at university and so Rupert's dad is a ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Rupert's dad is getting married to Maria soon, and Maria will be Rupert's ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. When Susan and Rupert get married, Rupert's dad will be Susan's ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Bianca is Jack and Daisy's ............... .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Robbie is Michael's ............... .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DOWN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. What are Susan's ............... called?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Fill in each blank with the correct form of the words listed.

best  honeymoon  meet  anniversary  engage
go  stranger  marriage  christen  know
in  to  get  fall  wedding

Love at first sight

Last August, Tony and Julie were complete (1) ............... . They hadn’t even heard of each other. They first (2) ............... at Michael’s twenty-first birthday party and they took (3) ............... each other immediately. As they got to (4) ............... each other, they realised they had many things (5) ............... common. After the party they began (6) ............... out together. Before long, they had (7) ............... in love. They decided to get (8) ............... and then if all went well (9) ............... married a year later. Julie said she didn’t believe (10) ............... was a good idea before they had both found good jobs. In the end, the (11) ............... took place in August, on the first (12) ............... of their meeting at Michael’s party. It was held in St Martin’s Church, which was where Anthony had been (13) ............... as a baby. Their (14) ............... man was Michael, who had invited them to his party a year before. For their (15) ............... they went on a two week cruise of the Aegean islands.

Friendship

1 Fill in the blanks with one or more suitable words from the diagram.

1 She’s cheerful and ............... the whole time.
2 The new student in the class is upset because we’ve been ............... towards him.
3 Our ............... developed quickly over the weeks that followed.
4 She’s not a very ............... friend – she’s just an acquaintance.
5 The two boys ............... friends very quickly.
6 I’ve just bought a new computer but the manual is not very ............... – I can’t understand a word it says.
2 Read the text and then complete the sentences with the correct preposition or particle from the list. Some will be used more than once.

Example: I don’t get on very well with my boss because he thinks
I don’t work hard enough.

\[ \text{out} \quad \text{up} \quad \text{down} \quad \text{off} \]

1 She fell \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \) with her boyfriend but after a while they
made up again.

2 He looks \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \) to his father and always listens carefully

to his advice.

3 Just because she’s got more money than her neighbours she
looks \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \) on them.

4 She’s very popular with colleagues because she’s always ready
to help them \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \) if they have problems.

5 She was born in France but didn’t grow \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \) there –
she was brought \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \) by her grandparents in Spain.

6 She used to go \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \) with a boy called Jack but they’ve
broken \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \) for good now – what put him \( \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \)
hers was her arrogance.

STUCK-UP

Kelly’s a really difficult person to
get on with – she’s already fallen
out with her best friend. The way
she looks down on everyone else
really puts people off her – many
people think she’s a bit of snob
but I think it’s just the way she’s
been brought up. You see she
was an only child in a very
well-off family so she’s probably
been spoilt.

Occupations

Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word is given.

And a good job too!

There is a lot of (1) u…………… nowadays so it is getting more and more difficult
to get the kind of (2) j…………… you really want. Then you have to decide what is
more important to you – how much you (3) e…………… or job satisfaction? Do
you want to work with your hands (called (4) m…………… work) or do you prefer
to work in an office (called clerical work)? Do you prefer to work indoors or
(5) o……………? Whatever you decide, when you are thinking about a career, or
applying for a job, you will find the following vocabulary useful:

- apply for a job
- to make a lot of money
- to belong to a union
- dismiss someone from a job
- make an application
- to have a large income
- to join a union
- employ someone
- to earn a good wage
- to retire from work
- to hand in one’s resignation
- give someone a job
2 Fill the gaps with an appropriate word from the list.

- offer
- experience
- career
- job
- management
- interview
- salary
- trainee
- qualifications
- reference
- promotion
- pension
- wage
- sack

a. choose a ............... in computers
b. go for an ............... 
c. go into ............... 
d. to get a ............... as a waiter
e. to get the ............... 
f. to earn a decent weekly ............... 
g. to get an annual ............... increase
h. to get a ............... at sixty-five
i. to win ............... 
j. to get a good ............... from your tutor
k. to have the right ............... for the job
l. to have two years' relevant ............... 
m. to accept an ............... of a job
n. to take a young person on as a ............... 

3 Put the following steps in Joe Bloggs' career in the correct order.

a. He was promoted to assistant to the sales manager.
b. He took up gardening as a hobby.
c. He looked for a job.
d. He was appointed managing director.
e. He made an application.
f. He was offered the job.
g. He was out of work.
h. He retired.
i. He went for an interview.
j. He worked as a clerk.
k. He got the job of sales manager.
l. He gave in his resignation.

4 Fill in the blanks with one or more suitable words from the diagram.

Example: Why don’t you go out and look for work instead of sitting around all day doing nothing?

1. Jane is working ............... a software developer for Microsoft.
2. My dad worked ............... a factory all his life.
3. His wife works ............... the local council.
4. I’ll talk to you about the problem when you come home ............... work.
5. Arthur has been out ............... work ever since they closed the mine.
6. Her boss gave her time ............... work to go and see the doctor.
Study this chart and then do the exercise that follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carry out sth;</td>
<td>do something that needs to be done</td>
<td>Those repairs must be carried out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry sth out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal with sb</td>
<td>do business with someone, or take an action to do with work</td>
<td>In my job, I have to deal with a lot of different people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal with sth</td>
<td>take the correct action to complete a piece of work or solve a problem</td>
<td>The problem is being dealt with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on</td>
<td>be successful in one's career</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take on work;</td>
<td>agree to do a job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take work on</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sb on</td>
<td>employ someone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take over</td>
<td>continue doing someone else's job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take up a post</td>
<td>start working at a new job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the table above. Make any other changes necessary.

1. After looking at his qualifications, they decided to offer him the job.
2. He's doing far too much and will make himself ill.
3. I started work here five years ago.
4. Who do you think is going to be the new director when Santana retires?
5. Will you handle any complaints while I'm away?
6. She did all the tasks successfully.

**Education**

1. Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

Education differs from country to country. In Britain, school consists of pre-school, (1) p.............. school and secondary school. (2) M................. for different subjects are given in figures out of 10, 20 or 100; (3) g.............. are usually expressed in letters, A, B, C, etc. A certificate is given for success in a particular (4) a.............. of study (for example the Cambridge Certificate); a diploma is awarded by colleges and a (5) d.............. by universities.
Look at these useful expressions, then fill the gaps with one of these words.

**verb** | **expressions**
--- | ---
**do** | do (= study for) a degree in management; do (= take) an exam/an (1) ..........; do (= carry out) an experiment; do (= carry out) research into traffic pollution; do (= study) maths, history
**gain** | gain a good degree / education; gain experience
**get** | get a good education; get information / advice; get a (2) .............. at university; get into university; get a grant; get good / bad marks / (3) ..............; get a good report; get a degree / certificate / (4) ..........
**have** | have good knowledge of marketing strategies; have (5) .............. lessons
**go** | go to university / college / evening (6) .............
**make** | make progress; make a mistake; make the (7) .............
**study** | study mathematics / notes / a diagram; study for a test / an exam / a degree
**take** | take a course / an exam; take notes (while listening or reading); take a break from studying; take a (8) .............. off to travel
**teach** | teach a lesson / a class; teach English / media studies; teach at a school / college / university
**Others** | attend classes / a private language school / university
carry out research into environmental effects of tourism cheat in an exam copy from someone else give a lecture / a talk / a demonstration learn a poem by (9) ..............; memorise the facts pay attention (in class) prepare / (10) .............. for an exam sit for / sit an exam

3 Underline the correct word in each of the following sentences using the chart above to help you.

1. She *got / took* a good report from her teachers.
2. They said she had *done / made* progress in all subjects.
3. She had *done / made* very few mistakes in her tests.
4. She is well-behaved and *pays / gives* attention in class.
5. She always *takes / does* notes when the teacher talks.
6. She likes physics and enjoys *doing / making* experiments.
7. She hates being disturbed when she is *revising / reading* for an exam.
8. She feels a bit nervous when she has to *sit / revise* an exam.
9. She wants to *get / go* into university.
10. When she *gets / takes* her degree, she wants to go abroad.
Choose a or the in the following passage. Cross out the wrong one. In some places neither is possible so cross out both.

**PEOPLE IN EDUCATION**

A / The professor is not a / the teacher in a / the secondary school, but has a / the highest academic position in a / the university. A / The lecturer is a / the university teacher. Lecturers – and professors – give a / the lectures. Students in Britain usually have a / the tutor who gives them a / the advice and teaches students in small groups. You graduate from university with a / the degree. If you do a / the postgraduate work, you will have a / the supervisor to help and advise you.

Match the definitions below with one of the words given.

1. Someone in charge of a school.
2. Someone who is still at university studying for their first degree.
3. Someone who has successfully completed their first degree.
4. Someone responsible for courses in a private school.
5. Someone in the same class as you at school.
6. Someone who teaches at a college or university.
7. Someone responsible for teaching a small group of students.
8. Someone with the highest academic position in a university.

Fill each gap with an appropriate word from the list.

A (1) n.............. or (2) p.............. is for children aged two to five. A (3) p.............. includes (4) i.............. and lasts from the age of five to eleven. In Britain, at the age of nine some children go to (5) m .............. before going to (6) s.............. . Bright pupils sometimes go to (7) g.............. . after taking an examination, but most children go to a mixed ability (8) c.............. . A (9) p.............. in England is 'private' and parents pay for children to attend – a (10) s.............. is free.
7 Put the following story in the correct order.

a) Her research is in international law.
b) When she was at playschool, Maria played and had fun.
c) After finishing her BA, she took a year off.
d) In her infant school, she began learning how to read and write.
e) She got into grammar school and did well in all subjects.
f) When she was at junior school, she loved history.
g) She got a place at university to do law.
h) She graduated with a first-class degree.
i) She decided to do postgraduate work.
j) In the sixth form she studied A-levels to get into university.

The arts

1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

Daniel Day-Lewis is a great actor – he has (1) p............ both in films and on the (2) s.............. . One of his finest (3) r.............. was in The Last of the Mohicans. His mother was the actress Jill Balcon and his father was the famous writer, Cecil Day-Lewis, who published several volumes of (4) p.............. . Cecil Day-Lewis was also a lecturer at Cambridge University. Some of his (5) L.............. to undergraduates were published and broadcast by the BBC. He was Professor of Poetry at Oxford and he also published detective (6) n.............. under a pseudonym.

2 Complete the chart below by adding words from the list. Some may go in more than one place.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>literature</th>
<th>music</th>
<th>theatre</th>
<th>cinema</th>
<th>art</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sculpture</td>
<td>short story</td>
<td>sound-track</td>
<td>audience</td>
<td>biography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chapter</td>
<td>premiere</td>
<td>drama</td>
<td>exhibition</td>
<td>subtitles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>script</td>
<td>screenplay</td>
<td>rehearsal</td>
<td>musical</td>
<td>horror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>scenery</td>
<td>scene</td>
<td>first night</td>
<td>illustration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comedy</td>
<td>stage</td>
<td>picture</td>
<td>landscape</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>lighting</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>novel</td>
<td>screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concert</td>
<td>auditorium</td>
<td>trailer</td>
<td>canvas</td>
<td>edition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singer</td>
<td>performance</td>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>role</td>
<td>love story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>microphone</td>
<td>encore</td>
<td>opera</td>
<td>character</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The list contains:
- western
- costume
- watercolour
- volume
- pop
- tragedy
- plot
3 Complete the gaps in the following sentences with an appropriate form of a word from the chart at the bottom of page 273.

1 The director got very angry when the actor failed to turn up to ............... .
2 The ............... for this film was written by a famous novelist.
3 The ............... applauded at the end of the performance.
4 Everyone in the ............... was very good apart from the leading lady.
5 The first ............... of a book is often worth more if it is signed by the author.
6 The ............... of the film includes some great songs.
7 The whole play was performed in seventeenth century ............... .
8 I last went to a rock ............... to see the Rolling Stones.
9 Is this your first ............... of poetry?
10 Children’s books appeal to children if they have attractive ............... .

4 Complete the following text with words connected with the theatre. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

The most difficult role

They say Hamlet is the most difficult role for an actor to play and one of the most difficult (1) p................. to direct. Lawrence Olivier gave one of the best (2) p................. of his career as Hamlet. There are always several performances of Hamlet being (3) p................. on all over the world at any one time. The irony is that although we know more about Hamlet than almost any other (4) c................. in literature, we hardly know anything about the (5) a................. of the play, William Shakespeare.

5 Collocations. List any word or phrase which matches with each verb below.

Example: put on a play, a performance, ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>act in</th>
<th>direct</th>
<th>produce</th>
<th>see</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appear in</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>publish</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>put on</td>
<td>watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compose</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>review</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- a performance
- a difficult part
- a show
- a horror movie
- a review
- a symphony
- a video
- a new edition
- a new book
- a new CD
- the leading role
- a CD
- a recital
- a concert
- a piece of music

274
6 Complete these sentences with an appropriate word or words from 5 opposite.

1. The story is ............... in nineteenth-century France.
2. The play got really fantastic ............... from the critics.
3. Harrison Ford has already ............... several award-winning films.
4. Who plays the ............... of the monster in the film?
5. His Othello was one of the worst ............... of his career. It was awful.
6. The play was first ............... on television.
7. The play was directed by Spielberg and ............... by Paramount Pictures.
8. Who ............... the music for the film Titanic?
9. Her first novel was ............... by Penguin books.
10. Let's stay in and ............... a film on TV tonight.

7 Study this list of phrasal verbs and then do the exercise that follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>meaning / use</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come up (in the exam)</td>
<td>appear as a question in an exam; be set in the exam</td>
<td>I wonder what's going to come up in the exam on Monday. You have to pass a lot of exams to get into university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get in; get into sth</td>
<td>enter a school, university</td>
<td>You have to pass a lot of exams to get into university. I'm afraid you didn't get through your exam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get through (sth)</td>
<td>pass (an exam)</td>
<td>You should have given in this work last week. If you don't know what it means, look it up in the dictionary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sth in</td>
<td>give homework, an essay, etc. to a teacher</td>
<td>You should pay attention to the teacher in class. Please put up your hand if you want to speak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up sth; look sth up (in)</td>
<td>check the meaning of a word in a dictionary</td>
<td>You should pay attention to the teacher in class. Please put up your hand if you want to speak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay attention (to sth / sb)</td>
<td>listen to what someone is saying</td>
<td>You should pay attention to the teacher in class. Please put up your hand if you want to speak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up your hand</td>
<td>raise your hand</td>
<td>You should pay attention to the teacher in class. Please put up your hand if you want to speak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send sb down</td>
<td>tell sb to leave a college or university because of bad behaviour</td>
<td>She was sent down because she cheated in the test. I used to stay up all night revising for my exams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay up</td>
<td>go to bed late</td>
<td>She's going to take up the guitar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take up sth</td>
<td>start studying French, music, etc.</td>
<td>She's going to take up the guitar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answer the questions using a phrasal verb from the list above.

1. What would you do if you wanted to ask your teacher a question without shouting out?
2. What do you do if you have an exam the next day and you need to revise?
3. What would you do if you wanted to learn another foreign language?
4. What would you say to explain what happened to a student who cheated?
5. What do you do in class if you listen carefully to your teacher?
6. What does your teacher say to you if you passed your exam?
7. What would you do if you wanted to find out what 'serendipity' means?
8. What would you have to do if you wanted to study to be a doctor?
9. What do you say to tell your friend you hope a question will be set in the exam?
10. What would your teacher say if you are late with an essay?
Sports

1 Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with a word or phrase from the diagram.

1 I enjoy watching football but I’ve never been very good ........... it.
2 At our local sports centre you can play a wide variety of ........... sports.
3 I’m not too keen ............ sports such as boxing.
4 The ............. you need for skiing, like boots and a ski suit, can be quite expensive.
5 It’s a pity that most people only support ........... during the Olympics.
6 Are you fond ............ sports like tennis?
7 Which do you prefer – summer or ............ sports?
8 Is swimming an ............ or indoor sport in your country?
9 Personally, I think the ............ should have awarded a penalty.
10 Athletes have to be extremely ............ if they want to compete successfully.

2 Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with a word or phrase from the diagram.

1 Ronaldo took a shot ............ goal but the goalkeeper caught the ball.
2 A good basketball player must be able to ............ the ball to other players.
3 Brazil ............... Germany 2-1.
4 In table tennis, you must let the ball ............. on the table before you hit it.
5 Bergkamp plays ............ Arsenal in England.
6 How many times has Germany ............ the World Cup?
7 If he gets this game, he’ll win the set and could win the ............
8 Martina ............ the ball over her opponent’s head to the back of the court.
9 Tiger Woods’ shot was superb – he ............ the ball and it rolled ten metres and fell into the hole.
10 We love playing ............ in bare feet on the beach.
3 Complete the chart by adding the words below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>umpire</th>
<th>canoeing</th>
<th>ring</th>
<th>pool</th>
<th>snooker</th>
<th>golf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>squash</td>
<td>coach</td>
<td>club</td>
<td>athletics</td>
<td>bowls</td>
<td>defender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rod</td>
<td>oar</td>
<td>course</td>
<td>field</td>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>motor racing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>track</td>
<td>pitch</td>
<td>boxing</td>
<td>skiing</td>
<td>ground</td>
<td>tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skis</td>
<td>football</td>
<td>hockey</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>stadium</td>
<td>basketball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volleyball</td>
<td>player</td>
<td>referee</td>
<td>net</td>
<td>goalie</td>
<td>bat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick</td>
<td>whistle</td>
<td>team</td>
<td>goalkeeper</td>
<td>boots</td>
<td>judge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captain</td>
<td>manager</td>
<td>diving</td>
<td>fishing</td>
<td>racquet</td>
<td>trunks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>striker</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>places</th>
<th>games</th>
<th>sport</th>
<th>people</th>
<th>equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Fill in the blanks with a word from the chart above.

1 Have you ever been to a boxing .................? 
2 You can’t row without one or two ............... . 
3 The person who selects the players for a game is the ............... . 
4 In table tennis you hit the ball with a round ............... . 
5 The official who makes sure players follow the rules in games like tennis, squash, and basketball is the ............... . 
6 London’s most famous venue for international matches is Wembley ............... . 
7 When there is a foul during a football match, the referee blows his ............... . 
8 The football player who tries to score goals is called a ............... . 
9 We play squash and tennis on an indoor ............... . 
10 Marathon runners make one circuit of the ............... before leaving the stadium.
Hobbies

1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

In your own time

Most of us have a (1) h.............. that we do in our spare time. Some of us do things like surfing the Net, or make things like model planes. Others play cards or board (2) g.............. like backgammon, while others like to (3) c.............. things such as stamps and antiques. I (4) s.............. a lot of my summer holidays snorkelling in the sea. My brother goes away almost every weekend either walking or (5) c.............. in the mountains. His favourite hobby is taking (6) p.............. of rare flowers. My aunt who is eighty has a magnificent (7) c.............. of traditional music, and still goes to (8) d.............. classes. So, there is much more to life than watching television!

2 Complete the chart below using the equipment in the list. There is an example.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>equipment</th>
<th>hobby</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wax</td>
<td>making candles, batik printing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of a verb from the list.

have \hspace{2cm} take \hspace{2cm} go \hspace{2cm} do \hspace{2cm} make

1 She ................. excellent photographs of people in markets.
2 Shall we ................. mountain climbing this weekend?
3 If you’ve nothing to do, let’s ................. a game of cards.
4 You should ................. some exercise; come to the gym with me.
5 He ................. model planes using matches and thin paper.
6 Jenny ................. guitar lessons for several years.
7 She ................. a lot of sewing in her spare time.
8 Would you describe ................. shopping as a hobby?
9 Lola’s helping the children ................. animals out of cake dough.
10 Chess is a great game to play but it ................. too much time.
11 I don’t seem to ................. enough time for all my hobbies!
12 We’re ................. swimming later on – do you want to come?

4 Complete these sentences with the correct form of the words at the end of the sentence.

1 She spends too much money playing on machines in the ................. arcade.
2 My friends think men who knit are hilariously ................. .
3 One of my most ................. hobbies is playing a musical instrument.
4 It is so ................. lying on the beach doing absolutely nothing.
5 We could hear loud ................. coming from the flat downstairs.
6 The ................. asked us to smile at the camera.
7 He kept the children amused with his ................. stories.
8 Her new novel is sure to ................. her readers.
9 I don’t find jokes about sick people at all ................. .
10 Paul was ................. as he skateboarded down the steps.
11 It’s so ................. to sit by the sea and watch dolphins playing.
12 My idea of perfect ................. is a shopping trip to Paris.
Travel and tourism

Study these charts and then do the exercise that follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accommodation</th>
<th>journey</th>
<th>transport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stay in a/an:</td>
<td>a car/bus/train journey</td>
<td>travel/go:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotel</td>
<td>crossing</td>
<td>by air/sea/rail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bed &amp; breakfast (b. &amp; b.)</td>
<td>drive</td>
<td>by car/taxi/bus/coach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>youth hostel</td>
<td>flight</td>
<td>by bike/train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>self-catering flat</td>
<td>tour</td>
<td>by boat/ferry/ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motel</td>
<td>trip</td>
<td>by plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guesthouse</td>
<td>day trip</td>
<td>by public transport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inn</td>
<td>business trip</td>
<td>on foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cottage</td>
<td>round trip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camp</td>
<td>package holiday</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cabin</td>
<td>voyage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scheduled / charter flight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ramble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>trek</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>walk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>people</th>
<th>places</th>
<th>objects</th>
<th>actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>guest</td>
<td>bus stop</td>
<td>backpack</td>
<td>plan an itinerary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holiday-maker</td>
<td>bus station</td>
<td>baggage</td>
<td>book a holiday / flight / ticket (to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sightseer</td>
<td>train station</td>
<td>bags</td>
<td>buy a ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tourist</td>
<td>taxi rank</td>
<td>holdall</td>
<td>reserve a seat / room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traveller</td>
<td>airport</td>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>travel to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visitor</td>
<td>arrivals</td>
<td>suitcase</td>
<td>depart from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courier</td>
<td>departures</td>
<td>trolley</td>
<td>drive / fly / sail (to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guide</td>
<td>departure lounge</td>
<td>boarding card</td>
<td>set off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host (ess)</td>
<td>gate</td>
<td>cheques</td>
<td>set out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steward (ess)</td>
<td>terminal</td>
<td>credit card</td>
<td>arrive at / in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customs officer</td>
<td>harbour</td>
<td>foreign currency</td>
<td>get in at (time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coach driver</td>
<td>port</td>
<td>passport</td>
<td>land at / in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porter</td>
<td>abroad</td>
<td>(a return / one-way)</td>
<td>check in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receptionist</td>
<td>overseas</td>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>check out (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket officer</td>
<td></td>
<td>traveller’s cheques</td>
<td>do some / go sightseeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel agent</td>
<td></td>
<td>visa</td>
<td>go on an excursion / a trip (to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pay the bill / pay (for)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>run out of petrol / money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>miss the bus / train / plane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

280
Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word from the charts opposite.

1. I usually go to the airport ................. train so I rarely ................. a taxi.
2. Our ................. was delayed and we spent two hours in the ................. at the airport.
3. If we don’t hurry, we’ll ................. the bus and we’ll have to go ................. foot.
4. Please have your ................. ready for inspection.
5. At the hotel, the ................. gave us our room numbers and a ................. took our bags to our rooms.
6. Next day we paid the ................. and ................. of the hotel.
7. We boarded the ................. to the island but then the ................. was rough and everyone was sick.
8. I’d like to ................. a package ................. to Spain. Is there a cheap ................. direct to Malaga?

Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

W hen planning a (1) h................. you must first decide where you are going. Next, you need to decide where you’re going to (2) s................. and how you’re going to travel – (3) b................. plane, car, train or boat. You may need to visit a travel (4) a................. who will organise your tickets. If you are travelling (5) a................., it’s best to (6) b................. in advance to make sure you get the (7) f................. you want and a good (8) h................. . Don’t forget to arrange to have some foreign (9) c................. and to have enough (10) t................. .

Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first. Use the word given. This word must not be changed.

1. I think the excursions were the best thing about language school.
   going
   What I liked most about .................
2. I’d like to see the sights before we find somewhere to stay.
   sightseeing
   I’d like .................
3. As soon as the plane has arrived, I’ll phone you.
   landed
   As soon as .................
4. If you want a good room, you should reserve it in advance.
   reservation
   If you want a good room, you should .................
5. I usually go to work by bus but yesterday I went by train.
   take
   I usually .................
6. Why don’t you fly to Paris instead?
   flight
   Why don’t you .................
7. Make sure you have enough petrol if you’re driving in the mountains.
   run
   Make sure you .................
8. The train from Liverpool arrives at eleven o’clock.
   get
   The train from .................
Shopping

1 Study this chart and then do the exercise that follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>people</th>
<th>places</th>
<th>objects</th>
<th>actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(regular) customer client</td>
<td>baker's</td>
<td>bank card</td>
<td>borrow (money) from sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(shop / sales) assistant manager</td>
<td>bookshop</td>
<td>cash</td>
<td>afford</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(member of) staff</td>
<td>boutique</td>
<td>cheque book</td>
<td>buy sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butcher</td>
<td>bureau de change</td>
<td>credit card</td>
<td>can / can't afford</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemist</td>
<td>butcher's</td>
<td>store card</td>
<td>cut (their) prices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishmonger</td>
<td>department store</td>
<td>Switch card</td>
<td>exchange sth (for sth else)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>florist</td>
<td>DIY store</td>
<td>a bargain</td>
<td>get a discount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newsagent</td>
<td>dry-cleaner's</td>
<td>(mail order) catalogue</td>
<td>go shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optician</td>
<td>fishmonger's</td>
<td>carrier bag</td>
<td>order sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopkeeper</td>
<td>florist's</td>
<td>designer label</td>
<td>pay cash / by cheque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stall holder</td>
<td>greengrocer's</td>
<td>goods</td>
<td>pay a deposit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trader</td>
<td>jeweller's</td>
<td>faulty goods</td>
<td>pay for sth (at a reduced price)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>newsagent's</td>
<td>product</td>
<td>take sth back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>off-licence</td>
<td>price</td>
<td>try sth on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(charity / local / second-hand) shop</td>
<td>rate of exchange</td>
<td>see to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kiosk</td>
<td>receipt</td>
<td>serve (a customer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(street) market</td>
<td>sales tax (VAT)</td>
<td>giftwrap sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>supermarket</td>
<td>cash desk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>toyshop</td>
<td>shop window</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the high street</td>
<td>till</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(in) the sales</td>
<td>checkout</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shopping centre</td>
<td>'pay here'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shopping mall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word from the chart.

1 I'm sorry but you can't pay ............... these with a credit card. Have you got a Switch ............... ?

2 I can't ............... to buy a new computer – I haven't even got the cash to pay a ............... .

3 Can I ............... a discount if I pay ............... ?

4 I don't usually ............... shopping in the high street; I enjoy finding ............... in the market.

5 Excuse me, can I try these trousers ............... before I buy them?

6 Is meat cheaper in the ............... or from your local ............... ?

7 Will you ............... me some cash so that I can ............... for the parking?

8 You'll get the best ............... at that ............... de change over there.

9 Do you prefer cheap ............... , or those with a ............... label?

10 How much does it cost to have this clock gift ............... ?
2 Which words or phrases are the following descriptions of?
1 Someone who serves customers in a shop.
2 The main shopping street in a town.
3 The place where you can buy paint, screws, etc.
4 Where you would go to buy medicines.
5 The bag you get in a supermarket to hold your shopping.
6 A shop that sells fruit and vegetables.
7 The place where you can exchange foreign currency.
8 A large shop on several floors selling a wide variety of goods.
9 A small building in the street selling newspapers, sweets, etc.
10 The place where you pay for things in a supermarket.

3 Complete the chart with the words from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>household goods</th>
<th>lettuce</th>
<th>suntan lotion</th>
<th>mushrooms</th>
<th>yoghurt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shampoo</td>
<td>shirt</td>
<td>flowers</td>
<td>crisps</td>
<td>aspirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courgettes</td>
<td>cleaning products</td>
<td>bread</td>
<td>sunglasses</td>
<td>trousers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toothpaste</td>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>frozen food</td>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underwear</td>
<td>bubble bath</td>
<td>nappies</td>
<td>melon</td>
<td>cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrots</td>
<td>eggs</td>
<td>denim jacket</td>
<td>breakfast cereals</td>
<td>plums</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stamps</td>
<td>stationery</td>
<td>beans</td>
<td>jewellery</td>
<td>pencils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipstick</td>
<td>aubergines</td>
<td>cigarettes</td>
<td>flour</td>
<td>medicines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sausages</td>
<td>food in cans</td>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>hairbrush</td>
<td>bananas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweets</td>
<td>toilet paper</td>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>pasta</td>
<td>perfume</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>newsagent’s</th>
<th>chemist’s</th>
<th>boutique</th>
<th>greengrocer’s</th>
<th>supermarket</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

4 Complete these phrases with an appropriate word from the list.

1 a .......... of milk or orange juice
2 a .......... of coke or beer
3 a .......... of soap or milk chocolate
4 a .......... of yoghurt or margarine
5 a .......... of chocolates or tissues
6 a .......... of toothpaste or glue
7 a .......... of shampoo or moisturiser
8 a .......... of beans or paint
9 a .......... of biscuits or cigarettes
10 a .......... of flowers or grapes
11 a .......... of mineral water or bubble bath
12 a .......... of pickles or jam
Food and restaurants

1. Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

A vegetarian is someone who eats only (1) v.………………. bread, fruit, eggs, etc. and doesn’t eat (2) m.………………. However, some do eat (3) f.……………… which I find strange. Others eat chicken but not (4) r.……………… meat. A vegan doesn’t eat meat, fish, or any (5) d.……………… products such as eggs, milk and (6) c.………………. They do eat fruit and (7) n.………………. A (8) g.……………… knows a lot about food and enjoys good food and (9) w.………………. A (10) c.……………… is someone who prepares and cooks food in a hotel or restaurant.

2. Complete the chart below by adding the words in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vegetables</th>
<th>Fish</th>
<th>Herbs</th>
<th>Seafood</th>
<th>Fruit</th>
<th>Meat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nectarine</td>
<td>thyme</td>
<td>salmon</td>
<td>apple</td>
<td>mussel</td>
<td>lamb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satsuma</td>
<td>trout</td>
<td>squid</td>
<td>lettuce</td>
<td>plaice</td>
<td>oregano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mackerel</td>
<td>rosemary</td>
<td>mutton</td>
<td>courgette</td>
<td>basil</td>
<td>plum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coconut</td>
<td>fig</td>
<td>shrimp</td>
<td>cabbage</td>
<td>bacon</td>
<td>cauliflower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mincemeat</td>
<td>smoked salmon</td>
<td>chives</td>
<td>liver</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>chop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spinach</td>
<td>cucumber</td>
<td>beef</td>
<td>strawberry</td>
<td>grape</td>
<td>joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prawn</td>
<td>watermelon</td>
<td>lobster</td>
<td>cod</td>
<td>parsley</td>
<td>sausage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aubergine</td>
<td>pork</td>
<td>sardine</td>
<td>salami</td>
<td>mango</td>
<td>octopus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Complete the chart with the words from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>roast beef</th>
<th>hot dog</th>
<th>curry</th>
<th>spaghetti Bolognese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prawn crackers</td>
<td>bocadillo</td>
<td>shepherd’s pie</td>
<td>apple crumble and custard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapas</td>
<td>ciabatta</td>
<td>kebab</td>
<td>hamburger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiramisu</td>
<td>paella</td>
<td>chop suey</td>
<td>tagliatelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>popcorn</td>
<td>moussaka</td>
<td>pumpkin pie</td>
<td>onion bhaji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samosas</td>
<td>souvlaki</td>
<td>biryani</td>
<td>sweet and sour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houmous</td>
<td>tortilla</td>
<td>spring roll</td>
<td>fish and chips</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spain</th>
<th>Britain</th>
<th>Greece</th>
<th>China</th>
<th>Italy</th>
<th>India</th>
<th>USA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

4 Match the dishes (1–8) with a set of ingredients (a–h).

1 shepherd’s pie a mincemeat, onion, tomato paste, red wine, pasta
2 paella b apples, walnuts, celery or lettuce, mayonnaise
3 pizza c mincemeat, sliced aubergines, tomatoes, onions, cheese sauce
4 moussaka d chicken, onion, spices, chilli, rice
5 spaghetti Bolognese e bread dough, tomato, onion, cheese, anchovies, olives
6 spring roll f mincemeat, carrots, onions, gravy, mashed potato
7 Waldorf salad g bean sprouts, chopped vegetables, pork, pancake, hot oil
8 biryani h seafood, rice, chicken, onion, saffron

5 Put the correct form of the verbs in the list into the sentences.

1 It’s best to ................. an omelette in a deep pan.
2 Potatoes are delicious if you ................. them in their jackets.
3 ................. vegetables are healthier than boiled ones.
4 ................. meat tastes better if you cook it slowly in the oven.
5 Put butter on trout before you ................. it under a strong heat.
6 Tough meat is easier to cook if you ................. it in the oven with vegetables.
7 Do you think the British ................. their cabbage for far too long?
8 I love the smell of ................. lamb chops from next-door’s garden.
6 Complete each gap with an appropriate word. You are given the first letter of the missing word.

Have you been to 'Bar None'? We went yesterday and it was great. I'm glad we (1) b................. because the restaurant was full. I asked the waiter to bring us a wine (2) l................. so that we could decide what to drink. For my (3) s................. I chose garlic mushrooms, and for my main (4) c.................. I ordered a casserole with pork (5) c.................. , sage and white wine. For (6) d.................. I had crème caramel with ice-cream. I asked our waiter to bring the (7) b................. and I had to pay cash because they wouldn't take (8) c.................. cards. I left the waiter quite a large(9) t................. as I was very pleased with the (10) s................. .

7 Match the food (1–10) with words from the list. You may use the words more than once.

1 meat 6 curry
2 onions 7 bananas
3 potatoes 8 tomato
4 cheese 9 carrots
5 bread 10 apple

minced chopped spiced sliced mashed grated

8 Underline the odd word out.

Example: water coke bread wine juice
1 meal food cuisine feast corkscrew
2 wine starter main course appetiser dessert
3 boil fry bake bowl grill
4 slice chop grate peel
5 salty savoury pan sweet bitter
6 dish meal bowl plate cup
7 courgette mushroom bean plum broccoli
8 bill tip receipt menu cheque

9 Complete the following sentences with the correct word.

1 If the goods are faulty, take them ................. to the shop.
2 Try to cut down ................. cakes if you want to lose weight.
3 I'm looking ................. to having a denim jacket.
4 Do you think this tie goes ................. my shirt?
5 We wanted to eat together at home so we ordered a take-................. .
6 Can I try ................. this dress before I buy it?
7 If you clear the table, I'll wash ................. .
8 You can leave the table when you have eaten ................. all your food.
9 There's no food in the fridge – let's go ................. to your mum's house.
10 I'm taking my girlfriend ................. to dinner this evening.
Weather

1 Study this chart and then do the exercise that follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kind</th>
<th>description</th>
<th>verbs and expressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>breeze cloud</td>
<td>good brightness</td>
<td>pour (with rain) / cold and damp / misty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dry</td>
<td>pour down / bright and frosty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fine</td>
<td>bucketing down / fine and dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>be drenched / soaked / hot and sticky / humid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mild</td>
<td>a gentle / light / strong breeze / hot chilly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scorching</td>
<td>black / dark / grey clouds / hot and sticky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sunny</td>
<td>grey / a bit chilly / be bitterly / freezing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>warm</td>
<td>freezing / a lovely day / thick fog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>windy</td>
<td>strong gales / be boiling hot / thick fog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pour (with rain)</td>
<td>a light / thin mist / a blue / grey sky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pour down</td>
<td>heavy / light rain / shower / a thick smog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bucketing down</td>
<td>a cold / hot spell / a terrible storm /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>be drenched / soaked</td>
<td>thunderstorm / a break in the weather /</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>good / lovely weather / awful / bad / terrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>weather                                  a strong wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>wet / overcast / windy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word from the chart.

1 During that ................ spell we had in January we couldn’t see further than a metre.
2 Hopefully it will be fine and ................. for the match this afternoon.
3 It will be rather hot and ................. by midday.
4 It’s been such ................. weather – one day dry and the next wet and cold.
5 ................. fog is making weather conditions hazardous.
6 In London it pours ................. rain almost every day.
7 It was a ................. storm and our fence fell down.
8 We had a brief hot ................. and managed to dry the washing.
9 After such a cold night there was a thick white ................. on the grass.
10 It was ................. hot during the day and we could hardly move until evening.
2 Match the definitions with words from the chart on page 287.

1. A short period of heavy rain ........................
2. Weather that often changes ........................
3. Weather when the air feels hot and wet ........................
4. Describes warm and dry weather ........................
5. Dark and with clouds ........................
6. Snow and rain falling together ........................
7. Pleasant and warm; not too cold or too hot ........................
8. Describes extremely hot weather ........................
9. Cloudy air near the ground that is difficult to see through ........................
10. Describes very cold weather ........................
11. Describes a mixture of smoke, fog and fumes ........................
12. When it rains heavily, we can say 'It's .............. down.'

3 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

The British are well known for always chatting about their weather. This is because the weather in Britain is so (1) c.............. – you never know what it will be like. A popular greeting is '(2) L.............. weather for the time of year' or, if the weather is bad, 'Isn't this weather (3) a.............. !' If it's raining, they might say 'Great weather for (4) d..............!' You will often hear people add '(5) w.............. permitting' when they say they plan to play golf, garden or put out the washing. Most postcards from a holiday in Greece or Spain begin: 'It's (6) b.............. hot here' even when local people think it's just a normal (7) b.............. and sunny day. There are many general expressions in English which show the importance of weather in people's lives. For example, feeling (8) u.............. the weather' means feeling slightly ill. If you 'make (9) h.............. weather of a job' it means you make it seem more difficult than it really is, and if you 'keep a weather (10) e.............. on something' you give it your full attention – as the British do with their weather!

Surprisingly warm for this time of year, isn't it?

4 Match the words in the box to make acceptable pairs. You may use some words more than once.

Example: boiling hot

1. a .............. hot day 4. .............. clouds 7. .............. wind
2. a .............. climate 5. a .............. spell 8. .............. fog
3. .............. cold 6. .............. rain 9. .............. weather

lovely mild bitterly freezing dark hot heavy strong dry thick
5 Replace the underlined words with the correct ones.

Example: It was a bitterly warm day in the middle of winter.
         It was a bitterly cold day in the middle of winter.
1 The air was so hot and wet that my shirt was wet through.
2 There was a heavy mist over the fields early in the morning.
3 After the heavy rainfall last week we were able to build a snowman.
4 The rain was pouring over so we had to cancel the picnic.
5 Take a coat – it could be a piece chilly later on.
6 It was boiling cold this morning and the roads were icy.
7 ‘Pretty weather for the time of year.’
8 Driving conditions are very bad due to the strong fog.
9 Sailors were warned that great gales were expected during the night.
10 The Petronas Towers were struck by thunder but it had no effect.

6 Match these descriptions with the following countries. There is one extra country in the list.

- Spain
- Germany
- Britain
- Greece

A This country enjoys a Mediterranean climate for most of the year, with warm to hot days and mild nights. However, in the middle of summer, it can be unbearably hot and stuffy and winter can be chilly. December and January can be very cold and in February it is often rainy. April can be changeable with sunny days interrupted by windy showery weather.

B Most of this country is always warm from April to October though it can occasionally be cold and rainy in the north, especially in the mountains. The south is amazingly mild throughout the year – it hardly has a winter. Although the Atlantic lies only a few miles away, the climate is more like the Mediterranean.

C This country has a very changeable climate, both from day to day and from place to place. Although long periods of fine weather occur each year, it is not easy to forecast the weather accurately and you can be soaked during any season. The north of the country is much colder and windy in winter, often with quite heavy snowfalls. The south-west has milder weather.
Match the following situations (a–j) with an appropriate expression (1–10) that mentions the weather. Use your dictionary.

Example: When I was in hospital I lost a lot of weight – so something good came out of it. *Every cloud has a silver lining.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 the calm before the storm</th>
<th>5 come rain come shine</th>
<th>8 be a storm in a teacup</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 be under a cloud</td>
<td>6 make heavy weather of something</td>
<td>9 lightning never strikes the same place twice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 it never rains but it pours</td>
<td>7 save something for a rainy day</td>
<td>10 feel under the weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 be in a fog</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a Because bad luck isn’t repeated in the same place, I parked where my car had been stolen.
b Don’t spend all your money now – you might need some later.
c No one trusted her after she was caught stealing from the toyshop.
d I’m not feeling too good today. I think I’ll stay in bed and rest.
e I think a lot of fuss is being made over something very unimportant.

f The report was far too detailed – we needed only the basic information.
g I never receive complaints but now I have had ten in a row!
h He’s out playing tennis whatever the weather.
i I can’t think clearly about what happened just before the accident.
j This good luck is too good to last – something is bound to go wrong.

Our environment and the natural world

1 Look at this picture. Write down the words for the parts numbered 1–10.

1 .................................................. 5 .................................................. 8 ..................................................
2 .................................................. 6 .................................................. 9 ..................................................
3 .................................................. 7 .................................................. 10 ..................................................
4 ..................................................
2 Put these words in pairs and then say which is the bigger of the two.

   Example: river stream (river)

3 Which word from the above list is being described?

   1 a large area of water surrounded by land
   2 a small area with trees
   3 a large mass of salt water between continents
   4 a length of sand and small stones at the edge of the sea
   5 a particular part of the land that is higher
   6 a narrow route through the countryside for animals and people on foot
   7 a large area of an ocean where the coast is curved
   8 a wide stretch of land covered with trees
   9 a tall plant with long branches and a trunk
  10 a small area of water, for example in a garden
  11 a small smooth stone on a beach
  12 a large area with homes, shops and streets
  13 a low plant with many branches
  14 the edge of land where it joins sea water
  15 a part of the land that is much higher than the land around it
  16 an area of salt water near land
  17 a prepared route through the countryside or towns for vehicles
  18 an area of the sea inside a curved part of the coast
  19 a place with many streets, offices, factories, shops and homes
  20 a large piece of stone
Save it!

In recent years, the number of problems has increased dangerously. One of the most serious problems is changes to the __________ which has led to the __________ effect; this is making most climates warmer. It is already affecting several areas of the world with unusual __________ causing droughts or heavy storms. Cutting down on __________ fumes from vehicles would help solve the problem. Natural __________ such as oil and coal are not endless, so using other forms of __________ such as wind, sun, water, and even sea waves would help preserve our planet. Very soon we will be able to drive cars in cities and towns that run __________ electricity — a much cleaner __________ than petrol. And we can also help to reserve finite resources by __________ things made of glass, aluminium, plastic and paper.

Complete these sentences with the correct form of the words at the end of the sentence.

1. What can we do to reduce the __________ of the atmosphere? POLLUTE
2. The change in the climate has produced __________ floods. DISASTER
3. Many rare species are threatened with __________. EXTINCT
4. Many of the gases produced by factories are __________ to our health. HARM
5. Exhaust fumes have __________ effects on the environment. DAMAGE
6. Many countries must try and control the growth of the __________. POPULATE
7. Protecting the environment is essential to our __________. SURVIVE
8. The __________ of the environment is everyone's responsibility. PROTECT
9. While some countries get richer, the __________ in others gets worse. POOR
10. Millions of people in the world are threatened with __________. STARVE

Complete the collocates below by adding an appropriate noun. Some can combine with more than one noun.

Example: environmental effect, changes, disaster, pollution, resources

warming changes disaster pollution rain forest transport resources gases

1. acid __________ 6. nuclear __________ 11. sea __________ 16. recycled __________
2. tropical __________ 7. public __________ 12. solar __________ 17. noise __________
3. exhaust __________ 8. traffic __________ 13. finite __________ 18. renewable __________
4. global __________ 9. natural __________ 14. greenhouse __________
5. ozone __________ 10. air __________ 15. clean __________
7 Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the first, using the word given to make a phrasal verb.

Example: Never leave the tap running when you're not using it.

turn

Always turn off the tap (or, turn the tap off) when you're not using it.

1 We can't be sure the weather is going to be sunny on Saturday.

count

We can't .................

2 They've reduced the number of cars in the city centre.

down

They've .................

3 They should ban nuclear energy completely.

away

They .................

4 If cloudy weather makes you depressed, go and live in Spain.

down

If cloudy weather .................

5 We won't have any water left in a few years.

run

We'll .................

6 The temperature is lower than it was yesterday.

down

The temperature .................

7 We must stop the council from demolishing that old building.

pull

We mustn't let the council .................

8 Our cities would be cleaner if cars used electricity instead of petrol.

run

Our cities would be cleaner if cars .................

The media

1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

MEDIA HYPE

The mass media refers to the people and organisations that provide news and (1) i................. for the public. Until recently these were mainly (2) n................., (3) t................., and (4) r.................. Today, computers play a very big part. The (5) I................. is a computer system that allows millions of people around the world to receive and exchange information about almost anything. Ordinary post has been taken over by (6) e................. which stands for (7) e................. mail because it is sent and received via a computer. It is a system that allows people to send (8) m................. to each other quickly and cheaply. Ordinary (9) p................. is now referred to as 'snail mail' and one wonders if the (10) p ................. is a job in danger of extinction!
### 2 Match the definitions below with the words in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a reporter whose job it is to report local news from a distant area</td>
<td>correspondent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the number of copies a newspaper sells each day</td>
<td>circulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an advertisement on television or radio</td>
<td>commercial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a film that gives facts and information about a subject</td>
<td>documentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a well-known person on television, film or in the press</td>
<td>editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a magazine about one topic, that appears once a month, three times a year</td>
<td>celebrity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone who writes for a newspaper or magazine</td>
<td>headline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the title of a newspaper report printed in large letters</td>
<td>mouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a continuing story about a group of people that is regularly on television</td>
<td>periodical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the person who decides what goes in a newspaper or magazine</td>
<td>soap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3 Match the definitions with the expressions in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The small object that you move with your hand to operate a computer</td>
<td>mouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the flat part in front of a computer which you look at</td>
<td>keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the part of a computer with rows of letters and symbols</td>
<td>floppy disk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the part of a computer you use to pass information to or from a disk</td>
<td>mouse pad/mouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a flat piece of plastic for storing information from a computer</td>
<td>modem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the flat piece of rubber or plastic which you use under a mouse</td>
<td>laptop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a round disk for using in a computer to store large amounts of information</td>
<td>key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a type of small computer you can carry with you</td>
<td>CD ROM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one of the parts with a letter or symbol which you press when you use a computer</td>
<td>screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the equipment inside a computer which allows information to be sent to another computer using a telephone line</td>
<td>disk drive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Complete the collocates below by matching a noun from A with a noun from B. Some can combine with more than one noun.

*Example:* television channel, report, commentator, programme ...

```
A
press current television
radio light news
sports soap chat
celebrity video cable
live educational
commercial action
digital game children's
nature

B
opera channel report
collection television
conference replay commentator
listener programme
recorder show
entertainment guest
broadcast affairs break
viewer station
```

5 Complete the collocates below by matching a word from A with one from B to make ten pairs.

*Example:* phone message

```
A
(phone)
phone play
mobile answering
cordless wrong
long e-mail fax
telephone

B
(message)
machine machine
number book
phone phone kiosk
address back
distance
```

6 Complete the following sentences with an appropriate word or phrase from the previous exercises.

1. It must have cost you a lot to make that long- .......... phone call to Australia.
2. He's not at home but we can call him on his .......... phone.
3. I want to send a message to Hanneke in Leiden. Do you have her e-mail ............. ?
4. The Prime Minister will hold a news .......... in the morning.
5. I tried to phone the school but a policeman answered — it was the .......... number.
6. He won the money on a popular .......... show on television.
7. I phoned Jane but she was out so I left a message on her ............. phone.
8. First, you need to put the CD ROM into the ............. drive.
9. Most live sport is shown on .......... television.
10. Make sure you copy your work from the computer onto a ............. disk.
THE INFO-REVOLUTION

We have all seen an enormous increase in the role of the mass .............. in people's lives. First of all, the growth of the (2) .............. , of both serious and (3) .............. newspapers, has been tremendous. Public (4) .............. is influenced by powerful (5) .............. who not only own our newspapers which often have a (6) .............. of millions, but who also own television and radio (7) .............. in many different countries. The huge quantity of (8) .............. that people have to deal with has rocketed with the advent of satellite and cable television. At the same time, more and more people have (9) .............. to (10) .............. computers. Information available at home via the Internet is infinite.

1 A messages  B medium  C mediums  D media
2 A printing  B press  C interest  D information
3 A cheap  B people  C popular  D public
4 A opinion  B health  C views  D services
5 A managers  B writers  C celebrities  D editors
6 A profit  B readers  C circulation  D popularity
7 A networks  B users  C sets  D ports
8 A correspondence  B details  C information  D reporters
9 A control  B ownership  C contact  D access
10 A electronic  B personal  C large  D ROM

Complete each phrase with an appropriate form of a verb from the list.

1 I've only managed to .............. the first few chapters.
2 If you don't recognise the voice and you are worried, ..............
3 You must .............. your password before the program will start.
4 At last I .............. e-mail at home.
5 It's boring - let's .............. to another channel.
6 Always .............. your work on a floppy disk or you may lose it.
7 Don't forget to .............. it .............. before you come to bed.
8 They are .............. her best seller in paperback.
9 I tried many times but I couldn't .............. . Her line is busy.
10 The novel was much too exciting to .............. so I missed lunch.
11 I told him you'd .............. later.
12 Remember to save all your work before you .............. the computer.
9 Decide when you would use the sentences above. Complete this chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone</th>
<th>Computer</th>
<th>Television</th>
<th>Book</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Science and technology

1 Complete the following chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) ............</td>
<td>invention</td>
<td>inventor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>produce</td>
<td>(2) ............</td>
<td>producer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>observe</td>
<td>(3) ............</td>
<td>observer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>design</td>
<td>(4) ............</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>(5) ............</td>
<td>developer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discover</td>
<td>(6) ............</td>
<td>discoverer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explore</td>
<td>(7) ............</td>
<td>explorer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>research</td>
<td>(8) ............</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>program</td>
<td>(9) ............</td>
<td>engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) ............</td>
<td>program</td>
<td>builder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>(11) ............</td>
<td>(13) .........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conserve</td>
<td>(12) ............</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create</td>
<td>(14) ............</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(15) .........</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the following sentences with an appropriate word from the chart above.

1 The same civil ............ who built the roads is now building the new bridge.
2 They called in a ............ to knock down the wall between the two rooms.
3 Scientists have been carrying out ............ to find a cure for the disease.
4 The company which ............ the drug has had to pay a lot of money to the victims.
5 Lewis and Clark were the first to ............ the new territory.
6 Penicillin was one of the most important ............ of the twentieth century.
7 Walt Disney, the ............ of Mickey Mouse, died a very rich man.
8 You'll need to go to university if you want to become a computer ............ .
9 A property ............ buys land and builds offices or homes on it.
10 The theory is based on a detailed ............ of many patients.
3 What do we call someone who works in the following areas?

1 building .......................... 9 managing .......................... 17 medicine ..........................
2 plumbing .......................... 10 selling .......................... 18 surgery ..........................
3 electricity .......................... 11 photography .......................... 19 science ..........................
4 carpentry .......................... 12 psychology .......................... 20 biology ..........................
5 decorating .......................... 13 manufacturing .......................... 21 chemistry ..........................
6 architecture .......................... 14 research .......................... 22 physics ..........................
7 hairdressing .......................... 15 archaeology .......................... 23 history ..........................
8 teaching .......................... 16 astronomy .......................... 24 law ..........................

4 Who helps with the following problems?

1 I wish that tap would stop dripping! ..........................
2 I feel depressed – no one likes me. ..........................
3 Don’t you think a few private lessons would help him to pass? ..........................
4 I need extra sockets in the living room. ..........................
5 The paint is peeling off all the windows outside. ..........................
6 Your hair looks a mess. It’s far too long. ..........................
7 I feel awful and I have a rash on my chest. ..........................
8 We’ll need help with the design to get best use of the light. ..........................
9 We’ve found a coin in the garden and it looks very old. ..........................
10 I’m going into hospital to have the lump removed. ..........................

5 Fill in the gaps with the appropriate form of the words from the list. You will use some words more than once and some sentences may have more than one answer.

- discover
- develop
- design
- pioneer
- invent
- study

1 The physicians Marie Curie and her husband Pierre .................. the element radium and won the Nobel Prize for physics.
2 After years of .................. , Freud .................. a theory of the mind which has changed for ever the way we view ourselves.
3 Brunel .................. the Clifton Suspension Bridge.
4 Marco Polo made journeys through Asia and wrote a book describing what he had .................. .
5 Edward Jenner .................. the use of vaccination to prevent disease.
6 I wonder who .................. the very first computer?
7 Einstein .................. the theory of relativity which replaced Newton’s theories of gravity.
8 Frank Lloyd Wright .................. the Imperial Hotel in Tokyo and the Guggenheim Museum in New York.
9 Florence Nightingale .................. effective nursing care and improvements in public health.
10 In 1930 Clyde Tombaugh .................. Pluto after many years .................. the night sky.
Health

1 Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

A PICTURE OF HEALTH

People nowadays are more health-conscious than they used to be. We jog to keep (1) f.................. or take other forms of regular (2) e.................. Thousands of us go to a (3) g.................. on a regular basis. Many more (4) d.................. to lose weight. Fortunately, (5) s.................. has been banned on most flights and in most public places because everyone agrees it does (6) h.................. to our health. However, there are killer (7) d.................. like Aids and cancer which still seem to be incurable. And malaria is the biggest cause of (8) d.................. in the Third World. Heart (9) a.................. remain the most common cause of death in Europe. The importance of (10) h.................. is reflected in everyday expressions such as ‘to drink to someone’s health’ or saying ‘Your health!’ as we drink a glass of wine.

2 Study this chart and then do the exercise that follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ache</td>
<td>bandage</td>
<td>bruised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bruise</td>
<td>check-up</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disease</td>
<td>cure</td>
<td>depressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fever</td>
<td>(medical)</td>
<td>fine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illness</td>
<td>examination</td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injury</td>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>frail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lump</td>
<td>ointment</td>
<td>healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mental illness</td>
<td>operation</td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nervous breakdown</td>
<td>pill</td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nausea</td>
<td>plaster</td>
<td>frail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>prescription</td>
<td>healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rash</td>
<td>symptom</td>
<td>healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomach bug</td>
<td>treatment</td>
<td>healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spots</td>
<td>recovery</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temperature</td>
<td>surgery</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td>X-ray</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backache</td>
<td>clinic</td>
<td>injured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earache</td>
<td>hospital</td>
<td>injured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headache</td>
<td>operating theatre</td>
<td>injured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomatchache</td>
<td>out-patients</td>
<td>injured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toothache</td>
<td>surgery</td>
<td>insane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ward</td>
<td>insane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>epidemic</td>
<td>insane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>outbreak</td>
<td>insane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

be (critically/seriously) ill
break sth
catch sth
die (from sth)
get better
go / come down with sth
have (a disease)
inject sb
recover (from a disease / operation)
sprain sth
suffer (from sth)
be under the weather
vomit
be bad / good for you
be in agony
be in good shape
be in a bad way
be in poor health
be out of condition
have something wrong with you
bandage sth
cure sb
ease the pain
examine sb
inject (sb with) sth
nurse sb
operate (on sb)
prescribe sth
plaster sth	
treat sb (for sth)
vaccinate sb (against sth)
X-ray sb / a part of your body

curable
fatal
harmful
incurable
infectious
inoperable
minor
numb
painful
poisonous
slight
sore
swollen
terminal

unfit
unhealthy
unwell
weak
well
wounded
Find the words in the chart on page 299 that match these definitions.

1. to use a needle to put medicine into your body  
2. a soft substance you rub on your skin as a treatment  
3. a room in a hospital you stay in while you are ill  
4. a pain in your head  
5. a doctor writes on it what medicine a sick person needs  
6. many cases of an infectious disease occurring at the same time  
7. that causes a person to die  
8. an illness of the mind  
9. to make someone who is ill well again  
10. thin and weak because you are old or very ill

3 Fill the gap with an appropriate word from the list. Use the chart above to help you. You need to use some words twice.

for against from on out with in

1. Children should be vaccinated ............... measles and rubella.
2. Paul won't be in work today - he's gone down ............... flu.
3. Pollution in cities is causing more and more children to be treated ............... asthma.
4. You're so ............... of condition! Don't you think swimming every morning will help?
5. Too many people die ............... lung cancer due to smoking.
6. If you have a fever, there is definitely something wrong ............... you.
7. I spent the weekend in a health farm and feel ............... really good shape now.
8. She's still recovering ............... the stomach bug she picked up on holiday.
9. It's best that we operate ............... you and remove the lump from your breast.
10. I've injected your mother ............... a painkiller so that she can sleep.

4 Fill in each blank with an appropriate word from the list.

lie down hurt die symptoms suffered

agony fainted aching painless had

1. I'm feeling ill - I think I'd better go and ............... .
2. I felt so dizzy that I nearly ............... .
3. I had to have an internal examination but it was quite ............... .
4. They gave me an injection and it really ............... .
5. The ............... are a high temperature and a rash.
6. He ............... a heart attack and had to be rushed to hospital.
7. The doctor prescribed some drops for my earache but it's still ............... .
8. I fell down the stairs and I was in ............... waiting for the ambulance to arrive.
9. He ............... from an incurable illness for many years.
10. I hope I ............... in my bed of old age.
5 Complete the sentences using as many words or phrases from the list as possible.

Example: I feel ill, fit, ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a headache</th>
<th>some rest</th>
<th>ill</th>
<th>an injection</th>
<th>sore</th>
<th>measles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>an operation</td>
<td>fit</td>
<td>an aspirin</td>
<td>cancer</td>
<td>into hospital</td>
<td>her to hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your ankle</td>
<td>an aspirin</td>
<td>his tooth out</td>
<td>a virus</td>
<td>out</td>
<td>a cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your doctor</td>
<td>a broken wrist</td>
<td>dizzy</td>
<td>jogging</td>
<td>her temperature</td>
<td>in agony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an arm</td>
<td>flu</td>
<td>fatal</td>
<td>in plaster</td>
<td>incurable</td>
<td>a consultant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inoperable</td>
<td>in great pain</td>
<td>depressed</td>
<td>an infection</td>
<td>an earache</td>
<td>stitches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nauseous</td>
<td>your wrist</td>
<td>your blood pressure</td>
<td>in plaster</td>
<td>your blood pressure</td>
<td>surgeon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I feel ...
2 You must have ...
3 I've got ...
4 Be careful you don't catch ...
5 You need to see ...
6 I'm afraid it's ...
7 He'll take ...
8 You've sprained ...
9 She's ...
10 It feels ...

6 Match the first part (1-10) with the second part (a–j) of these sentences.

1 If you've got a bad headache, a with flu.
2 You have a heart problem and b incurable.
3 He sprained his ankle and c lost weight.
4 She went out in the pouring rain and caught d was in great pain for days.
5 She's not at work because she's gone down e need an operation.
6 He works out in the gym because f he had measles.
7 She went on a diet and g a cold.
8 He had spots all over his face because i he wants to feel fit.
9 After aerobics last week j take an aspirin.
10 Not all cancers are k my legs felt really sore.

7 Complete these words. The first letter is given. They are all parts of the body.

1 t .......... (you have one on each hand)
2 l .......... (two parts of your mouth)
3 e .......... (you hear with these)
4 g .......... (your teeth grow in them)
5 e .......... (the middle part of your arm)
6 s .......... (the part under your foot)
7 h .......... (Achilles had a problem with this)
8 k .......... (a joint in your leg)
9 c .......... (the part below your mouth)
10 s .......... (the soft part below your waist)
11 n .......... (it holds up your head)
12 s .......... (the row of bones down the centre of your back)
13 w .......... (you put your watch round it)
14 n .......... (the small hollow place in the centre of your stomach)
15 c .......... (you have one on each side of your face)
16 e .......... (the flap that comes down over your eye while you sleep)
17 n .......... (the holes in your nose)
18 s .......... (the front part of your lower leg)
19 f .......... (the part of your face above your eyes)
20 t .......... (the front part of your neck)
Phrasal verbs and idioms. Complete the second sentence so that it is as similar in meaning as possible to the first, using the word given. Do not change this word.

1. I had to have a tooth extracted last week. **out**
   I had my ............
2. Has he recovered from his illness yet? **over**
   Has ............
3. He took care of you while you were ill. **after**
   He ............
4. You've gained a lot of weight since I last saw you! **on**
   You've ............
5. The drugs aren't having any effect now. **off**
   The effect ............
6. After fainting he regained consciousness after a few minutes. **round**
   Having ............
7. He caught flu and had to have time off work. **down**
   He ............
8. She has had a lovely baby girl and is feeling fine. **birth**
   She has ............
9. Since her heart attack, my mother has not been at all well. **poor**
   Ever ............
10. Michelle often has terrible headaches. **from**
    Michelle ............

Crime

Fill in the blanks. The first letter of each missing word has been given.

It's a crime

Thieves have been around for centuries, probably for as long as humans, but armed (1) r............. is a more recent phenomenon. Unfortunately women have always been the (2) v............. of rape and domestic (3) v............. . (4) F............. has been around ever since printing has been used to make money or produce documents. Rich people or their children are sometimes (5) k............. and are not set free until a ransom has been paid. The twentieth century has seen the appearance of many organised (6) c............. such as hijacking and drug-smuggling or drug-trafficking. Statistics show an alarming (7) r............. in the rate of violent crimes and crimes to do with the (8) i............. sale of arms across the world. Perhaps the most recent crime of all is hacking into computers to access (9) i............. that helps competitors in industry. This increase in international crime makes one wonder whether it is still true to say ‘(10) C............. doesn’t pay’.
2 Complete the following chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accuse</td>
<td>(1) ..................</td>
<td>accused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start a fire deliberately</td>
<td>(2) ..................</td>
<td>blackmailer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blackmail</td>
<td>(3) ..................</td>
<td>burglar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burglar</td>
<td>(4) ..................</td>
<td>(5) ..................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commit a crime</td>
<td>crime</td>
<td>(6) ..................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hack into a computer</td>
<td>hacking</td>
<td>(7) ..................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hijack</td>
<td>prison or imprisonment</td>
<td>hijacker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imprison</td>
<td>kidnapping</td>
<td>prisoner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kidnap</td>
<td>(8) ..................</td>
<td>killer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill</td>
<td>(9) ..................</td>
<td>mugger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mug</td>
<td>(10) ..................</td>
<td>(11) ..................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commit an offence</td>
<td>offence</td>
<td>pickpocket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pickpockets</td>
<td>(12) ..................</td>
<td>robber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rob</td>
<td>(13) ..................</td>
<td>shoplifter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoplift</td>
<td>(14) ..................</td>
<td>(15) ..................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stalk</td>
<td>stalking</td>
<td>thief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>suspicion</td>
<td>suspect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Write down the words in the middle column in 2 that are not a crime?

4 Which crimes are being described in the following situations? Fill the gaps with words from the list.

- rioting
- arson
- mugging
- vandalism
- kidnapping
- shoplifting
- robbery
- hacking
- burglary
- domestic violence
- stalking
- murder
- drug-trafficking
- blackmail
- pickpocketing
- looting
- theft
- hooliganism
- fraud

1 People broke into our house and stole our video camera.
2 Youths attacked her in the street and ran off with her handbag.
3 The pilot was forced to take the plane to Tashkent.
4 She killed him by poisoning his coffee.
5 Why do middle-class women steal food from supermarkets?
6 Having made no profit that year, he set fire to his own factory.
7 Crowds of protestors broke shop windows and stole goods.
8 They ran around smashing things and fighting other drunken youths.
9 He threatened to tell the newspapers unless he got a thousand pounds.
10 Someone has stolen my purse from my desk.
11 The clerk handed over the money when they threatened to shoot him.
12 The business used deception to obtain money.
13 They were accused of deliberately smashing the phone box.
14 The boy would be harmed unless his parents paid the money.
15 The woman was often seen with bruises on her face.
16 His wallet was stolen from his back pocket.
17 Trained dogs found the packages stuffed into the seats of the lorry.
18 The film star had been followed by the same man for months.
19 They accessed the information from government computer systems.
20 Hundreds of police in helmets broke up the angry crowds.

5 Complete the sentences using a suitable form of a phrase from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrase</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appear in court</td>
<td>The accused was <strong>appearing</strong> in court and sentenced to five years in prison.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commit (a crime)</td>
<td>I <strong>committed</strong> a crime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay a fine (for -ing)</td>
<td>He was made to <strong>pay</strong> a fine of £30 for parking in the wrong place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspect sb (of a crime)</td>
<td>She was arrested and <strong>suspected</strong> murdering her husband.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plead guilty / not guilty</td>
<td>He was <strong>pleading</strong> not guilty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrest sb (for sth)</td>
<td>You will be <strong>arrested</strong> for a number of serious charges when you go before the judge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face charges</td>
<td>You have <strong>faced</strong> a minor offence and I will be lenient with my sentence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take up a case</td>
<td>If you <strong>take</strong> up a case, the judge will probably reduce your sentence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find sb innocent / (not) guilty</td>
<td>The accused will be <strong>found not guilty</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sb on trial (for a crime)</td>
<td>I <strong>put</strong> Joe on trial for murder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Complete the blanks with the correct form of the word given at the end of each sentence.

**An innocent man**

Last night, Joe Bloggs was arrested on (1) **suspicion** of robbery.
The police had no (2) **proof** that he had committed the crime and Joe denied the (3) **charge** saying he had a good alibi.
When he was put on (4) **trial**, the police called several witnesses to the stand but Joe's (5) **lawyer** defended his client well and tried to prove that Joe had not done anything (6) **legal**.
However, the jury found Joe (7) **guilty** and he was sentenced to six months in prison. As Joe had never committed a (8) **crime** before this was a very heavy (9) **punishment**. Most people were convinced of Joe's (10) **innocence** and his lawyer appealed against the verdict.
**Answer key**

(Answers with short forms e.g. 'll, 're, 's, etc. are correct, particularly in conversation; will not, are, is not, etc. are also correct)

---

**Unit 1**

**Entry test**


---

**Practice 1a**

1. (underline) 1 'm sleeping 2 'm only working 3 aren't listening 4 talks 5 see, goes out, meets 6 make 7 feel 8 appears 9 are just hearing 10 do you think

2. (1) seems (2) 're feeling (3) 're staying (4) is (5) stands (6) looks (7) costs (8) make (9) tastes (10) is shining

3. 1 today 2 ✓ 3 not 4 do 5 are 6 ✓ 7 to 8 ✓ 9 be 10 it 11 ✓ 12 be 13 are 14 ✓ 15 ✓

4. 1 is waiting 2 don't travel 3 'm considering 4 ends 5 'm feeling / feel 6 're having 7 do...see 8 're relying / rely 9 wish 10 do...think

5. 1 never use... in driving 2 always like... never seem 3 prefers... is always arguing (or: always argues) 4 is always forgetting (or: always forgets)... starts 5 are always moaning (or: always moan)... never help... always lay... never come 7 'm going... depends on (or: go... always depends on) 8 'm never shopping... 're always 9 almost smell... are passing (or: pass) 10 is always borrowing... always pays

---

**Practice 1b**

1. (underline) 1 appeared 2 studied... graduated 3 have now completed 4 've been trying 5 have already worked 6 was... 7 have applied... have not managed 8 applied... 9 started learning... have not obtained 10 have not applied

2. 11 hoped 12 have been waiting... have not received

3. (1) walked (2) stepped (3) was (4) have (5) got (or: grown) (6) has (7) remained (8) refused (9) worked (10) left (11) gave (12) been (13) researching (14) had (15) written

---

**Practice 1c**

1. b 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 e 6 g 7 h 8 f

2. 1 was raining 2 had rained (or: had been raining) 3 had spent 4 was having 5 had been trying... hadn't managed 6 had been snowing (or: was snowing)... had been snowing (or: had snowing) had covered 7 were running... screaming... had knocked... had drawn 8 had set... was waiting... had been waiting 9 had broken... had dropped... were climbing

3. (1) sailing (2) was (3) had (4) been (5) been (6) coming (7) been (8) said (9) went (10) was (11) were (12) about (or: getting) (13) heard (14) could (15) had

---

**Practice 1d**

1. since 2 for 3 During 4 While 5 during 6 For 7 Since 8 before 9 already 10 still 11 yet 12 ago

2. (1) since (2) from (3) until (4) already (5) before (6) for (7) still (8) During (9) yet (10) while (11) in (12) since (13) since (14) ago (15) already

3. 1 ago 2 before 3 before 4 after 5 already 6 already 7 yet 8 still 9 yet 10 ago

4. 1 The style is similar to others that have been built already (or: that have already been built). 2 I'm sorry, but your dry-cleaning isn't ready yet. (Or: I'm sorry, but your dry-cleaning still isn't ready.) 3 Lucy asked me to e-mail the office in Vienna but I've already done it (or: I've done it already). 4 Do you still need a visa to travel to Hungary? 5 My birthday isn't for ages yet. (Or: My birthday still isn't for ages.) 6 It's still (or: already) raining so there's no point in going to the beach (yet). 7 Has your uncle already arrived (or: arrived already/arrived yet)? 8 I've already waited a whole hour (or: I've waited a whole hour already) and he still hasn't come (or: he hasn't come yet).

---

**Practice 2a**

1. f 2 g 3 h 4 a 5 b 6 i 7 d 8 e 9 n 10 l 11 j 12 k 13 c 14 m

2. (1) Shall... come (2) 'll be (or: 'm going to be) (3) 'll be (4) shall... check (5) is (6) I'm going to be (7) 'll be (or: 're going to be) (8) 'm going to see (or: 'm seeing) (9) 'll be (10) shall... come (11) won't be leaving (or: won't going to leave) (12) will be (13) are... going to bring (or: will... bring) (14) won't forget (15) 'll see

---

**Practice 2b**

1. photographer 2 guitarist 3 dishwasher 4 ability 5 friendship 6 engineer 7 journalist 8 actor 9 building 10 importance 11 childhood 12 excitement 13 happiness 14 education 15 division 16 admission 17 tin-opener 18 refugee 19 activity 20 greatness

---

**Unit 2**

**Entry test**

1. I'll 2 miss 3 I'll have

4. Shall I go 5 you're going to step

6. C I'm visiting 7 A are putting on

8. B I'm going to be 9 C starts

10. D I'm going 11 C I'll be lying

12. D will have finished 13 D I'll be going 14 A will be finished

15. A I'll have lived 16 A put off

17. C kept me up 18 C brought up

19. D bring back 20 B get on

21 over 22 over 23 un 24 dis 25 under

---

**Practice 2c**

1. f 2 g 3 h 4 a 5 b 6 i 7 d 8 e 9 n 10 l 11 j 12 k 13 c 14 m

2. (1) Shall... come (2) 'll be (or: 'm going to be) (3) 'll be (4) shall... check (5) is (6) I'm going to be (7) 'll be (or: 're going to be) (8) 'm going to see (or: 'm seeing) (9) 'll be (10) shall... come (11) won't be leaving (or: won't going to leave) (12) will be (13) are... going to bring (or: will... bring) (14) won't forget (15) 'll see...
Practice 2b  p33
1 is going to crash  2 'm staying in  3 is travelling (or: travels)  4 starts  5 'll phone (or: 'm going to phone)  6 visits  7 am going to be  8 are meeting  9 are going to win  10 is going to celebrate (or: is celebrating)  
2 are ... doing, shall ... go  2 will take place  3 starts  4 finish  5 'm doing  6 is ... going ... finish  
3 (underline:) 1 get off  2 will help  3 will  4 is going to be  5 is coming  6 is going to be  7 will need  8 will test  9 make  10 will probably regret  
11 will bring  12 will be  

Practice 2c  p35
1 a Will you be taking b 'll take (or: 'll be taking)  
2 a 'll be b 'll have been  
3 a will have finished b 'll finish  
4 a will be sunbathing b will sunbathe  
5 a 'll be sleeping b will have slept  
6 a will fly b will have flown  
7 a 'll be driving b 'll drive  
2 (1) 'll be working (2) 'll be (3) 'll be working (4) 'll have completed (5) 'll be (6) 'll have finished (7) 'll have been working on (or: 'll have worked) (8) 'll jump (9) will you be going (10) will have arrived (11) 'll be going (12) 'll see  

Practice 2d  p37
1 get on  2 set off  3 fall behind  
4 kept me up (or: stayed up)  
5 got down to  6 take up  7 give up  
8 hold on  9 carries on  10 grow up  
2 're going to bring back  2 brought up  
3 carry on  4 have fallen behind (or: are behind with)  
5 getting down to (or: going to get down to)  6 kept me up  
7 has been put off  8 have called off  

Practice 2e  p39
1 in  2 im  3 un  4 co-  5 dis  6 mis  
7 il  8 un  9 mis  10 dis  11 over  
12 pre  13 trans-  14 mis  15 im  
16 mis  17 mis  18 inter  19 over  
20 ir  21 dis  22 over  23 mis  24 pre (or: post)  
2 Across: 1 il  2 trans  5 under  7 pro  
8 in  10 over  11 antt  13 mis  
Down: 1 inter  3 super  4 co  5 un  
6 dis  8 ir  9 post  12 im  

Practice 3a  p48
(underline:) 1 had to  2 don't have to  
3 have got  4 must  5 don't need to  
6 weren't allowed to  7 needn't have  
8 didn't need  9 could  10 Did you have to  

Practice 3b  p50
1 can't  2 may  3 will be  4 must have been  
5 can't have been  6 might  
7 may  8 could have  9 should  10 could  
2 b 2 f 3 h 4 i 5 j 6 e 7 d  
8 c 9 a 10 g  
3 there can  2 can  3 being  4 to  5  
6 to  7 been  8  9 have  10 must  
11 able  12  13 been  14  15 and  

Practice 3c  p53
(underline:) 1 because  2 Since  
3 Because  4 in order not to  5 due to  
6 as a result of  7 in order to  8 so that  
9 so  10 because  
2 due (also possible: thanks)  2 because  
3 due (or: owing)  4 in order to (or: To)  5 Because  
6 so (that) (or: in order that)  7 because (also possible but less common: as, since)  
8 Since  9 because  10 so (or: in order)  11 result  12 As a result (or: Consequently; Because of that)  
3 1 to  2 for  3 4 been  5 being  
6 as  7 too  8 of  9  10 that  
11 to  12 that  13 she  14 that  
15 for  

Practice 3d  p57
1 have an operation  2 have any experience  
3 take part  4 bring this meeting to an end  5 Take a seat  
6 having a shower  7 takes place  
8 have fun  9 have lunch  10 have time  
2 (1) have (2) taking (3) have/get  
4 take (5) have (6) bring/take  
7 have (8) have/get (9) take  
10 bring (11) take (12) brings  
3 1 up  2 off  3 back  4 after  5 on  
6 up  7 on  8 off  9 in  10 out  

Unit 3  
Entry test  
1 had to  2 should  3 will  4 needn't  
5 couldn't  6 D could  7 B may  
8 B should  9 A will  10 B couldn't  
11 D because  12 C due  13 D  
Since  14 C so that  15 C As a result  
16 D take  17 C sat for  
18 C bring  19 D having  20 B to  
21 B qualifications  22 C attention  
23 D accusations  24 B competition  
25 A cancellation  

Practice 3a  p48
(underline:) 1 had to  2 don't have to  
3 have got  4 must  5 don't need to  
6 weren't allowed to  7 needn't have  
8 didn't need  9 could  10 Did you have to  

Practice 3b  p50
1 can't  2 may  3 will be  4 must have been  
5 can't have been  6 might  
7 may  8 could have  9 should  10 could  
2 b 2 f 3 h 4 i 5 j 6 e 7 d  
8 c 9 a 10 g  
3 there can  2 can  3 being  4 to  5  
6 to  7 been  8  9 have  10 must  
11 able  12  13 been  14  15 and  

Practice 3c  p53
(underline:) 1 because  2 Since  
3 Because  4 in order not to  5 due to  
6 as a result of  7 in order to  8 so that  
9 so  10 because  
2 due (also possible: thanks)  2 because  
3 due (or: owing)  4 in order to (or: To)  5 Because  
6 so (that) (or: in order that)  7 because (also possible but less common: as, since)  
8 Since  9 because  10 so (or: in order)  11 result  12 As a result (or: Consequently; Because of that)  
3 1 to  2 for  3 4 been  5 being  
6 as  7 too  8 of  9  10 that  
11 to  12 that  13 she  14 that  
15 for  

Practice 3d  p57
1 have an operation  2 have any experience  
3 take part  4 bring this meeting to an end  5 Take a seat  
6 having a shower  7 takes place  
8 have fun  9 have lunch  10 have time  
2 (1) have (2) taking (3) have/get  
4 take (5) have (6) bring/take  
7 have (8) have/get (9) take  
10 bring (11) take (12) brings  
3 1 up  2 off  3 back  4 after  5 on  
6 up  7 on  8 off  9 in  10 out  

Practice 3a  p48
(underline:) 1 had to  2 don't have to  
3 have got  4 must  5 don't need to  
6 weren't allowed to  7 needn't have  
8 didn't need  9 could  10 Did you have to  

Practice 3b  p50
1 can't  2 may  3 will be  4 must have been  
5 can't have been  6 might  
7 may  8 could have  9 should  10 could  
2 b 2 f 3 h 4 i 5 j 6 e 7 d  
8 c 9 a 10 g  
3 there can  2 can  3 being  4 to  5  
6 to  7 been  8  9 have  10 must  
11 able  12  13 been  14  15 and  

Practice 3c  p53
(underline:) 1 because  2 Since  
3 Because  4 in order not to  5 due to  
6 as a result of  7 in order to  8 so that  
9 so  10 because  
2 due (also possible: thanks)  2 because  
3 due (or: owing)  4 in order to (or: To)  5 Because  
6 so (that) (or: in order that)  7 because (also possible but less common: as, since)  
8 Since  9 because  10 so (or: in order)  11 result  12 As a result (or: Consequently; Because of that)  
3 1 to  2 for  3 4 been  5 being  
6 as  7 too  8 of  9  10 that  
11 to  12 that  13 she  14 that  
15 for  

Practice 3d  p57
1 have an operation  2 have any experience  
3 take part  4 bring this meeting to an end  5 Take a seat  
6 having a shower  7 takes place  
8 have fun  9 have lunch  10 have time  
2 (1) have (2) taking (3) have/get  
4 take (5) have (6) bring/take  
7 have (8) have/get (9) take  
10 bring (11) take (12) brings  
3 1 up  2 off  3 back  4 after  5 on  
6 up  7 on  8 off  9 in  10 out
Practice 3 e  
1 division 2 intention 3 investigation 4 invitation 5 omission 6 organisation 7 preservation 8 prevention 9 production 10 repetition 11 satisfaction 12 solution 13 reaction 14 temptation

2 attraction 2 recognition 3 hesitation 4 explanation 5 promotion 6 cancellations 7 suggestion 8 demonstration

3 calculations, the bill comes 2 give their daughter the education 3 take part in the match 4 out a thorough investigation 5 was given an invitation 6 celebrations are held in

1 communication 2 pollution 3 destruction 4 starvation 5 extinction 6 exhaustion 7 foundations 8 protection 9 competition 10 creation

Unit 4

Entry test
1 did you pay 2 have you been 3 didn't you 4 How long 5 Whose 6 C wouldn't 7 D haven't you 8 B doesn't she 9 D aren't you 10 D shall we 11 A so do I 12 A neither have I 13 D I'm afraid not 14 A Would you? 15 B I don't either 16 D for 17 C off 18 C into 19 D make 20 A announcement 21 C circumstances 22 D investment 23 C carelessness 24 A retirement 25 C strength

Practice 4a
1 Where do you live? 2 Who did you give the book to? 3 Who lent you his car? 4 When did you get married? 5 Which game does he play best? 6 Which pullover would you like? 7 What kind of pullovers do you like? 8 Who murdered the President? 9 Who did the madman do to the President? 11 How often do you go to the cinema? 12 How long does the journey take from here? 13 How do I get to your house? 14 Which box does he keep the key in? (or: In which box does he keep the key?) 15 How much milk is (there) left?

Practice 4b
1 doesn't he... does he 2 is there 3 isn't it... shall we 4 haven't you... do you 5 were you... would I 6 do you 7 couldn't you 8 wouldn't you 9 didn't she 10 should she

2 a good book, isn't it 2 plenty (or: lots) of time, haven't we 3 a cup of tea, shall we 4 on the list, aren't I 5 go (out) for a walk, shall we 6 leaves from platform 2, doesn't it 7 the salt, would (or: will) you eat cake, haven't you 9 won't you 10 leaving tomorrow morning, aren't we

Practice 4c
1 I have 2 he doesn't 3 so (or: I would) 4 I'm not 5 you're not 6 I think 7 I (or: we) had 8 not (or: he can) 9 I wouldn't 10 let's

2 Can't you 2 Do they 3 Would you 4 Won't you 5 Has she 6 Can't it 7 Does he 8 Doesn't she 9 Does it 10 Did they 11 Could you 12 Do they

Practice 4d
1 Can't he 2 a cup of coffee, a difference, a dress, a good, a living, marks on the wall, a mistake, a phone call, a profit, a suggestion, a bad impression, the bed, a decision, a good impression, a loss, money

Practice 4e
1 inheritance 2 convenience 3 clumsiness 4 obedience 5 investment 6 development 7 kindness 8 effectiveness 9 fairness 10 preference 11 innocence 12 improvement 13 willingness 14 retirement 15 silence 16 disappointment 17 excitement 18 politeness 19 argument 20 punishment 21 selfishness 22 sixtieth

Practice 4f
1 Appearances 2 Absence 3 Accidents 4 Business 5 Ignorance 6 Ignorance 7 Patience 8 Silence

1 C 2 U 3 C 4 U 5 C 6 U 7 C 8 U 9 U 10 C 11 U 12 U

4 intelligent 2 careless 3 patient 4 deep 5 arrogant 6 ugly 7 wide 8 empty 9 confident 10 millionth

1 disturbance 2 correspondence 3 emergence 4 sleepiness 5 resistance 6 insurance 7 annoyance 8 emptiness 9 discipline 10 commitment

Exam practice 2

Part 1
1 B had to 2 C in order to 3 D bring 4 D were able to 5 B must 6 A since 7 B should have 8 C couldn't have 9 A taken 10 D managed 11 D investigation 12 D made 13 C place 14 C experience 15 D take
Part 2
(16) making (17) do (18) than
(19) done (20) do (21) make
(22) do (23) exercises (24) turned
(25) make (26) told (27) am
(28) put (29) sell (30) didn't

Part 3
31 is taking care of 32 might not have heard 33 couldn't concentrate fully because 34 in order not to leave (or; in order to avoid leaving) 35 ought to have got 36 was cancelled owing to 37 said (or; told me) I could have 38 couldn't understand her because 39 must have been 40 closed as a result of

Part 4
41 up 42 when 43 in 44 v
45 if 46 To 47 v 48 a
49 with 50 will 51 out 52 v
53 they 54 will 55 v

Part 5
(56) tiresome (or; tiring)
(57) household (58) solution
(59) cleaners (60) effective
(61) information (62) description
(63) demonstration (64) trial
(65) obligation

Unit 5
Entry test
1 don't hurry 2 can 3 unless
4 had 5 were 6 B would have been
7 D had passed 8 C hadn't been
9 C could've caught 10 D wouldn't be
11 B had 12 D were 13 D
14 A were travelling 15 D
had had 16 C am hoping 17 D
expecting 18 C to going 19 D
loves 20 C listening 21 im 22 un
23 mis 24 dis 25 un

Practice 5a
1 I'm 2 was 3 would be 4 becomes
5 leaving 6 can't 7 starts 8 should
9 Take 10 might

Practice 5b
1 as long as you give 2 there will be
jobs 3 we have enough money
4 unless you have 5 in case there is

Practice 5c
1 I had visited ... would have phoned
2 I'd known ... wouldn't have got 3 had
3 could have passed 4 hadn't been
... might have made 5 hadn't spent
... wouldn't be 6 could have become
... 7 would have got ... hadn't argued
8 wouldn't have got ... hadn't worn
9 had met ... would have been
10 hadn't seen ... would have been

Practice 5d
1 I had had enough money, I would have
taken a taxi 2 I had been interested in
the film, I would have gone to the cinema
3 we hadn't taken the wrong turning, we
wouldn't have arrived late 4 I have
committed suicide if he hadn't thought
Juliet was dead 5 I hadn't asked for more
food, I wouldn't have been punished
6 fallen down if it hadn't had weak
7 foundations 8 have gone downstairs if
I hadn't been afraid of the dark 8 have
come first if you had run fast 9 I known
she was the examiner, I wouldn't have
made a silly joke 10 had had a car, she
could have driven there

Practice 5e
1 (underline) I wanted 2 hope 3 wish
4 hoping 5 expecting 6 waiting for
7 expect 8 looking forward to 9 loved
10 like 11 like 12 keen 13 on
14 bear

Practice 5f
1 I had 2 would snow 3 was 4 would
stop 5 wouldn't do 6 would come
7 wouldn't build/weren't building
8 could come 9 could go 10 I'd kept
11 I hadn't lost 12 would turn up

1 I wish I wouldn't eat so much (or: eat
less). If only I had taken more exercise.
2 I wish people wouldn't waste water.
3 I wish people would save water.
4 I wish he would drive carefully.
5 If only he had let someone else drive.
6 I wish I would keep calm.
7 If only he hadn't lost his temper.
8 I wish people would use buses.
9 If only they would take rubbish home.
10 I wish we would recycle more paper.
11 I wish people would use their cars less
ton. If only people would walk more.
12 I wish children would play fewer
computer games. If only children would
watch less TV.

1 I wish / If only people would turn off
the tap. 2 I wish / If only your brother
would calm down. 3 I wish / If only the
postman would arrive. 4 I wish / If
only people would stop hunting animals
for sport. 5 I wish / If only the people
next door would turn their TV down.
6 I wish / If only my friend would stop
complaining. 7 I wish / If only it would
rain more. 8 I wish / If only my team
would win / had won. 9 I wish / If only
Christmas would come. 10 I wish / If
only people would recycle things / rubbish / materials etc. more.

1 it would stop raining / I had an
umbrella etc. 2 I could dance (well) / she would dance with me etc.
3 she wasn't leaving / would stay / could have
stayed etc. (or: I was going with her / leaving too etc.)
4 she had married me / I was getting married etc.
5 I had saved the penalty / caught the ball / saved the
goal etc. 6 we hadn't crashed the car / been driving so fast etc. (or: that
wall hadn't been there etc.) 7 I had
brought my swimming things / trunks etc.
(or: it wasn't so hot etc.)
8 I'd done
more revision / had worked harder / hadn't
gone out last night etc.

1 (underline) I wanted 2 hopeful 3 expect
4 hoping 5 expecting 6 waiting for
7 expect 8 looking forward to 9 loved
10 like 11 like 12 keen 13 on
14 bear

1 I wait (2) fond (3) like (4) to
5 expect (6) of (7) keen (8) expect
9 hope (10) want (11) on
12 can't

1 a seminomial means 'one of two games to see who plays in the final' 2 ex-partner
means a person who is your previous
partner 3 substandard means 'lower
than a good standard' 4 multinational
means 'involving people, businesses, etc.
from many countries' 5 subsection
means 'a part of a section' 6 minibus
means 'a small bus' 7 decaffeinated
means 'with the caffeine removed'
8 multiethnic means 'made up of many
ethnic groups' 9 subzero means 'below
cero degrees centigrade in temperature'
10 deregulate means 'to remove rules
and regulations' 11 subplot means 'a
set of events that is less important
than the main one' 12 ex-wife means 'a
previous wife' 13 denationalise means
'to remove state ownership'
14 microbiology means 'the study of the biology of very small organisms'
15 monorail means 'a railway that uses only one rail' 16 miniskirt means 'a very short skirt' 17 subsoil means 'a layer of soil under the surface'
18 microchip means 'a very small silicon chip' 19 decode means 'to remove a code' 20 semi-darkness means 'partial darkness'

(underline) 1 B illegible
2 A unbearable 3 B immature 4 D misspelt 5 B informal 6 D debase 7 A denationalise 8 A ex-partner 9 D multi-purpose 10 A subcommittee

3 (1) unpopular (2) displeasing (or: unpleasant) (3) unhealthy (4) undeniable (5) irresistible (6) impossible (7) ineffective (8) illegal (9) unenjoyable (10) unjust (11) unbearable

**Unit 6**

**Entry test**

1 D finish 2 B have 3 A while 4 D in case 5 B Suppose 6 C point 7 D about to 8 D due 9 C is to 10 C Whatever 11 B we left 12 C for you to take 13 D were leaving 14 B go 15 A didn't go 16 D afterwards 17 B after 18 C until 19 D by 20 B in case 21 more time 22 the time 23 waste 24 great time 25 Take your

**Practice 6a**

(underline) 1 When 2 until 3 before 4 by the time 5 immediately 6 Supposing 7 Whether 8 When 9 As soon as 10 provided

2 I come 2 are 3 has finished (or: is finished) 4 get (or: have got) 5 tell 6 plays (or: will play) 7 'll tell ... don't tell 8 'll lend ... bring it back 9 'll take ... get 10 'll go (or: are going) ... has finished / finished

3 (1) when (2) do (3) changes (4) takes (5) has (6) is (7) starts (8) case (9) long (10) in (11) come

**Practice 6b**

1 are about to 2 is due to 3 are not to 4 are on the verge of 5 is on the point of 6 No matter 7 However (or: No matter how) 8 am due to 9 Whenever 10 are to

2 beginning 2 bursting 3 to arrive / arriving 4 to perform 5 to expire 6 to leave 7 does 8 see 9 choose 10 hides 11 runs 12 live

3 (1) whatever (2) how (3) build (4) on (5) decide (6) will (7) due (8) are (9) do (10) is (11) however (12) no matter (13) take (14) aren't

**Practice 6c**

(tick) 1 B we went. 2 C have 3 B it if you came 4 C you tidied 5 A for 6 B didn't come 7 C him to wear 8 A we separated. 9 B have drunk 10 B watching TV than

2 1 d 2 1 3 g 4 c 5 b 6 h 7 j 8 a 9 k 10 i 11 f 12 e

3 I visited, to spend 2 repaired, painted 3 left, stay 4 helped, do 5 bought, not to waste 6 to have, didn't stop

4 1 time you bought 2 would prefer 3 would rather study drama 4 would rather not go on 5 'd sooner you didn't make 6 rather put you 7 time you told 8 for me to 9 had the living room

**Practice 6d**

(underline) 1 by 2 afterwards 3 afterwards 4 then 5 till 6 later 7 by 8 till 9 After 10 in

2 in 2 later 3 Then 4 Afterwards 5 after 6 by 7 until / till 8 far as

3 (1) as (2) after (3) by (4) then (5) Later (6) after (7) until (8) afterwards (9) Again (10) in (11) then (12) later

**Practice 6e**

1 pass 2 day 3 spend 4 taking 5 take 6 wasting 7 takes 8 spent 9 have 10 on 11 in 12 take

2 h 2 d 3 i 4 l 5 k 6 b 7 j 8 e 9 f 10 a 11 g 12 c

3 I to pass the time 2 spent 3 on time 4 takes time 5 have time 6 are having a great time 7 is time 8 the right time 9 on time 10 a waste of time 11 Do you have time 12 pass the time of day

**Exam practice 3**

**Part 1**

1 D insensitive 2 C long 3 D unsuccessful 4 A inadequate 5 A ill-informed 6 D sit 7 C unlikely 8 A irrelevant 9 D soon 10 C later 11 C should 12 D is 13 C whether 14 D not 15 C inappropriate

**Part 2**

16 got (or: were) 17 miss (or: 18 had 19 bear (or: 20 take 21 fond 22 (or: 23 wish 24 looking (or: 25 was 26 if 27 bear (or: 28 spend (or: 29 would 30 over

**Part 3**

31 won't be back until 32 in case the taxi is 33 is due to arrive 34 if they have 35 Peter whether he wanted 36 I were you, I'd 37 unless we have 38 if he doesn't phone 39 as long as you arrive 40 provided (that) you have

**Part 4**

41 to 42 have 43 V 44 the 45 the 46 have 47 V 48 not 49 go 50 wish 51 the 52 been 53 V 54 to 55 they

**Part 5**

56 unable (or: 57) impatient 58 unintelligent (or: 59) impossible 60 inadequate (or: 61) unsatisfactory 62 incorrect (or: 63) impolite 64 unfortunately (or: 65) inappropriate

**Unit 7**

**Entry test**

1 is being treated 2 was announced 3 had been removed 4 will have been achieved 5 will be held 6 D was born 7 B must be worn 8 C It's reported 9 D by 10 C with 11 C got his hair cut 12 B Shall I have 13 A We had our house 14 A got himself elected 15 D got married 16 A get 17 A get 18 B get for your old car? 19 D get out of 20 C Get it 21 dish 22 fire 23 heating 24 human 25 break

**Practice 7a**

1 is broadcast 2 is being interviewed 3 has been charged 4 will be installed 5 will have been elected 6 was paid 7 had beenburgled 8 was being evacuated 9 will be introduced 10 are sold

2 Preservatives are not / No preservatives are added to our products. 2 A lot of

309
new schools are being built in the provinces. 3 He has just been arrested on suspicion of murder. 4 Will her new book be published next month? 5 The new motorway will have been completed by Christmas. 6 The house hasn’t been cleaned for weeks. 7 Mr and Mrs Dixon’s water was cut off because they hadn’t paid their bill. 8 The new supermarket will be opened next week. 9 The car couldn’t be used because it was being serviced. 10 A lot of books are published on information technology.

(1) is / was based (2) were interviewed (3) were visited (4) have / had been built (5) have been / had been / were designed (6) was / had been considered (7) was closed (8) have been renovated (9) is shown (10) are equipped (11) are provided (12) were / are considered (13) were interviewed (14) have been / were awarded

Practice 7b
1 I was sent a whole lot of junk mail. A whole lot of junk mail was sent to me. 2 I was lent two thousand pounds by the Credit Bank in 1999. Two thousand pounds was lent to me by the Credit Bank in 1999. 3 Each of the children was given a bottle of milk every day. A bottle of milk was given to each of the children every day. 4 We were shown the sights of the city. The sights of the city were shown to us. 5 The workers will be paid £50 every Friday. Every Friday, £50 will be paid to the workers. 6 The children had been promised more food. More food had been promised to the children. 7 They were told the secret by the magician. The secret was told to them by the magician. 8 She was offered the job. The job was offered to her. 9 He had been taught maths by one of his uncles. Maths had been taught to him by one of his uncles. 10 The animal charity was given a lot of money. A lot of money was given to the animal charity.

1 d 2 e 3 g 4 c 5 a 6 j 7 b 8 i 9 h 10 f

1 is said to be 2 was thought to be 3 has been put down / was put forward 4 believed to have run 5 was considered (to be) 6 was supposed to be 7 was agreed that the directors 8 was taken up by 9 was taught everything I know 10 was ordered to pay

Practice 7c
1 get / have your eyes tested 2 had it made 3 get / have it serviced 4 ‘ve just had it cut 5 to get / have central heating installed 6 just had it redecorated 7 ‘m having it repaired 8 get / have them cleaned 9 to get / have it cut down 10 get that cavity filled

1 (had) (2) get / have (3) mended (4) get (5) got (6) had (7) done (8) it (9) get / have (10) split / tipped etc. (11) have (12) taken (13) was (14) burgled

Practice 7d
1 c 2 h 3 a 4 b 5 j 6 e 7 f 8 i 9 g 10 d

1 cold 2 the car 3 going 4 the joke 5 the kids 6 those wet clothes 7 to the end 8 the idea

1 surprise (2) hobbies (3) stamps (4) one (5) chance (6) channels (7) satellite (8) snowed (9) cold (10) warmer

Practice 7e
1 countable: letterbox, pen-friend, personal computer, parking meter, remote control, news bulletin, package holiday, passer-by, police station, post office, sleeping bag, swimming pool, washing machine
2 uncountable: washing powder, soda water, show business, social work, toilet-paper, washing-up liquid, water skiing, writing paper, human nature

1 (noun + noun) 1 c 2 j 3 i 4 g 5 h 6 d 7 b 8 e 9 f 10 a
2 (adjective + noun) 1 c 2 d 3 g 4 i 5 a 6 j 7 b 8 e 9 f 10 h

1 zebra crossing 2 central heating 3 fast food 4 pocket money 5 fire brigade 6 high school 7 common sense 8 remote control 9 dry-cleaner’s 10 burglar alarm

1 Across: 1 dry 2 sun 3 heating 4 inverted 9 make 10 gum 11 sense
2 Down: 1 driving 2 studies 3 junk 4 fries 5 park 6 stop 7 human

1 break-in 2 setback 3 hold-up 4 getaway 5 check-outs 6 break-out 7 break-up 8 take-over 9 take-away 10 take-off 11 print-out 12 check-in

Unit 8

Entry test
1 suggested 2 explained 3 begged 4 not to go 5 had been trying 6 B if he could 7 D she had 8 C he could 9 C she had spent 10 A to use 11 A hitting 12 C that he didn’t know 13 D to have 14 B to own 15 D let 16 C say 17 D to go 18 B that she was 19 D denied 20 A rejected 21 amusing 22 disappointed 23 annoying 24 boring 25 charming

Practice 8a
1 (that) we (should) go for a walk 2 (that) he hadn’t been anywhere near the scene of the crime 3 (that) that spot was the best place for a picnic 4 that the swallows returned every spring and flew past her window 5 to (or: if he could) answer the phone because he was having a shower 6 (that) he had given me his homework the week before 7 his dad if he could pick him up from school that day 8 to drink so much 9 a (that) she wouldn’t help me because I hadn’t helped her 10 b to help me because I hadn’t helped her 11 a (that) he would bring it back the next day 12 b to bring it back the next day

1 d 2 e 3 g 4 b 5 i 6 h 7 a 8 f 9 j 10 c

1 to leave if I did it again 2 was then going to read out the results 3 to (or: if he could) bring him the wine list 4 that he would bring it right away 5 his / their team would easily beat mine / ours 6 to give her another chance 7 we should be quiet because the baby was sleeping 8 (that) he was innocent of all the charges 9 first of all I / we should press the button 10 to be careful because the water was deep
(1) if / whether he could have some more pocket money 2 where he had been born 3 how far the stadium was / how far it was to the stadium 4 (me) if / whether I was still living in London 5 whether he worked in the central branch or in the provinces 6 whether I was going to give her the money or not 7 whether he had brought the book back or not 8 who had bought Picasso painting 9 where she had got such a lovely pullower

2 How long did the journey take? 2 Was it snowing in Manchester? 3 How old are you? 4 Where were you born? 5 How long have you lived here? 6 Are you married? 7 Do you have a family? 8 How long have you worked as an editor? 9 When can you start work? 10 What do you like most about your job? 11 Who told you about us? 12 What are the qualities of a good manager? 13 How much do you expect to be paid? 14 How much were you being paid in your last job?

(1) whether / if (2) wondered (3) to (4) was (5) would (6) that (7) next / following (8) thought (9) whether (10) not

1 have 2 3 been 4 or 5 from 6 7 1 8 the 9 him 10 did 11 had 12 was 13 14 have 15

(underline:) 1 telling 2 denied 3 postponing 4 their arrival 5 to see 6 to buy 7 to seeing 8 going 9 stay 10 climbing

1 regret to tell / inform you that 2 I'd rather have a pizza for a change 3 didn't / wouldn't let us drink too much Coke when we were children 4 suggest (that) we take the train 5 managed to persuade her parents to let her go 6 door appears to be locked after all 7 can't stand is people eating popcorn in the cinema 8 arrived two hours late but was worth waiting for 9 insisted on catching the early flight 10 look forward to getting your next letter

(1) taking / to take (2) to be (3) to day-dream / day-dreaming (4) to play / playing (5) talking (6) starting (7) having (8) to have (9) being (10) point

1 A: say B: talking 2 A: telling B: tell 3 A: telling B: persuade 4 A: give B: talk / speak 5 A: said B: tell 6 A: say ... talking B: say 7 A: told B: talking 8 A: said / says B: convinced ... telling 9 A: gave B: turned down 10 A: deny ... told B: convince ... discus

(1) talked (2) given (3) said (4) turned down (5) persuaded / tell (6) discuss (7) told (8) talk (9) convinced (10) denied (11) give (12) refuse (13) telling (14) give

(underline: (1) encouraging (2) depressing (3) disappointed (4) worrying (5) exhausting (6) disturbing (7) surprised (8) worried (9) shocking (10) uninteresting (11) boring (12) embarrassing

1 confused 2 frightening 3 interested 4 irritating 5 surprised 6 depressed 7 relaxing 8 bored 9 annoyed 10 embarrassed

1 I think it’s appalling / disgusting / shocking, etc. 2 I would feel exhausted / exhilarated, etc. 3 I would feel disappointed / embarrassed, etc. 4 I think they’re appalling / disgusting / annoying, etc. 5 They think they are boring / interesting / irritating / amusing, etc. 6 I would feel excited, surprised, etc. 7 I feel depressed, disturbed, etc. 8 I think it’s boring / exciting, etc. 9 I feel irritated, annoyed, etc. 10 I would feel ashamed, embarrassed, etc.

1 fascinating / boring, etc. 2 irritating / exciting, etc. 3 fascinating / exciting, etc. 4 interested / dedicated, etc. 5 surprised / amazed, etc. 6 very relaxing / really boring, etc. 7 disappointing / fascinating, etc. 8 exciting / irritating, etc.

Across: 2 interested 5 heated 6 amused 8 building 9 freezing 10 ageing 11 rewarding 12 collected Down: 1 captivating 3 trusting 4 touched 7 humiliated 10 armed

Exam practice 4

Part 1
1 C gets 2 A nature 3 C pressure
4 D show business 5 A beings
6 D resources 7 D breakthroughs
8 B break-out 9 D were shot
10 B making 11 C got
12 B passers-by 13 D screenwriters
14 A ready-made 15 A bulletins

Part 2
16 living (17) says (18) was (19) were (20) why (21) if / whether (22) doing / studying (23) told / warned (24) not (25) close / shut (26) go (27) me (28) made (29) to (30) was

Part 3
31 barber’s shops are known as 32 the prisoners will be caught 33 can’t be denied that she 34 has had / got her car repaired 35 is going to be pulled 36 is supposed to be 37 has to / must be picked up 38 must not be brought 39 must get my car serviced 40 have the house renovated

Part 4
41 been 42 ✔ 43 up 44 it 45 a 46 of 47 to 48 had (1st) 49 ✔ 50 has 51 ✔ 52 whether 53 to 54 about 55 ✔

Part 5
56 science (57) pen-name (58) novelist (59) publishers (60) writing (61) notebook (62) typewriter (63) personal (64) processing (65) print-out

Unit 9

Entry test
1 more 2 loveliest 3 worst 4 a lot 5 slightly 6 for 7 D of 8 A for 9 B to 10 B of 11 B 12 C black leather 13 A new Japanese car 14 D lovely red 15 B Posh German sports 16 C most powerful 17 D strong 18 C taller 19 C weak 20 D natural 21 B absent 22 D short 23 D easy 24 C economy class 25 C well

Practice 9a

(1) lot (2) youngest (3) more (4) than (5) eldest (6) most (7) more (8) than (9) the (10) as (11) more (12) more (13) as (14) livelier (15) than (16) older (17) the (18) better (19) less (20) expensive
Practice 9b

1. ashamed of 2. interested in 3. absent from 4. typical of 5. amused by 6. disappointed with 7. involved in 8. shocked by 9. different from 10. good at 11. famous for 12. crowded with 13. right about 14. engaged to 15. proud of


Practice 9c

1. 2. a tall dark man 3. a big wooden spoon 4. a delicious big birthday cake (or: a big delicious birthday cake) 5. a large old frying pan 6. a beautiful pink silk blouse 7. a large round ball 8. a big old brick factory 9. an ugly old wooden desk (or: an ugly old wooden desk)

Practice 9d


Unit 10

Entry test


Practice 10a

1. as Tony 2. (on) the same day as 3. the same time as Bob 4. as heavy as (or: the same weight as) 5. colour hair as 6. the same school as 7. geography as Bob 8. good at maths as Tony 9. at English as 10. as good at history as 11. as tall as 12. money as Tony 13. his mum as his dad 14. as a businessman 15. as successful as

Practice 10b

1. 2 3 f 4 b 5 d 6 a

1. such a high price 2. such a 3. so many 4. such an 5. so 6. so few 7. so 8. much 9. such a 10. so much

1. too 2. so 3. enough 4. too 5. very 6. too 7. very 8. so 9. so 10. too much

1. were surprised by such cold 2. too heavy (for me) 3. wasn't tall enough 4. so sad it made me 5. speaks so softly (that) we 6. weren't high enough 7. were so many people 8. was so strong (that) 9. but for me to 10. have enough money for / to buy

Practice 10c

1. It was a fairly good day so we went for a walk. 2. Wembley Stadium is (absolutely) enormous. 3. He's rather / quite / fairly noisy in class. 4. She's always been quite / fairly hardworking. 5. I quite like the theatre but I prefer films. 6. John is rather more talkative than his brother. 7. Yes, I quite agree with everything you say. 8. It came as quite a shock to get home and find the house burgled. 9. I'm afraid I found the film a bit boring. 10. The test seems to be quite easy.

1. interesting ... long 2. nice 3. experienced ... careless 4. certain ... harder 5. worried ... safe 6. unpleasant ... pleased 7. disappointed 8. sour ... awful 9. healthy ... strong 10. grey ... young


1. looked 2. seems 3. staying 4. felt 5. appeared

5. (1) more (2) to be (3) quite / rather (4) to (5) quite / very (6) too (7) to (8) better (9) a (10) quite / very (11) little / bit (12) quite (13) easy (14) much (15) be / seem

Practice 10d

Unit 11

Entry test

1 beautifully 2 quietly 3 happily 4 probably 5 daily 6 She slowly opened the door. / She opened the door slowly. / Slowly she opened the door. 7 He is always laughing in class. 8 She probably doesn’t speak French. 9 On Sunday he drove along the motorway dangerously. / He drove dangerously along the motorway on Sunday. 10 I have always liked music very much. 11 D earlier 12 C much harder 13 A less 14 D quickly 15 C as soon as 16 B see 17 A look 18 D about 19 A listening to 20 D look 21 C late 22 C about 23 D good 24 A wide 25 B close

Exam practice 5

Part 1
1 B about 2 C surprised 3 B embarrassed 4 D in 5 D the simplest 6 A cheaper 7 B than 8 A much 9 B slightly 10 D first-class 11 D longer 12 B accustomed 13 A amazed 14 C efficient 15 C powerful

Part 2
16 like (17) so (18) such 19 such (20) lot (21) a (22) a 23 that (24) forward (25) seem / appear (26) as (27) of (28) been 29 as (30) so

Part 3
31 he is married to 32 to be fond of 33 were very proud of 34 ‘s unusual for 35 became / got bored with 36 are quite / very different from 37 was very rude to 38 were surprised by 39 was confident of 40 not be responsible for

Part 4
41 The 42 for 43 the 44 45 more 46 47 the 48 so 49 if 50 the 51 it 52 of 53 much 54 like 55

Part 5
(56) usually (57) qualifications (58) attractive (59) beautiful (60) essential (61) talented (62) powerful (63) natural (64) latest (65) better

Practice 11a

adjective

suitable
beautiful
unlucky
tragic
monthly
fourth
daily
possible
true
ugly
fast
afraid
undoubtedly
full
efficient
simple
publicly
lonely
still

adverb

suitably
beautifully
unluckily
tragically
monthly
fourthly
dailyly
possibly
truly
unfortunately
awfully
unquestionably
fully
efficiently
simply
publicly
lonelyly
still

prepositional phrase

in a lovely way

in an ugly way

Practice 11b

1 beautifully 2 softly 3 carefully 4 noisily 5 daily 6 monthly 7 occasionally 8 easily 9 early 10 well

Practice 11c

1 more efficiently 2 as badly as 3 earlier than 4 more slowly 5 as dangerously 6 less often (or: more often!) 7 as well 8 (the) quickest 9 more 10 harder

Practice 11d

1 hear / see ... watching 2 understand 3 hear ... listening 4 heard 5 heard from 6 looked / glanced 7 caught 8 noticed 9 looking for 10 Listen 11 heard / understand 12 staring

Practice 11e

1 You’ll never finish your homework in time if you don’t hurry up. 2 I have probably lived in this neighbourhood for a year. 3 I love travelling by plane very much. 4 Doesn’t she play the piano well? 5 We arrived at the station on Sunday morning at nine o’clock / at nine o’clock on Sunday morning. 6 She probably won’t be coming to work today. 7 He performed the part superbly at the National Theatre on Saturday / on Saturday at the National Theatre. 8 She usually visits her mother in hospital at the weekend. 9 Our party definitely won’t raise taxes. 10 Can you come to my office in town at six o’clock?

Practice 11f

1 I went to the post office yesterday, / Yesterday I went to the post office. 2 I’ve become interested in skiing recently. / Recently I’ve become interested in skiing. 3 I’ve recently become interested in skiing. 4 We often play football in the playground after school. 5 He drives very carefully on the motorway. 6 Suddenly he got up and walked away. / He suddenly got up and walked away. 7 8 He is waiting outside. 9 I only like ice-cream, not chocolate. 10 I cooked and I washed the dishes as well.

Practice 11g

1 (1) yesterday (2) immediately (3) often (4) rarely (5) Occasionally (6) always (7) never (8) probably (9) quickly (10) a few minutes later (11) Outside (12) hardly (13) The night before (14) after midnight (15) usually

Practice 11h

1 a

Practice 11i

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11j

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11k

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11l

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11m

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11n

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11o

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11p

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11q

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11r

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11s

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11t

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11u

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11v

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11w

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11x

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11y

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11z

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11aa

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ab

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ac

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ad

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ae

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11af

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ag

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ah

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ai

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11aj

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ak

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11al

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11am

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11an

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ao

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ap

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11aq

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ar

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11as

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11at

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11au

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11av

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11aw

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ax

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ay

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11az

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11ba

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bb

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bc

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bd

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11be

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bf

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bg

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bh

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bi

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bj

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bk

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bl

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bm

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bn

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bo

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bp

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bq

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11br

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bs

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bt

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bu

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bv

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bw

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bx

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11by

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d

Practice 11bz

1 (a) b (b) c (c) d
Unit 12

Entry test

1  2  3 outside the 4 a
5 the 6 B some 7 C any
8 B another 9 D little 10 D much
11 D some 12 A it 13 C it
14 D is 15 D = 16 D Physics
17 C = 18 A the outskirts
19 D the 20 B = 21 depression
22 opportunity 23 generosity
24 publicity 25 reluctance

Practice 12a

1 The 2 the 3  4 the  5  6 the 7 the 8 the 9 the 10 the 11  12 a  13
2 The Romans invaded Britain in AD 43 and, chasing ancient Britons along the Thames, they came to the first place where it was easy to cross. They built a garrison there - and London was born. They also erected a bridge over the river. The garrison became a major trading post. Later, the bridge suffered neglect and the whole area was raided by the Vikings. In AD 886 Alfred the Great drove out the raiders, the bridge was repaired and the city prospered again. A hundred years later, the Vikings returned but King Ethelred sailed up the Thames attaching ropes to London Bridge, headed downstream and pulled it down.

Practice 12b

(underline) 1 None of 2 Each of 3 each 4 Every 5 Each 6 neither 7 every 8 each 9 few 10 a few 11 a little 12 a little ... a few 13 many 14 most 15 several 16 some 17 some 18 another 19 a few ... other 20 either

Practice 12c

1 Down: 1 hair 2 children 3 news 6 music 7 knowledge 10 evil 11 work Across: 4 health 5 flesh 8 furniture 9 women 12 pride 13 luck 14 species
2 advice / information 2 species 3 fruit 4 Equipment 5 series 6 permission 7 hair 8 computers 9 equipment / machinery 10 homework
3 a deer ... deer 2 cod ... cod a beer ... beer 4 iron ... iron experience ... experience 6 works ... work 7 a noise ... noise
4 (1) a (2) the (3) - (4) - (5) a (6) / any (7) the (8) / some (9) - (10) / some (11) - (12) a (13) - (14) - (15) -

Practice 12d

1 expenses 2 media 3 pair of shorts 4 scissors 5 jury 6 company 7 interests 8 troops ... army 9 supplies 10 foundations
2 I was ... it 2 was ... it 3 is ... it 4 was ... was ... it / that 5 her 6 are ... they your ... is 8 The ... are ... the 9 is ... they 10 was ... any

Practice 12e

1 decide 2 abolish 3 add 4 accuse 5 float 6 demolish 7 repeat 8 render 9 confess 10 cohere 11 elucidate 12 revert 13 expand 14 oppose 15 graduate 16 identify 17 decorate 18 occupy 19 collide 20 permit 21 qualify 22 starve 23 abolish 24 value

Practice 12f

1 discussion 2 responsibility 3 possibility 4 depression 5 explosion 6 profession 7 revision 8 discovery 9 performance 10 frequency 11 security 12 majority
2 led to the closure ... give me great pleasure ... continued to correspond ... 4 can't prove the existence ... a lot of patience ... 6 to make any reference ... most ... particularly famous for ... (or: because of ... their discovery 8 is a possibility ... 9 shown great generosity ... be given the ... one more opportunity

Exam practice 6

Part 1

1 C hard 2 A slowly 3 B noisy 4 D frequently 5 C angrily 6 A carefully 7 A softly 8 C loudly 9 C long 10 A probably 11 C never 12 D faster 13 A early 14 D did they go 15 B than

Part 2

16 other (17) the (18) a (19) enough (20) a (21) the (22) slice / piece (23) the (24) window / door (25) group / bunch / crowd (26) their (27) of (28) few (29) is (30) time / chance / opportunity

Part 3

31 have always been fond of 32 probably won’t come 33 didn’t do very / at all well 34 smokes (much / far) less than 35 didn’t speak loudly 36 have I been 37 had she finished her chocolate 38 sooner had I left 39 are not working hard 40 be / take long until I’ve

Part 4

41 more 42 of 43 of 44 of 45 To (1st) 46 The 47 48 each 49 the 50 of 51 52 of

Part 5

56 successfully 57 better 58 correctly 59 fluenent 60 frequently 61 occasionally 62 carefully 63 accurately 64 strongly 65 simply
Unit 13

Entry test
1 who 2 where 3 whose 4 which
5 ill, who 6 standing 7 crying
8 A doing 9 B knowing
10 C having finished 11 A although
12 B the fact that 13 D the heat
14 C however, 15 B however
16 C along 17 D back 18 A away
19 C into 20 D over
21 addict 22 approval 23 historians
24 enviously 25 threats

Practice 13a
p232
1 The new director, who gets on well with everyone, is very popular. 2 The beach which we always go to (or: where we always go) is very quiet. 3 The film I went to see, which I enjoyed very much, is called Titanic. 4 Our cat, which we’ve had for five years, is called William. 5 1990 was the year in which I first met her. 6 The house in which the doctor lives (or: where the doctor lives) is the biggest in the village. 7 George, whose wife is from Argentina, speaks Spanish. 8 The winters, which I enjoy, are very cold.

2 It was a mistake (which) they have already apologised for. 2 Mathematics is a subject (which) she has little interest in. 3 It was the guerrillas (who) they sold the weapons to. 4 It was the Queen (who) the Prime Minister sent the letter to. 5 It was the bank (that) which he borrowed the money from. 6 That was the year (that) which I was born in. 7 March 25 is the day (which) that the country celebrates its independence on. 8 That’s the hospital (which) that the twins were born in. 9 That is the island (that) which we spent our honeymoon in. 10 These are the reasons (that) I chose to marry him for.

3 March 25 is the day when the country celebrates its independence. 8 That’s the hospital where the twins were born. 9 That is the island where we spent our honeymoon. 10 These are the reasons why I chose to marry him.

(1) where (2) when (3) which
(4) whose (5) where (6) that / why
(7) which / that (8) that (9) which
(10) which (11) who / that (12) when
(13) whose (14) with (15) whose

Practice 13b
p235
1 Bill fell asleep listening to the lecture. 2 She lived in London for a year training to be a nurse. 3 The students felt nervous waiting at their desks. 4 Giving out the question, the teacher told the students not to open the booklet. 5 Opening the test booklets, the students looked anxiously for the easiest questions.

2 Having tried phoning her several times, he wrote her a letter. 2 Having received an invitation, I felt I had to go to the party. 3 Not having learnt any Japanese, he couldn’t understand the message. 4 Having picked up his luggage, he went to look for a taxi.

(1) haunted (2) made (3) built (4) broken (5) staring (6) followed (7) looking (8) prepared (9) begun (10) having (11) talking (12) Knowing (13) making (14) hiding (15) waiting (16) coming (17) carrying (18) getting (19) wearing (20) holding

Practice 13c
p237
1 Despite / In spite of the fact that / Although / (Even) though 2 whereas / but 3 in spite of / despite 4 Although / (Even) though 5 despite / In spite of the fact that 5 though 6 However

1 f 2 e 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 d

(1) whereas / but (2) In spite of / Despite (3) However (4) Although (5) even though / but (6) despite / In spite of

Practice 13d
p239
1 away 2 away 3 back 4 by
5 into 6 through 7 on 8 away
9 down 10 over

1 get on well 2 able to get through
3 you to get on with 4 must / have to
5 get (it) across 5 gets me down

3 (1) away (2) over (3) out (4) down
(5) get (6) back (7) away (8) on
(9) across (10) by (11) on (12) over

Practice 13e
p241
1 threatened 2 approval 3 critical
4 expensive 5 envious / jealous
6 freedom 7 dangerous / addictive
8 novelist 9 sexist 10 furious
11 broadens 12 professional

1 was filled with envy 2 made a proposal 3 behaviour in class improves
4 are national 5 will broaden your knowledge 6 was a (real / genuine) historical figure

3 Down: 1 piteous 3 jealous 5 cellist 6 active 7 canoeist
Across: 2 Kingdom 4 bigamous 6 anxious 9 Scientist 10 tragic

(1) pianist (2) professional (3) musical (4) characteristic
(5) industrious (6) envious (7) response (8) performance
(9) critics (10) artists (11) freedom (12) poet

Unit 14

Entry test
1 in 2 to 3 at 4 in 5 in 6 B of
7 D = 8 A of 9 D of 10 C for
11 C it 12 B there 13 A it
14 C there 15 A there 16 C on
17 B at 18 D in 19 C by
20 D to 21 up 22 through
23 off 24 back 25 out

Practice 14a
p248
1 In ... to ... in 2 on ... on ... into
3 to ... at 4 to ... in ... at
5 in ... in ... on 6 in ... into
7 On ... to ... into 8 on ... in
9 at ... at / in ... in 10 in ... on ... to
11 in ... on ... at ... 12 on ... on
13 to ... on ... to ... 14 in ... at ... to ... at ...

2 at present, on arrival, at 6.30pm, in the afternoon, on Wednesday afternoon, in an hour, at weekends, on weekdays, on a cold day, in a week, at the beginning, in a moment, at last, in the year 2000, on her birthday, at midnight, on March 25, on a winter’s night, at times, in the summer

3 on / at the corner of the road, in / at the back, at the crossroads, on the television, on a journey, at the bus stop, in hospital, in Europe, on Earth, in the north, in / on the streets, at work all day, in the open air, at home, in the park, in / on a chair, at the door, in a queue, at the bottom, on top

(1) to (2) at (3) at (4) to (5) on
(6) in (7) in (8) in (9) in (10) in
(11) in (12) in (13) in (14) At
(15) in
Exam practice 7

Part 1
1 A advice 2 C means 3 D about 4 C Although 5 A choice 6 D get 7 C though 8 B envy 9 C another 10 C fact 11 B down 12 A while 13 D approval 14 C deny 15 D Although

Part 2
(16) at (17) from (18) by (19) in (20) from (21) on (22) in (23) at (24) by (25) on (26) During (27) in (28) of (29) on (30) at / towards

Part 3
31 not waking up on time 32 of the fact that his 33 Peggy is sixty 34 matter how rich he is 35 though he didn’t speak 36 where I used to work 37 man whose car was stolen 38 discussed the problem with the 39 I get back to you 40 I’ll get over

Part 4
41 been 42 it 43 some 44 45 that 46 yet 47 he 48 49 as 50 to 51 even 52 the 53 it 54 55 they

Part 5
(56) approval (57) warnings (58) intelligent (59) opportunities (60) complaints (61) behaviour (62) belief (63) misunderstandings (64) angrily (65) responsible

Social relationships

1 (1) husband (2) wife (3) family (4) parents (5) grandparents (6) grandmother / granny / grannie / gran (7) Uncle (8) Aunt / Aunty / Auntie

2 Across: 1 grandfather 2 grandmother 3 aunt / 4 nephew 5 widow 6 stepfather 7 fiancé 8 widower 9 stepmother 10 father-in-law 11 great-granddaughter

Down: 1 grandparents (Jack and Daisy Andrews)

Friendship

1 friendly 2 unfriendly 3 friendship 4 close 5 made 6 user-friendly

2 1 out 2 up 3 down 4 out 5 up ... up 6 out ... up ... off

Occupations

1 (1) unemployment (2) job (3) earn (4) manual (5) outdoors

2 a career b interview c management d job e sack f wage g salary h pension i promotion j reference k qualifications l experience m offer n trainee

3 l g c e i f j a k d h b

4 I as 2 in 3 for 4 from 5 of 6 off

5 I take him on 2 's taking on 3 took up this post 4 take over as (the new) director 5 deal with 6 carried out

Education

3 (1) primary (2) Marks (3) grades (4) area (5) degree

2 (1) exercise (2) place (3) grades (4) diploma (5) private (6) classes (7) grade (8) year (9) heart (10) revise
The arts

1 performed 2 stage 3 roles
4 poetry 5 lectures 6 novels

literature: short story, biography, chapter, drama, thriller, western, comedy, volume, play, novel, poetry, edition, tragedy, horror, magazine, love story, science, fiction, plot, opera, character

music: sound-track, audience, orchestra, style, musical, programme, CD, pop, concert, musician, singer, performance, microphone, encore, opera

theatre: audience, cast, drama, script, rehearsal, musical, costume, act, scenery, first night, comedy, stage, set, matinée, lighting, play, tragedy, encore, performance, role, opera, character

cinema: sound-track, audience, première, drama, subtitles, thriller, western, script, screenplay, musical, horror, act, scenery, first night, comedy, set, screen, auditorium, trailer, performance, role, character

art: sculpture, exhibition, brush, scenery, scene, watercolour, picture, landscape, canvas, illustration

1 rehearsal / rehearse 2 screenplay
3 audience 4 cast / drama / musical / comedy / play / tragedy / opera
5 edition 6 sound-track 7 costume
8 concert 9 volume 10 illustrations

1 plays 2 performances 3 put
4 character 5 author

act in: a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a production

appear in: a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a production
broadcast: a play / Hamlet / a production / a symphony / a piece of music / a recital / a concert
compose: a symphony / a piece of music
direct: a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a production
get: a difficult part / the leading role / a video / a new book / a CD
give: a performance / a recital / a concert
play: a difficult part / Hamlet / a CD / the leading role / a video / a piece of music
produce: a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a CD / a video / a new book
publish: a play / Hamlet / a review / a new book / the story / a piece of music / a new edition
put on: a play / Hamlet / a show / a production / a concert
review: a play / Hamlet / a film / a show / a horror movie / a production / a CD / a video / a new book / a recital / a new edition / a concert
see: a film / a show / a horror movie / a video / Hamlet / a play / a performance / a production
set: the scene
watch: a play / a performance / Hamlet / a film / a horror movie / a production / a video / a show
write: a play / a review / a new book / the story / a new edition / Hamlet

1 set 2 reviews 3 acted in 4 role
5 performances 6 broadcast / reviewed
7 produced 8 composed 9 published
10 watch

1 I would put up my hand. 2 I stay up.
3 I would take up English / Japanese etc.
4 The student was sent down because he / she cheated. (or: for cheating.)
5 I pay attention. 6 You have got through (your exam).
7 I would look up the word (or: look it up) in my / a dictionary.
8 I should have to get into medical school.
9 I hope the question will come up in the exam. 10 You should have given it in your homework earlier / yesterday etc.

Sports

1 at 2 indoor 3 on 4 equipment
5 athletics 6 of 7 winter 8 outdoor
9 referee 10 fit

1 at 2 throw 3 beat 4 bounce
5 for 6 won 7 match 8 lobbed
9 hit 10 volleyball

places: ring, pool, club, course, field, track, pitch, ground, court, stadium

games: snooker, golf, squash, bowls, tennis, football, hockey, basketball, volleyball

sport: canoeing, swimming, motor racing, boxing, athletics, fishing, skiing, diving

people: umpire, coach, defender, player, referee, judge, team, goalkeeper, captain, manager, striker

equipment: club, skis, rod, oar, net, bat, racquet, stick, whistle, boots, trunks

Hobbies

1 hobby 2 games 3 collect 4 spend
5 climbing 6 photographs / pictures
7 collection 8 dance / drama

1 takes 2 go 3 have 4 do 5 makes
6 has been taking 7 does 8 going 9
to make 10 takes 11 have 12 going

1 amusement 2 funny 3 enjoyable
4 pleasant 5 laughter 6 photographer
7 humorous 8 delight 9 amusing
10 grimming 11 peaceful 12 happiness

Travel and tourism

1 by ... take 2 flight ... departure
lounge 3 miss ... on 4 passports
5 receptionist ... porter 6 bill ...
checked out 7 ferry ... crossing
8 book ... holiday ... (scheduled / charter) flight

1 (1) holiday (2) stay (3) by (4) agent
(5) abroad (6) book (7) flight (8)
hotel (9) currency (10) traveller's cheques

1 language school was going on
excursions. 2 to go (or: to do some)
sightseeing before we find somewhere to
stay. 3 the plane has landed, I'll phone
you. 4 make a reservation in advance.
5 take a bus to work but yesterday I went
by train. 6 take a flight to Paris instead.
7 don't run out of petrol if you're driving
in the mountains. 8 Liverpool gets in at
eleven o'clock.
Shopping

1 for ... card 2 afford ... deposit 3 get ... cash 4 go ... bargains 5 on 6 supermarket ... butcher(s) 7 lend ... pay 8 rate of exchange ... bureau 9 goods ... designer 10 wrapped

1 a sales assistant 2 the high street 3 a DIY store 4 the chemist’s 5 a carrier bag 6 the greengrocer’s 7 a bureau de change 8 a department store 9 a kiosk 10 the checkout

newsgagent’s: crisps, magazine, stamps, stationery, pencils, cigarettes, sweets, chocolate

chemist’s: sun tan lotion, shampoo, aspirin, sunglasses, toothpaste, bubble bath, nappies, lipstick, medicines, hairbrush, perfume, toilet paper

greengrocer’s: lettuce, mushrooms, flowers, courgettes, melon, carrots, plums, beans, aubergines, bananas

boutique: shirt, sunglasses, trousers, shoes, underwear, denim jacket, jewellery

supermarket: household goods, yoghurt, cleaning products, bread, frozen food, flour, sausages, food in cans, coffee, toilet paper, pasta, eggs, milk, cheese, breakfast cereals, etc.

(In the larger supermarkets, you can buy almost anything in other shops, except some medicines. Fashionable clothes are often not available.)

1 carton / bottle 2 can 3 bar 4 tub 5 box 6 tube 7 sachet / bottle 8 tin 9 packet 10 bunch 11 bottle 12 jar

Food and restaurants

1 (1) vegetables 2 (2) meat 3 (3) fish 4 (4) red 5 (5) dairy 6 (6) cheese 7 (7) nuts 8 (8) gourmet 9 (9) wine 10 (10) chef

1 vegetables: lettuce, courgette, cabbage, cauliflower, spinach, cucumber, aubergine

2 fish: salmon, trout, plaice, mackerel, smoked salmon, cod, sardine

3 herbs: thyme, oregano, rosemary, chives, parsley, basil

4 seafood: mussel, squid, shrimp, prawn, lobster, octopus

5 fruit: nectarine, apple, satsuma, plum, coconut, fig, strawberry, grape, watermelon, mango

6 meat: lamb, mutton, bacon, mincemeat, liver, chicken, chop, beef, joint, sausage, pork, salami

Spain: tapas, bocadillo, tortilla, paella

Britain: roast beef, shepherd’s pie, apple crumble and custard, fish and chips

Greece: houmous, souvlaki, moussaka, kebab

China: prawn crackers, spring roll, sweet and sour, chop suey

Italy: spaghetti Bolognese, ciabatta, tiramisu, tagliatelle

India: curry, samosas, onion bhaji, biryani

USA: hot dog, hamburger, popcorn, pumpkin pie

Weather

1 foggy 2 dry 3 sticky / humid / stuffy

2 unsettled / changeable

3 humid / sticky / mild / overcast

4 downpour / sudden

5 fall / heavy / light rain

6 snow / heavy snow

7 rain / heavy rain

8 thunderstorm / heavy thunderstorm

9 snow / heavy snow

10 snowstorm / heavy snowstorm

1 a hot day 2 a mild / hot climate 3 freezing / bitterly cold 4 heavy / dark clouds

5 a mild / dry spell 6 heavy rain

7 strong wind / heavy wind

8 freezing / thick / heavy fog

9 lovely / mild / hot / dry weather

10 heavy weather / bad weather

Our environment and the natural world

1 cliff 2 sea 3 beach 4 hill 5 lake 6 waterfall 7 wave 8 river 9 mountain 10 rocks

2 town – city (city) mountain – hill (mountain) bush – tree (tree) rock – pebble (rock) lane – road (road) lake – pond (lake) bay – gulf (gulf)

3 beach 4 coast (coast) 5 ocean – sea (ocean) wood – forest (forest)

4 (1) environmental (2) atmosphere (3) greenhouse (4) weather (5) exhaust (6) resources (7) energy (8) on (9) fuel (10) recycling

5 1 pollution 2 disastrous 3 extinction 4 harmful 5 damaging 6 population 7 survival 8 protection 9 poverty 10 starvation

6 (1) acid rain 2 tropical rainforest 3 exhaust fumes 4 global warming / disaster / changes / resources 5 ozone layer 6 nuclear energy / waste products

7 public transport 8 traffic jams / fumes 9 natural resources / gases / disaster 10 air pollution 11 sea pollution 12 solar energy 13 finite resources 14 greenhouse effect / gases / disaster 15 clean fuels 16 recycled fuels / resources 17 noise pollution 18 renewable resources

1 count on the weather being sunny on Saturday. 2 cut down on the number of cars in the city centre. 3 should do away with nuclear energy completely. 4 gets you down, go and live in Spain. 5 (have) run out of water in a few years. 6 has gone down since is down on what it was yesterday. 7 pull that old building down. (or: pull down that old building.) 8 ran / could run on electricity instead of petrol.

Media

1 (1) information (2) newspapers (3) television (4) radio (5) Internet
(6) e-mail (7) electronic (8) mail / messages (9) post (10) postman

2 1 correspondent 2 circulation 3 commercial 4 documentary 5 celebrity 6 periodical 7 journalist 8 headline 9 soap 10 editor

3 1 mouse 2 screen 3 keyboard 4 disk drive 5 floppy disk 6 mouse pad / mat 7 CD ROM 8 laptop 9 key 10 modem

4 press report / conference, current affairs, television channel / commentator / viewer / programme / show / broadcast / station, radio commentator / listener / programme / show / broadcast / station, light entertainment, news channel / conference / broadcast, sports channel / commentator / programme, soap opera, chat show, celebrity guest, video recorder, cable channel / television, live television / programme / show / entertainment, educational programme, commercial break / station / channel, action replay, digital television, game show, children’s programme / channel / show, nature programme / channel

5 phone book play back mobile phone answering machine cordless phone wrong number long-distance e-mail address fax machine telephone kiosk

6 1 distance 2 mobile 3 address 4 conference 5 wrong 6 game 7 answer 8 disk 9 cable 10 floppy

7 1 D media 2 B press 3 (C) popular 4 (A) opinion 5 D editors 6 C circulation 7 A networks 8 C information 9 D access 10 B personal

8 1 skin through 2 hang up 3 key in 4 am on 5 switch over 6 back up 7 switch off 8 bringing out 9 get through 10 put down 11 call back 12 shut down

9 phone: 2, 9, 11 computer: 3, 4, 6, 12 television: 5, 7 book: 1, 8, 10

Science and technology

1 (1) invent (2) product / produce (3) observation (4) designer (5) development (6) discovery (7) exploration (8) researcher (9) programmer (10) engineer (11) building (12) conservation (13) conservationist (14) creator

2 1 engineer 2 builder 3 research 4 produced 5 explore 6 discovers 7 creator 8 programmer 9 developer 10 observation

3 1 builder 2 plumber 3 electrician 4 carpenter 5 decorator 6 architect 7 hairdresser 8 teacher 9 manager 10 salesperson 11 photographer 12 psychologist 13 manufacturer 14 researcher 15 archaeologist 16 astronomer 17 doctor / medic (informal) 18 surgeon 19 scientist 20 biologist 21 chemist 22 physicist 23 historian 24 lawyer

4 1 plumber 2 psychologist 3 tutor / teacher 4 electrician 5 decorator 6 hairdresser 7 doctor 8 designer 9 archaeologist 10 surgeon

5 1 discovered 2 studying / developed 3 designed 4 discovered 5 pioneered 6 invented 7 developed 8 designed 9 pioneered 10 discovered ... studying

Health

1 (1) fit (2) exercise (3) gym 4 diet (5) smoking 6 harm 7 diseases (8) death 9 attacks 10 health

2 1 inject 2 ointment 3 ward 4 headache 5 prescription 6 epidemic 7 fatal 8 mental illness / nervous breakdown 9 cure 10 frail

3 1 against 2 with 3 for 4 out 5 from 6 with 7 in 8 from 9 on 10 with

4 1 lie down 2 fainted 3 painless 4 hurt 5 symptoms 6 had 7 aching 8 agony 9 suffered 10 die

5 1 ill / fit / sick / nauseous / dizzy / depressed / numb / hot 2 an operation / this medicine / stitches / some rest / a broken wrist / flu / an infection / a virus / a cold / mumps / an infection / measles 3 a headache / a broken wrist / flu / cancer / a virus / a cold / mumps / a sore throat / measles / an earache / an infection 4 flu / a virus / a cold / measles / mumps 5 your doctor / a consultant 6 inoperable / a broken wrist / flu / painful / mumps / incurable / fatal / measles / cancer 7 this medicine / an aspirin / his tooth out / her temperature / her to hospital / cancer 8 your ankle / your wrist

6 nauseous / in great pain / dizzy / depressed / in agony 10 hot / painful / sore / numb

7 1 j 2 f 3 d 4 h 5 a 6 i 7 c 8 g 9 k 10 b

8 1 thumb 2 lips 3 ears 4 gums 5 elbow 6 sole 7 heel 8 knee 9 chin 10 stomach 11 neck 12 spine 13 wrist 14 navel 15 cheek 16 eyelid 17 nostrils 18 shin 19 forehead 20 throat

9 tooth out last week. 2 he got over his illness yet? 3 looked after you while you were ill. 4 put on a lot of weight since I last saw you! 5 of the drugs has worn off now. 6 fainted, he came round after a few minutes. 7 came / went down with flu and had to have time off work. 8 given birth to a lovely baby girl and is feeling fine. 9 since her heart attack, my mother has suffered from poor health. 10 suffers from terrible headaches.

Crime

1 (1) robbery (2) victims (3) violence (4) Forergy (5) kidnapped (6) crimes (7) rise (8) illegal (9) information (10) Crime

2 1 accusation (2) arsonist (3) blackmail (4) burglary (5) criminal (6) hacker (7) hijacking (8) kidnapper (9) killing (10) mugging (11) offender (12) pickpocketing (13) robbery (14) shoplifting (15) stalker (16) theft

3 accusation and suspicion

4 1 burglary 2 mugging 3 hijacking 4 murder 5 shoplifting 6 arson 7 looting 8 hooliganism 9 blackmail 10 theft 11 robbery 12 fraud 13 vandalism 14 kidnapping 15 domestic violence 16 pickpocketing 17 drug trafficking 18 stalking 19 hacking 20 rioting

5 1 found guilty 2 appearing in court 3 accused 4 pay a fine 5 put on trial 6 took up 7 arresting you 8 suspected of 9 facing 10 returned a verdict of / found her / him / the accused 11 committed 12 plead guilty

6 (1) suspicion (2) proof (3) charge (4) trial (5) lawyer (6) illegal (7) guilty (8) crime (9) punishment (10) innocence

319
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY for First Certificate

LUKE PRODOMO

✓ designed for upper intermediate students
an innovative approach particularly relevant to the Cambridge First Certificate in English (FCE) exam

✓ thorough grammar review
detailed information concentrating on points tested in the exam, and a wealth of examples based on the Longman Corpus

✓ a focus on vocabulary
concentration on word formation, confusable words, and on common words and phrases that are useful in numerous situations

✓ lots of opportunity to practise
a wide variety of exercises to confirm understanding and prepare for the FCE exam, particularly Paper 3

✓ continuous testing in exam format
a diagnostic test for each Unit and regular tests in exam format to check progress

✓ a flexible approach
can be used in many different ways; clear cross-references point you in the direction of related grammar or vocabulary areas

Advanced students should refer to
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY for CAMBRIDGE ADVANCED AND PROFICIENCY
by Richard Side and Guy Wellman

PEARSON
Longman
www.longman.com